SOLICITATION, OFFER, AND AWARD *(Construction, Alteration, or Repair)*	1. SOLICITATION NO. W91236-05-B-0009	2. TYPE OF SOLICITATION [X] SEALED BID (IFB) [ ] NEGOTIATED *(RFP)*	3. DATE ISSUED 03-Aug-2005	PAGE OF PAGES 1 OF 135

IMPORTANT - The "offer" section on the reverse must be fully completed by offeror.

4. CONTRACT NO.	5. REQUISITION/PURCHASE REQUEST NO. W26GLG-5186-3443	6. PROJECT NO.

7. ISSUED BY CODE W91236	8. ADDRESS OFFER TO *(If Other Than Item 7)* CODE
USA ENGINEER DISTRICT, NORFOLK CONTRACTING OFFICE 803 FRONT STREET NORFOLK VA 23510-1096	**See Item 7**
TEL: FAX: 757-441-7183	TEL: FAX:

9. FOR INFORMATION CALL:	A. NAME	B. TELEPHONE NO. *(Include area code)* *(NO COLLECT CALLS)*
	CHERYL B JONES	757-201-7242

SOLICITATION

NOTE: In sealed bid solicitations "offer" and "offeror" mean "bid" and "bidder".

10. THE GOVERNMENT REQUIRES PERFORMANCE OF THE WORK DESCRIBED IN THESE DOCUMENTS *(Title, identifying no., date):*

DREDGING OF THE ATLANTIC OCEAN CHANNEL, VIRGINIA BEACH, VA

The project consists of new work dredging of the Atlantic Ocean Channel portion of Norfolk Harbor to a required depth of 53 feet MLLW (NOS) with 1 foot of allowable overdepth. All work shall be performed by hopper dredge method. The Contractor shall place the dredged material in the Dam Neck Dredged Material Management Area, a straight-line haul distance of approximately 7 miles. Including allowable overdepth dredging and accretion, the project involves dredging approximately 1,066,500 cubic yards of material.

THIS IS AN UNRESTRICTED PROCUREMENT. NAICS CODE: 237990 SIC CODE: 1629

11. The Contractor shall begin performance within 15 calendar days and complete it within 100 calendar days after receiving [ ] award, [X] notice to proceed. This performance period is [X] mandatory, [ ] negotiable. *(See _____ .)*

12 A. THE CONTRACTOR MUST FURNISH ANY REQUIRED PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BONDS? *(If "YES," indicate within how many calendar days after award in Item 12B.)* [X] YES [ ] NO	12B. CALENDAR DAYS 10

13. ADDITIONAL SOLICITATION REQUIREMENTS:

A. Sealed offers in original and 1 copies to perform the work required are due at the place specified in Item 8 by 02:00 PM *(hour)* local time 07 Aug 2005 *(date).* If this is a sealed bid solicitation, offers must be publicly opened at that time. Sealed envelopes containing offers shall be marked to show the offeror's name and address, the solicitation number, and the date and time offers are due.

B. An offer guarantee [X] is, [ ] is not required.

C. All offers are subject to the (1) work requirements, and (2) other provisions and clauses incorporated in the solicitation in full text or by reference.

D. Offers providing less than 90 calendar days for Government acceptance after the date offers are due will not be considered and will be rejected.

SOLICITATION, OFFER, AND AWARD (Continued)

(Construction, Alteration, or Repair)

OFFER ***(Must be fully completed by offeror)***

14. NAME AND ADDRESS OF OFFEROR *(Include ZIP Code)*		15. TELEPHONE NO. *(Include area code)*
		16. REMITTANCE ADDRESS *(Include only if different than Item 14)* **See Item 14**
CODE	FACILITY CODE	

17. The offeror agrees to perform the work required at the prices specified below in strict accordance with the terms of this solicitation, if this offer is accepted by the Government in writing within _____ calendar days after the date offers are due. *(Insert any number equal to or greater than the minimum requirements stated in Item 13D. Failure to insert any number means the offeror accepts the minimum in Item 13D.)*

AMOUNTS	SEE SCHEDULE OF PRICES

18. The offeror agrees to furnish any required performance and payment bonds.

19. ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF AMENDMENTS

(The offeror acknowledges receipt of amendments to the solicitation -- give number and date of each)

AMENDMENT NO.										
DATE										

20A. NAME AND TITLE OF PERSON AUTHORIZED TO SIGN OFFER *(Type or print)*	20B. SIGNATURE	20C. OFFER DATE

AWARD ***(To be completed by Government)***

21. ITEMS ACCEPTED:

22. AMOUNT	23. ACCOUNTING AND APPROPRIATION DATA

24. SUBMIT INVOICES TO ADDRESS SHOWN IN *(4 copies unless otherwise specified)*	**ITEM**	25. OTHER THAN FULL AND OPEN COMPETITION PURSUANT TO ☐ 10 U.S.C. 2304(c) ☐ 41 U.S.C. 253(c)
26. ADMINISTERED BY CODE		27. PAYMENT WILL BE MADE BY: CODE

CONTRACTING OFFICER WILL COMPLETE ITEM 28 OR 29 AS APPLICABLE

☐ 28. NEGOTIATED AGREEMENT *(Contractor is required to sign this document and return _ _ copies to issuing office.)* Contractor agrees to furnish and deliver all items or perform all work, requisitions identified on this form and any continuation sheets for the consideration stated in this contract. The rights and obligations of the parties to this contract shall be governed by (a) this contract award, (b) the solicitation, and (c) the clauses, representations, certifications, and specifications or incorporated by reference in or attached to this contract.

☐ 29. AWARD *(Contractor is not required to sign this document.)* Your offer on this solicitation, is hereby accepted as to the items listed. This award consummates the contract, which consists of (a) the Government solicitation and your offer, and (b) this contract award. No further contractual document is necessary.

30A. NAME AND TITLE OF CONTRACTOR OR PERSON AUTHORIZED TO SIGN *(Type or print)*		31A. NAME OF CONTRACTING OFFICER *(Type or print)* TEL: EMAIL:
30B. SIGNATURE	30C. DATE	31B. UNITED STATES OF AMERICA BY 31C. AWARD DATE

Section 00010 - Solicitation Contract Form

ITEM NO	SUPPLIES/SERVICES	QUANTITY	UNIT	UNIT PRICE	AMOUNT
0001		1	Lump Sum	LS	
	ATLANTIC OCEAN CHANNEL CONTRACT --- FFP ATLANTIC OCEAN CHANNEL CONTRACT --- Project No.: 117014 PURCHASE REQUEST NUMBER: W26GLG-5186-3443				
				NET AMT	

Funded Amount

FOB: Destination

ITEM NO	SUPPLIES/SERVICES	QUANTITY	UNIT	UNIT PRICE	AMOUNT
0002		1,066,500	Cubic Yard	$_____	
	FFP Dredging the Atlantic Ocean Channel to a required depth of 53 feet with one foot of allowable overdepth, complete, including all associated work as indicated and specified. THIS IS AN ESTIMATED QUANTITY.				
				NET AMT	

FOB: Destination

Section 00100 - Bidding Schedule/Instructions to Bidders

CLAUSES INCORPORATED BY FULL TEXT

52.204-6 DATA UNIVERSAL NUMBERING SYSTEM (DUNS) NUMBER (OCT 2003)

(a) The offeror shall enter, in the block with its name and address on the cover page of its offer, the annotation “DUNS” or “DUNS+4” followed by the DUNS number or “DUNS+4” that identifies the offeror's name and address exactly as stated in the offer. The DUNS number is a nine-digit number assigned by Dun and Bradstreet, Inc. The DUNS+4 is the DUNS number plus a 4-character suffix that may be assigned at the discretion of the offeror to establish additional CCR records for identifying alternative Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) accounts (see Subpart 32.11) for the same parent concern.

(b) If the offeror does not have a DUNS number, it should contact Dun and Bradstreet directly to obtain one.

(1) An offeror may obtain a DUNS number--

(i) If located within the United States, by calling Dun and Bradstreet at 1-866-705-5711 or via the Internet at http://www.dnb.com; or

(ii) If located outside the United States, by contacting the local Dun and Bradstreet office.

(2) The offeror should be prepared to provide the following information:

(i) Company legal business name.

(ii) Tradestyle, doing business, or other name by which your entity is commonly recognized.

(iii) Company physical street address, city, state and Zip Code.

(iv) Company mailing address, city, state and Zip Code (if separate from physical).

(v) Company telephone number.

(vi) Date the company was started.

(vii) Number of employees at your location.

(viii) Chief executive officer/key manager.

(ix) Line of business (industry).

(x) Company Headquarters name and address (reporting relationship within your entity).

(End of provision)

52.214-3 AMENDMENTS TO INVITATIONS FOR BIDS (DEC 1989)

(a) If this solicitation is amended, then all terms and conditions which are not modified remain unchanged.

(b) Bidders shall acknowledge receipt of any amendment to this solicitation (1) by signing and returning the amendment, (2) by identifying the amendment number and date in the space provided for this purpose on the form for submitting a bid, (3) by letter or telegram, or (4) by facsimile, if facsimile bids are authorized in the solicitation. The Government must receive the acknowledgment by the time and at the place specified for receipt of bids.

(End of provision)

52.214-4 FALSE STATEMENTS IN BIDS (APR 1984)

Bidders must provide full, accurate, and complete information as required by this solicitation and its attachments. The penalty for making false statements in bids is prescribed in 18 U.S.C. 1001.

(End of provision)

52.214-5 SUBMISSION OF BIDS (MAR 1997)

(a) Bids and bid modifications shall be submitted in sealed envelopes or packages (unless submitted by electronic means) (1) addressed to the office specified in the solicitation, and (2) showing the time and date specified for receipt, the solicitation number, and the name and address of the bidder.

(b) Bidders using commercial carrier services shall ensure that the bid is addressed and marked on the outermost envelope or wrapper as prescribed in subparagraphs (a)(1) and (2) of this provision when delivered to the office specified in the solicitation.

(c) Telegraphic bids will not be considered unless authorized by the solicitation; however, bids may be modified or withdrawn by written or telegraphic notice.

(d) Facsimile bids, modifications, or withdrawals, will not be considered unless authorized by the solicitation.

(e) Bids submitted by electronic commerce shall be considered only if the electronic commerce method was specifically stipulated or permitted by the solicitation.

(End of provision)

52.214-6 EXPLANATION TO PROSPECTIVE BIDDERS (APR 1984)

Any prospective bidder desiring an explanation or interpretation of the solicitation, drawings, specifications, etc., must request it in writing soon enough to allow a reply to reach all prospective bidders before the submission of their bids. Oral explanations or instructions given before the award of a contract will not be binding. Any information given a prospective bidder concerning a solicitation will be furnished promptly to all other prospective bidders as an amendment to the solicitation, if that information is necessary in submitting bids or if the lack of it would be prejudicial to other prospective bidders.

(End of provision)

52.214-7 LATE SUBMISSIONS, MODIFICATIONS, AND WITHDRAWALS OF BIDS (NOV 1999)

(a) Bidders are responsible for submitting bids, and any modifications or withdrawals, so as to reach the Government office designated in the invitation for bids (IFB) by the time specified in the IFB. If no time is specified in the IFB, the time for receipt is 4:30 p.m., local time, for the designated Government office on the date that bids are due.

(b)(1) Any bid, modification, or withdrawal received at the Government office designated in the IFB after the exact time specified for receipt of bids is “late” and will not be considered unless it is received before award is made, the Contracting Officer determines that accepting the late bid would not unduly delay the acquisition; and--

(i) If it was transmitted through an electronic commerce method authorized by the IFB, it was received at the initial point of entry to the Government infrastructure not later than 5:00 p.m. one working day prior to the date specified for receipt of bids; or

(ii) There is acceptable evidence to establish that it was received at the Government installation designated for receipt of bids and was under the Government's control prior to the time set for receipt of bids.

(2) However, a late modification of an otherwise successful bid that makes its terms more favorable to the Government, will be considered at any time it is received and may be accepted.

(c) Acceptable evidence to establish the time of receipt at the Government installation includes the time/date stamp of that installation on the bid wrapper, other documentary evidence of receipt maintained by the installation, or oral testimony or statements of Government personnel.

(d) If an emergency or unanticipated event interrupts normal Government processes so that bids cannot be received at the Government office designated for receipt of bids by the exact time specified in the IFB and urgent Government requirements preclude amendment of the IFB, the time specified for receipt of bids will be deemed to be extended to the same time of day specified in the solicitation on the first work day on which normal Government processes resume.

(e) Bids may be withdrawn by written notice received at any time before the exact time set for receipt of bids. If the IFB authorizes facsimile bids, bids may be withdrawn via facsimile received at any time before the exact time set for receipt of bids, subject to the conditions specified in the provision at 52.214-31, Facsimile Bids. A bid may be withdrawn in person by a bidder or its authorized representative if, before the exact time set for receipt of bids, the identity of the person requesting withdrawal is established and the person signs a receipt for the bid.

(End of provision)

52.214-18 PREPARATION OF BIDS--CONSTRUCTION (APR 1984)

(a) Bids must be (1) submitted on the forms furnished by the Government or on copies of those forms, and (2) manually signed. The person signing a bid must initial each erasure or change appearing on any bid form.

(b) The bid form may require bidders to submit bid prices for one or more items on various bases, including--

(1) Lump sum bidding;

(2) Alternate prices;

(3) Units of construction; or

(4) Any combination of subparagraphs (1) through (3) above.

(c) If the solicitation requires bidding on all items, failure to do so will disqualify the bid. If bidding on all items is not required, bidders should insert the words "no bid" in the space provided for any item on which no price is submitted.

(d) Alternate bids will not be considered unless this solicitation authorizes their submission.

(End of provision)

52.214-19 CONTRACT AWARD--SEALED BIDDING--CONSTRUCTION (AUG 1996)

(a) The Government will evaluate bids in response to this solicitation without discussions and will award a contract to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming to the solicitation, will be most advantageous to the Government, considering only price and the price-related factors specified elsewhere in the solicitation.

(b) The Government may reject any or all bids, and waive informalities or minor irregularities in bids received.

(c) The Government may accept any item or combination of items, unless doing so is precluded by a restrictive limitation in the solicitation or the bid.

(d) The Government may reject a bid as nonresponsive if the prices bid are materially unbalanced between line items or subline items. A bid is materially unbalanced when it is based on prices significantly less than cost for some work and prices which are significantly overstated in relation to cost for other work, and if there is a reasonable doubt that the bid will result in the lowest overall cost to the Government even though it may be the low evaluated bid, or if it is so unbalanced as to be tantamount to allowing an advance payment.

(End of provison)

52.216-1 TYPE OF CONTRACT (APR 1984)

The Government contemplates award of a firm fixed price contract resulting from this solicitation.

(End of clause)

52.222-23 NOTICE OF REQUIREMENT FOR AFFIRMATIVE ACTION TO ENSURE EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY FOR CONSTRUCTION (FEB 1999)

(a) The offeror's attention is called to the Equal Opportunity clause and the Affirmative Action Compliance Requirements for Construction clause of this solicitation.

(b) The goals for minority and female participation, expressed in percentage terms for the Contractor's aggregate workforce in each trade on all construction work in the covered area, are as follows:

Goals for minority participation for each trade	Goals for female participation for each trade
26.6	6.9

These goals are applicable to all the Contractor's construction work performed in the covered area. If the Contractor performs construction work in a geographical area located outside of the covered area, the Contractor shall apply the goals established for the geographical area where the work is actually performed. Goals are published periodically in the Federal Register in notice form, and these notices may be obtained from any Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs office.

(c) The Contractor's compliance with Executive Order 11246, as amended, and the regulations in 41 CFR 60-4 shall be based on (1) its implementation of the Equal Opportunity clause, (2) specific affirmative action obligations required by the clause entitled "Affirmative Action Compliance Requirements for Construction," and (3) its efforts to meet the goals. The hours of minority and female employment and training must be substantially uniform throughout the length of the contract, and in each trade. The Contractor shall make a good faith effort to employ minorities and women evenly on each of its projects. The transfer of minority or female employees or trainees from Contractor to Contractor, or from project to project, for the sole purpose of meeting the Contractor's goals shall be a violation of the contract, Executive Order 11246, as amended, and the regulations in 41 CFR 60-4. Compliance with the goals will be measured against the total work hours performed.

(d) The Contractor shall provide written notification to the Deputy Assistant Secretary for Federal Contract Compliance, U.S. Department of Labor, within 10 working days following award of any construction subcontract in excess of $10,000 at any tier for construction work under the contract resulting from this solicitation. The notification shall list the --

(1) Name, address, and telephone number of the subcontractor;

(2) Employer's identification number of the subcontractor;

(3) Estimated dollar amount of the subcontract;

(4) Estimated starting and completion dates of the subcontract; and

(5) Geographical area in which the subcontract is to be performed.

(e) As used in this Notice, and in any contract resulting from this solicitation, the "covered area" is
Virginia Beach, VA.
(End of provision)

52.232-2 PAYMENTS UNDER FIXED-PRICE RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT CONTRACTS (APR 1984)

The Government shall pay the Contractor, upon submission of proper invoices or vouchers, the prices stipulated in this contract for work delivered or rendered and accepted, less any deductions provided in this contract. Unless otherwise specified, payment shall be made upon acceptance of any portion of the work delivered or rendered for which a price is separately stated in the contract.

(End of clause)

52.236-27 SITE VISIT (CONSTRUCTION) (FEB 1995)

(a) The clauses at 52.236-2, Differing Site Conditions, and 52.236-3, Site Investigations and Conditions Affecting the Work, will be included in any contract awarded as a result of this solicitation. Accordingly, offerors or quoters are urged and expected to inspect the site where the work will be performed.

(b) Site visits may be arranged during normal duty hours by contacting:
Name: Doug Stamper
Address: 803 Front Street, Norfolk, Virginia 23510-1096
Telephone: (757) 201-7861

(End of provision)

252.236-7008 CONTRACT PRICES - BIDDING SCHEDULES. (DEC 1991)

(a) The Government's payment for the items listed in the Bidding Schedule shall constitute full compensation to the Contractor for --

(1) Furnishing all plant, labor, equipment, appliances, and materials; and

(2) Performing all operations required to complete the work in conformity with the drawings and specifications.

(b) The Contractor shall include in the prices for the items listed in the Bidding Schedule all costs for work in the specifications, whether or not specifically listed in the Bidding Schedule.

E4LC02 AWARD TO RESPONSIBLE OFFEROR

Responsibility will be determined, prior to award, by the Contracting Officer, either by performing a pre-award survey or conclusions based on a previous pre-award survey and/or any performance data available. A pre-award survey will be performed and the offeror will be required to show that he has the necessary capital, experience, and owns or can procure the necessary plant or other resources to commence the work at the time prescribed in the specifications and thereafter to prosecute and complete the work safely and satisfactorily within the time specified.

E4LC04 EVIDENCE OF AUTHORITY TO SIGN OFFERS

Evidence of the authority of individuals signing offers to submit firm offers on behalf of the offeror is required except where the offer is signed, and shows that it is so signed, by: the President, Vice-President, or Secretary of an incorporated offeror; a partner in the case of a partnership; or the owner in the case of a sole proprietorship. Failure to submit with the offer satisfactory evidence of the authority of all other persons may be cause for rejection of the offer as invalid or nonresponsive.

E4LC05 PREAWARD SAFETY CONFERENCE

a. Where an apparent low bidder, in performance of contracts during the previous three-year period, incurred one or more accidents, or where, in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, there is any question regarding this compliance with any safety or accident prevention requirement, such bidder, on request of the Contracting Officer prior to any award under this solicitation, shall attend a conference with representatives of the Contracting Officer to discuss any such accidents or non-compliance, the reason for their occurrence, and measures which will be taken to preclude any recurrence thereof.

b. Information elicited at this conference will be used by the Contracting Officer, in conjunction with other information obtained in a preaward survey, in determining the bidder's responsibility.

c. The items discussed, the preventive measures considered, and any conclusions reached in this conference shall be recorded in minutes of the meeting, which shall be authenticated by the signatures of representatives of the bidder and the Contracting Officer, and any procedures noted therein as agreed upon shall become an obligation of the bidder, along with all other safety and accident prevention requirements of the contract, if award is made to him.

E4LC06 INSPECTION OF THE SITE

Prospective bidders are invited to visit the site of the work in order to acquaint themselves as to site conditions and other problems incident to the prosecution of the work. Arrangements for inspection of the site shall be made through the Office the Area Engineer identified in the clause 52.236-27, entitled "SITE VISIT (CONSTRUCTION)."

E4LC07 SUBCONTRACTING PLAN (CONSTRUCTION)

If the offeror is a large business and the offer amount exceeds $1,000,000.00, he shall submit a subcontracting plan within three (3) working days of being notified (either verbally or in writing) that he is the apparent low bidder or is otherwise in line for award. The subcontracting plan shall be reviewed and approved by the Contracting Officer prior to award.

E4LC08 MAGNITUDE OF CONSTRUCTION PROJECT

The estimated contract price of the work for this project is between $1,000,000.00 and $5,000,000.00.

E4LC09 BASIS OF AWARD

All blanks must be filled in by the bidder. A single award will be made to the lowest responsible, responsive bidder on the basis of the total price bid. Prior to making an award, a pre-award survey will be made and the low bidder will be required to show that he has the necessary capital, experience, and owns or can procure the necessary plant to commence the work at the time prescribed in the specifications and thereafter to prosecute and complete the work safely and satisfactorily within the time specified.

E4LC23 INCURRING COSTS

The Government is not liable for any costs incurred by the offeror submitting an offer in response to this solicitation.

E4LC29 AGENTS

Offers signed by an Agent must be made in the name of the Principal and must be accompanied by evidence of said Agent's authority to act on behalf of its Principal.

Section 00600 - Representations & Certifications

CLAUSES INCORPORATED BY FULL TEXT

52.204-3 TAXPAYER IDENTIFICATION (OCT 1998)

(a) Definitions.

Common parent, as used in this provision, means that corporate entity that owns or controls an affiliated group of corporations that files its Federal income tax returns on a consolidated basis, and of which the offeror is a member.

Taxpayer Identification Number (TIN), as used in this provision, means the number required by the Internal Revenue Service (IRS) to be used by the offeror in reporting income tax and other returns. The TIN may be either a Social Security Number or an Employer Identification Number.

(b) All offerors must submit the information required in paragraphs (d) through (f) of this provision to comply with debt collection requirements of 31 U.S.C. 7701(c) and 3325(d), reporting requirements of 26 U.S.C. 6041, 6041A, and 6050M, and implementing regulations issued by the IRS. If the resulting contract is subject to the payment reporting requirements described in Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) 4.904, the failure or refusal by the offeror to furnish the information may result in a 31 percent reduction of payments otherwise due under the contract.

(c) The TIN may be used by the Government to collect and report on any delinquent amounts arising out of the offeror's relationship with the Government (31 U.S.C. 7701(c)(3)). If the resulting contract is subject to the payment reporting requirements described in FAR 4.904, the TIN provided hereunder may be matched with IRS records to verify the accuracy of the offeror's TIN.

(d) Taxpayer Identification Number (TIN).

___ TIN:.----------

___ TIN has been applied for.

___ TIN is not required because:

___ Offeror is a nonresident alien, foreign corporation, or foreign partnership that does not have income effectively connected with the conduct of a trade or business in the United States and does not have an office or place of business or a fiscal paying agent in the United States;

___ Offeror is an agency or instrumentality of a foreign government;

___ Offeror is an agency or instrumentality of the Federal Government.

(e) Type of organization.

___ Sole proprietorship;

___ Partnership;

___ Corporate entity (not tax-exempt);

___ Corporate entity (tax-exempt);

___ Government entity (Federal, State, or local);

___ Foreign government;

___ International organization per 26 CFR 1.6049-4;

___ Other----------

(f) Common parent.

___ Offeror is not owned or controlled by a common parent as defined in paragraph (a) of this provision.

___ Name and TIN of common parent:

Name----------

TIN----------

(End of provision)

52.204-7 CENTRAL CONTRACTOR REGISTRATION (OCT 2003)

(a) Definitions. As used in this clause--

Central Contractor Registration (CCR) database means the primary Government repository for Contractor information required for the conduct of business with the Government.

Data Universal Numbering System (DUNS) number means the 9-digit number assigned by Dun and Bradstreet, Inc. (D&B) to identify unique business entities.

Data Universal Numbering System +4 (DUNS+4) number means the DUNS number assigned by D&B plus a 4-character suffix that may be assigned by a business concern. (D&B has no affiliation with this 4-character suffix.) This 4-character suffix may be assigned at the discretion of the business concern to establish additional CCR records for identifying alternative Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) accounts (see the FAR at Subpart 32.11) for the same parent concern.

Registered in the CCR database means that--

(1) The Contractor has entered all mandatory information, including the DUNS number or the DUNS+4 number, into the CCR database; and

(2) The Government has validated all mandatory data fields and has marked the record “Active”.

(b)(1) By submission of an offer, the offeror acknowledges the requirement that a prospective awardee shall be registered in the CCR database prior to award, during performance, and through final payment of any contract, basic agreement, basic ordering agreement, or blanket purchasing agreement resulting from this solicitation.

(2) The offeror shall enter, in the block with its name and address on the cover page of its offer, the annotation “DUNS” or “DUNS +4” followed by the DUNS or DUNS +4 number that identifies the offeror's name and address exactly as stated in the offer. The DUNS number will be used by the Contracting Officer to verify that the offeror is registered in the CCR database.

(c) If the offeror does not have a DUNS number, it should contact Dun and Bradstreet directly to obtain one.

(1) An offeror may obtain a DUNS number--

(i) If located within the United States, by calling Dun and Bradstreet at 1-866-705-5711 or via the Internet at http://www.dnb.com; or

(ii) If located outside the United States, by contacting the local Dun and Bradstreet office.

(2) The offeror should be prepared to provide the following information:

(i) Company legal business.

(ii) Tradestyle, doing business, or other name by which your entity is commonly recognized.

(iii) Company Physical Street Address, City, State, and Zip Code.

(iv) Company Mailing Address, City, State and Zip Code (if separate from physical).

(v) Company Telephone Number.

(vi) Date the company was started.

(vii) Number of employees at your location.

(viii) Chief executive officer/key manager.

(ix) Line of business (industry).

(x) Company Headquarters name and address (reporting relationship within your entity).

(d) If the Offeror does not become registered in the CCR database in the time prescribed by the Contracting Officer, the Contracting Officer will proceed to award to the next otherwise successful registered Offeror.

(e) Processing time, which normally takes 48 hours, should be taken into consideration when registering. Offerors who are not registered should consider applying for registration immediately upon receipt of this solicitation.

(f) The Contractor is responsible for the accuracy and completeness of the data within the CCR database, and for any liability resulting from the Government's reliance on inaccurate or incomplete data. To remain registered in the CCR database after the initial registration, the Contractor is required to review and update on an annual basis from the date of initial registration or subsequent updates its information in the CCR database to ensure it is current, accurate and complete. Updating information in the CCR does not alter the terms and conditions of this contract and is not a substitute for a properly executed contractual document.

(g)(1)(i) If a Contractor has legally changed its business name, “doing business as” name, or division name (whichever is shown on the contract), or has transferred the assets used in performing the contract, but has not completed the necessary requirements regarding novation and change-of-name agreements in Subpart 42.12, the Contractor shall provide the responsible Contracting Officer a minimum of one business day's written notification of its intention to (A) change the name in the CCR database; (B) comply with the requirements of Subpart 42.12 of the FAR; and (C) agree in writing to the timeline and procedures specified by the responsible Contracting Officer. The Contractor must provide with the notification sufficient documentation to support the legally changed name.

(ii) If the Contractor fails to comply with the requirements of paragraph (g)(1)(i) of this clause, or fails to perform the agreement at paragraph (g)(1)(i)(C) of this clause, and, in the absence of a properly executed novation or

change-of-name agreement, the CCR information that shows the Contractor to be other than the Contractor indicated in the contract will be considered to be incorrect information within the meaning of the “Suspension of Payment” paragraph of the electronic funds transfer (EFT) clause of this contract.

(2) The Contractor shall not change the name or address for EFT payments or manual payments, as appropriate, in the CCR record to reflect an assignee for the purpose of assignment of claims (see FAR Subpart 32.8, Assignment of Claims). Assignees shall be separately registered in the CCR database. Information provided to the Contractor's CCR record that indicates payments, including those made by EFT, to an ultimate recipient other than that Contractor will be considered to be incorrect information within the meaning of the “Suspension of payment” paragraph of the EFT clause of this contract.

(h) Offerors and Contractors may obtain information on registration and annual confirmation requirements via the internet at http://www.ccr.gov or by calling 1-888-227-2423, or 269-961-5757.

(End of clause)

52.204-8 ANNUAL REPRESENTATIONS AND CERTIFICATIONS (JAN 2005)

(a)(1) If the clause at 52.204-7, Central Contractor Registration, is included in this solicitation, paragraph (b) of this provision applies.

(2) If the clause at 52.204-7 is not included in this solicitation, and the offeror is currently registered in CCR, and has completed the ORCA electronically, the offeror may choose to use paragraph (b) of this provision instead of completing the corresponding individual representations and certifications in the solicitation. The offeror shall indicate which option applies by checking one of the following boxes:

(__) Paragraph (b) applies.

(__) Paragraph (b) does not apply and the offeror has completed the individual representations and certifications in the solicitation.

(b) The offeror has completed the annual representations and certifications electronically via the Online Representations and Certifications Application (ORCA) website at http://orca.bpn.gov. After reviewing the ORCA database information, the offeror verifies by submission of the offer that the representations and certifications currently posted electronically have been entered or updated within the last 12 months, are current, accurate, complete, and applicable to this solicitation (including the business size standard applicable to the NAICS code referenced for this solicitation), as of the date of this offer and are incorporated in this offer by reference (see FAR 4.1201); except for the changes identified below [offeror to insert changes, identifying change by clause number, title, date]. These amended representation(s) and/or certification(s) are also incorporated in this offer and are current, accurate, and complete as of the date of this offer.

FAR Clause	Title	Date	Change

Any changes provided by the offeror are applicable to this solicitation only, and do not result in an update to the representations and certifications posted on ORCA.

(End of Provision)

52.212-3 OFFEROR REPRESENTATIONS AND CERTIFICATIONS--COMMERCIAL ITEMS (MAR 2005)

An offeror shall complete only paragraph (j) of this provision if the offeror has completed the annual representations and certifications electronically at http://orca.bpn.gov. If an offeror has not completed the annual representations and certifications electronically at the ORCA website, the offeror shall complete only paragraphs (b) through (i) of this provision.

(a) Definitions. As used in this provision:

"Emerging small business" means a small business concern whose size is no greater than 50 percent of the numerical size standard for the NAICS code designated.

"Forced or indentured child labor" means all work or service-

(1) Exacted from any person under the age of 18 under the menace of any penalty for its nonperformance and for which the worker does not offer himself voluntarily; or

(2) Performed by any person under the age of 18 pursuant to a contract the enforcement of which can be accomplished by process or penalties.

Service-disabled veteran-owned small business concern--

(1) Means a small business concern--

(i) Not less than 51 percent of which is owned by one or more service-disabled veterans or, in the case of any publicly owned business, not less than 51 percent of the stock of which is owned by one or more service-disabled veterans; and

(ii) The management and daily business operations of which are controlled by one or more service-disabled veterans or, in the case of a service-disabled veteran with permanent and severe disability, the spouse or permanent caregiver of such veteran.

(2) Service-disabled veteran means a veteran, as defined in 38 U.S.C. 101(2), with a disability that is service-connected, as defined in 38 U.S.C. 101(16).

"Small business concern" means a concern, including its affiliates, that is independently owned and operated, not dominant in the field of operation in which it is bidding on Government contracts, and qualified as a small business under the criteria in 13 CFR Part 121 and size standards in this solicitation.

Veteran-owned small business concern means a small business concern--

(1) Not less than 51 percent of which is owned by one or more veterans (as defined at 38 U.S.C. 101(2)) or, in the case of any publicly owned business, not less than 51 percent of the stock of which is owned by one or more veterans; and

(2) The management and daily business operations of which are controlled by one or more veterans.

"Women-owned small business concern" means a small business concern--

(1) That is at least 51 percent owned by one or more women or, in the case of any publicly owned business, at least 51 percent of its stock is owned by one or more women; or

(2) Whose management and daily business operations are controlled by one or more women.

"Women-owned business concern" means a concern which is at least 51 percent owned by one or more women; or in the case of any publicly owned business, at least 51 percent of the stock of which is owned by one or more women; and whose management and daily business operations are controlled by one or more women.

(b) Taxpayer Identification Number (TIN) (26 U.S.C. 6109, 31 U.S.C. 7701). (Not applicable if the offeror is required to provide this information to a central contractor registration database to be eligible for award.)

(1) All offerors must submit the information required in paragraphs (b)(3) through (b)(5) of this provision to comply with debt collection requirements of 31 U.S.C. 7701(c) and 3325(d), reporting requirements of 26 U.S.C. 6041, 6041A, and 6050M, and implementing regulations issued by the Internal Revenue Service (IRS).

(2) The TIN may be used by the Government to collect and report on any delinquent amounts arising out of the offeror's relationship with the Government (31 U.S.C. 7701(c)(3)). If the resulting contract is subject to the payment reporting requirements described in FAR 4.904, the TIN provided hereunder may be matched with IRS records to verify the accuracy of the offeror's TIN.

(3) Taxpayer Identification Number (TIN).

___ TIN:----------

___ TIN has been applied for.

___ TIN is not required because:

___ Offeror is a nonresident alien, foreign corporation, or foreign partnership that does not have income effectively connected with the conduct of a trade or business in the United States and does not have an office or place of business or a fiscal paying agent in the United States;

Offeror is an agency or instrumentality of a foreign government;

___ Offeror is an agency or instrumentality of the Federal Government.

(4) Type of organization.

___ Sole proprietorship;

___ Partnership;

___ Corporate entity (not tax-exempt);

___ Corporate entity (tax-exempt);

___ Government entity (Federal, State, or local);

___ Foreign government;

___ International organization per 26 CFR 1.6049-4;

___ Other----------

(5) Common parent.

___ Offeror is not owned or controlled by a common parent;

___ Name and TIN of common parent:

Name----------

TIN----------

(c) Offerors must complete the following representations when the resulting contract will be performed in the United States or its outlying areas. Check all that apply.

(1) Small business concern. The offeror represents as part of its offer that it ( ) is, ( ) is not a small business concern.

(2) Veteran-owned small business concern. (Complete only if the offeror represented itself as a small business concern in paragraph (c)(1) of this provision.) The offeror represents as part of its offer that it ( ) is, ( ) is not a veteran-owned small business concern.

(3) Service-disabled veteran-owned small business concern. (Complete only if the offeror represented itself as a veteran-owned small business concern in paragraph (c)(2) of this provision.) The offeror represents as part of its offer that it ( ) is, ( ) is not a service-disabled veteran-owned small business concern.

(4) Small disadvantaged business concern. (Complete only if the offeror represented itself as a small business concern in paragraph (c)(1) of this provision.) The offeror represents, for general statistical purposes, that it ( ) is, ( ) is not a small disadvantaged business concern as defined in 13 CFR 124.1002.

(5) Women-owned small business concern. (Complete only if the offeror represented itself as a small business concern in paragraph (c)(1) of this provision.) The offeror represents that it ( ) is, ( ) is not a women-owned small business concern.

Note: Complete paragraphs (c)(6) and (c)(7) only if this solicitation is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold.

(6) Women-owned business concern (other than small business concern). (Complete only if the offeror is a women-owned business concern and did not represent itself as a small business concern in paragraph (c)(1) of this provision.) The offeror represents that it ( ) is, a women-owned business concern.

(7) Tie bid priority for labor surplus area concerns. If this is an invitation for bid, small business offerors may identify the labor surplus areas in which costs to be incurred on account of manufacturing or production (by offeror or first-tier subcontractors) amount to more than 50 percent of the contract price:

_____

(8) Small Business Size for the Small Business Competitiveness Demonstration Program and for the Targeted Industry Categories under the Small Business Competitiveness Demonstration Program. (Complete only if the offeror has represented itself to be a small business concern under the size standards for this solicitation.)

(i) (Complete only for solicitations indicated in an addendum as being set-aside for emerging small businesses in one of the designated industry groups (DIGs).) The offeror represents as part of its offer that it ( ) is, ( ) is not an emerging small business.

(ii) (Complete only for solicitations indicated in an addendum as being for one of the targeted industry categories (TICs) or designated industry groups (DIGs).) Offeror represents as follows:

(A) Offeror's number of employees for the past 12 months (check the Employees column if size standard stated in the solicitation is expressed in terms of number of employees); or

(B) Offeror's average annual gross revenue for the last 3 fiscal years (check the Average Annual Gross Number of Revenues column if size standard stated in the solicitation is expressed in terms of annual receipts).

(Check one of the following):

Average Annual

Number of Employees Gross Revenues

___ 50 or fewer ___ $1 million or less

___ 51 - 100 ___ $1,000,001 - $2 million

___ 101 - 250 ___ $2,000,001 - $3.5 million

___ 251 - 500 ___ $3,500,001 - $5 million

___ 501 - 750 ___ $5,000,001 - $10 million

___ 751 - 1,000 ___ $10,000,001 - $17 million

___ Over 1,000 ___ Over $17 million

(9) (Complete only if the solicitation contains the clause at FAR 52.219-23, Notice of Price Evaluation Adjustment for Small Disadvantaged Business Concerns or FAR 52.219-25, Small Disadvantaged Business Participation Program-Disadvantaged Status and Reporting, and the offeror desires a benefit based on its disadvantaged status.)

(i) General. The offeror represents that either--

(A) It ( ) is, ( ) is not certified by the Small Business Administration as a small disadvantaged business concern and identified, on the date of this representation, as a certified small disadvantaged business concern in the database maintained by the Small Business Administration (PRO-Net), and that no material change in disadvantaged ownership and control has occurred since its certification, and, where the concern is owned by one or more individuals claiming disadvantaged status, the net worth of each individual upon whom the certification is based does not exceed $750,000 after taking into account the applicable exclusions set forth at 13 CFR 124.104(c)(2); or

(B) It ( ) has, ( )(has not submitted a completed application to the Small Business Administration or a Private Certifier to be certified as a small disadvantaged business concern in accordance with 13 CFR 124, Subpart B, and a decision on that application is pending, and that no material change in disadvantaged ownership and control has occurred since its application was submitted.

(ii) Joint Ventures under the Price Evaluation Adjustment for Small Disadvantaged Business Concerns. The offeror represents, as part of its offer, that it is a joint venture that complies with the requirements in 13 CFR 124.1002(f) and that the representation in paragraph (c)(9)(i) of this provision is accurate for the small disadvantaged business concern that is participating in the joint venture. (The offeror shall enter the name of the small disadvantaged business concern that is participating in the joint venture: _____.)

(10) HUBZone small business concern. (Complete only if the offeror represented itself as a small business concern in paragraph (c)(1) of this provision.) The offeror represents, as part of its offer, that--

(i) It ( ) is, ( ) is not a HUBZone small business concern listed, on the date of this representation, on the List of Qualified HUBZone Small Business Concerns maintained by the Small Business Administration, and no material change in ownership and control, principal office, or HUBZone employee percentage has occurred since it was certified by the Small Business Administration in accordance with 13 CFR part 126; and

(ii) It ( ) is, ( ) is not s joint venture that complies with the requirements of 13 CFR part 126, and the representation in paragraph (c)(10)(i) of this provision is accurate for the HUBZone small business concern or concerns that are participating in the joint venture. (The offeror shall enter the name or names of the HUBZone small business concern or concerns that are participating in the joint venture:_____.) Each HUBZone small business concern participating in the joint venture shall submit a separate signed copy of the HUBZone representation.

(d) Certifications and representations required to implement provisions of Executive Order 11246--

(1) Previous Contracts and Compliance. The offeror represents that--

(i) It ( ) has, ( ) has not, participated in a previous contract or subcontract subject either to the Equal Opportunity clause of this solicitation, the and

(ii) It ( ) has, ( ) has not, filed all required compliance reports.

(2) Affirmative Action Compliance. The offeror represents that--

(i) It ( ) has developed and has on file, ( ) has not developed and does not have on file, at each establishment, affirmative action programs required by rules and regulations of the Secretary of Labor (41 CFR Subparts 60-1 and 60-2), or

(ii) It ( ) has not previously had contracts subject to the written affirmative action programs requirement of the rules and regulations of the Secretary of Labor.

(e) Certification Regarding Payments to Influence Federal Transactions (31 U.S.C. 1352). (Applies only if the contract is expected to exceed $100,000.) By submission of its offer, the offeror certifies to the best of its knowledge and belief that no Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress or an employee of a Member of Congress on his or her behalf in connection with the award of any resultant contract.

(f) Buy American Act Certificate. (Applies only if the clause at Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) 52.225-1, Buy American Act --Supplies, is included in this solicitation.)

(1) The offeror certifies that each end product, except those listed in paragraph (f)(2) of this provision, is a domestic end product and that the offeror has considered components of unknown origin to have been mined, produced, or manufactured outside the United States. The offeror shall list as foreign end products those end products manufactured in the United States that do not qualify as domestic end products. The terms ``component," ``domestic end product," ``end product," ``foreign end product," and ``United States" are defined in the clause of this solicitation entitled ``Buy American Act--Supplies."

(2) Foreign End Products:

Line Item No.:----------
Country of Origin:----------

(List as necessary)

(3) The Government will evaluate offers in accordance with the policies and procedures of FAR Part 25.

(g)(1) *Buy American Act-Free Trade Agreements-Israeli Trade Act Certificate*. (Applies only if the clause at FAR 52.225-3, Buy American Act-Free Trade Agreements-Israeli Trade Act, is included in this solicitation.)

(i) The offeror certifies that each end product, except those listed in paragraph (g)(1)(ii) or (g)(1)(iii) of this provision, is a domestic end product and that the offeror has considered components of unknown origin to have been mined, produced, or manufactured outside the United States. The terms "component," "domestic end product," "end product," "foreign end product," and "United States" are defined in the clause of this solicitation entitled "Buy American Act-Free Trade Agreements-Israeli Trade Act."

(ii) The offeror certifies that the following supplies are end products of Australia, Canada, Chile, Mexico, or Singapore, or Israeli end products as defined in the clause of this solicitation entitled "Buy American Act-Free Trade Agreements-Israeli Trade Act":

End Products of Australia, Canada, Chile, Mexico, or Singapore or Israeli End Products:

Line Item No.	Country of Origin
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

[List as necessary]

(iii) The offeror shall list those supplies that are foreign end products (other than those listed in paragraph (g)(1)(ii) of this provision) as defined in the clause of this solicitation entitled "Buy American Act-Free Trade Agreements-Israeli Trade Act." The offeror shall list as other foreign end products those end products manufactured in the United States that do not qualify as domestic end products.

Other Foreign End Products:

Line Item No.	Country of Origin
_____	_____
_____	_____

_	_
_____ _	_____ _

[List as necessary]

(iv) The Government will evaluate offers in accordance with the policies and procedures of FAR Part 25.
(2) *Buy American Act-Free Trade Agreements-Israeli Trade Act Certificate, Alternate I (Jan 2004).* If Alternate I to the clause at FAR 52.225-3 is included in this solicitation, substitute the following paragraph (g)(1)(ii) for paragraph (g)(1)(ii) of the basic provision:

(g)(1)(ii) The offeror certifies that the following supplies are Canadian end products as defined in the clause of this solicitation entitled "Buy American Act-Free Trade Agreements-Israeli Trade Act":

Canadian End Products:

Line Item No.
_____ _
_____ _
_____ _

[List as necessary]

(3) Buy American Act-Free Trade Agreements-Israeli Trade Act Certificate, Alternate II (Jan 2004). If Alternate II to the clause at FAR 52.225-3 is included in this solicitation, substitute the following paragraph (g)(1)(ii) for paragraph (g)(1)(ii) of the basic provision:

(g)(1)(ii) The offeror certifies that the following supplies are Canadian end products or Israeli end products as defined in the clause of this solicitation entitled "Buy American Act-Free Trade Agreements-Israeli Trade Act":

Canadian or Israeli End Products:

Line Item No.	Country of Origin
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

[List as necessary]

(4) Trade Agreements Certificate. (Applies only if the clause at FAR 52.225-5, Trade Agreements, is included in this solicitation.)

(i) The offeror certifies that each end product, except those listed in paragraph (g)(4)(ii) of this provision, is a U.S.-made or designated country end product, as defined in the clause of this solicitation entitled "Trade Agreements."

(ii) The offeror shall list as other end products those end products that are not U.S.-made or designated country end products.

Other End Products:

Line Item No.	Country of Origin
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

[List as necessary]

(iii) The Government will evaluate offers in accordance with the policies and procedures of FAR Part 25. For line items covered by the WTO GPA, the Government will evaluate offers of U.S.-made or designated country end products without regard to the restrictions of the Buy American Act. The Government will consider for award only offers of U.S.-made or designated country end products unless the Contracting Officer determines that there are no offers for such products or that the offers for such products are insufficient to fulfill the requirements of the solicitation.

(h) Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension or Ineligibility for Award (Executive Order 12549). The offeror certifies, to the best of its knowledge and belief, that --

(1) The offeror and/or any of its principals ( ) are, ( ) are not presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, or declared ineligible for the award of contracts by any Federal agency, and

(2) ( ) Have, ( ) have not, within a three-year period preceding this offer, been convicted of or had a civil judgment rendered against them for: commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a Federal, state or local government contract or subcontract; violation of Federal or state antitrust statutes relating to the submission of offers; or commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records, making false statements, tax evasion, or receiving stolen property; and

(3) ( ) are, ( ) are not presently indicted for, or otherwise criminally or civilly charged by a Government entity with, commission of any of these offenses.

(i) Certification Regarding Knowledge of Child Labor for Listed End Products (Executive Order 13126). [The Contracting Officer must list in paragraph (i)(1) any end products being acquired under this solicitation that are included in the List of Products Requiring Contractor Certification as to Forced or Indentured Child Labor, unless excluded at 22.1503(b).]

(1) Listed End Product

Listed End Product	• Listed Countries of Origin:
•	•
•	•
•	•

(2) Certification. [If the Contracting Officer has identified end products and countries of origin in paragraph (i)(1) of this provision, then the offeror must certify to either (i)(2)(i) or (i)(2)(ii) by checking the appropriate block.]

( )(i) The offeror will not supply any end product listed in paragraph (i)(1) of this provision that was mined, produced, or manufactured in the corresponding country as listed for that product.

( ) (ii) The offeror may supply an end product listed in paragraph (i)(1) of this provision that was mined, produced, or manufactured in the corresponding country as listed for that product. The offeror certifies that is has made a good faith effort to determine whether forced or indentured child labor was used to mine, produce, or manufacture any such end product furnished under this contract. On the basis of those efforts, the offeror certifies that it is not aware of any such use of child labor.

(j)(1) Annual Representations and Certifications. Any changes provided by the offeror in paragraph (j) of this provision do not automatically change the representations and certifications posted on the Online Representations and Certifications Application (ORCA) website.

(2) The offeror has completed the annual representations and certifications electronically via the ORCA website at http://orca.bpn.gov. After reviewing the ORCA database information, the offeror verifies by submission of this offer that the representations and certifications currently posted electronically at FAR 52.212-3, Offeror Representations and Certifications--Commercial Items, have been entered or updated in the last 12 months, are current, accurate, complete, and applicable to this solicitation (including the business size standard applicable to the NAICS code referenced for this solicitation), as of the date of this offer and are incorporated in this offer by reference (see FAR 4.1201), except for paragraphs ____

(Offeror to identify the applicable paragraphs at (b) through (i) of this provision that the offeror has completed for the purposes of this solicitation only, if any.

These amended representation(s) and/or certification(s) are also incorporated in this offer and are current, accurate, and complete as of the date of this offer.

Any changes provided by the offeror are applicable to this solicitation only, and do not result in an update to the representations and certifications posted on ORCA.)
(End of provision)

Section 00700 - Contract Clauses

CLAUSES INCORPORATED BY FULL TEXT

52.202-1 DEFINITIONS (JUL 2004)

(a) When a solicitation provision or contract clause uses a word or term that is defined in the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR), the word or term has the same meaning as the definition in FAR 2.101 in effect at the time the solicitation was issued, unless--

(1) The solicitation, or amended solicitation, provides a different definition;

(2) The contracting parties agree to a different definition;

(3) The part, subpart, or section of the FAR where the provision or clause is prescribed provides a different meaning; or

(4) The word or term is defined in FAR Part 31, for use in the cost principles and procedures.

(b) The FAR Index is a guide to words and terms the FAR defines and shows where each definition is located. The FAR Index is available via the Internet at http://www.acqnet.gov at the end of the FAR, after the FAR Appendix.

(End of clause)

52.203-3 GRATUITIES (APR 1984)

(a) The right of the Contractor to proceed may be terminated by written notice if, after notice and hearing, the agency head or a designee determines that the Contractor, its agent, or another representative--

(1) Offered or gave a gratuity (e.g., an entertainment or gift) to an officer, official, or employee of the Government; and

(2) Intended, by the gratuity, to obtain a contract or favorable treatment under a contract.

(b) The facts supporting this determination may be reviewed by any court having lawful jurisdiction.

(c) If this contract is terminated under paragraph (a) of this clause, the Government is entitled--

(1) To pursue the same remedies as in a breach of the contract; and

(2) In addition to any other damages provided by law, to exemplary damages of not less than 3 nor more than 10 times the cost incurred by the Contractor in giving gratuities to the person concerned, as determined by the agency head or a designee. (This subparagraph (c)(2) is applicable only if this contract uses money appropriated to the Department of Defense.)

(d) The rights and remedies of the Government provided in this clause shall not be exclusive and are in addition to any other rights and remedies provided by law or under this contract.

(End of clause)

52.203-5 COVENANT AGAINST CONTINGENT FEES (APR 1984)

(a) The Contractor warrants that no person or agency has been employed or retained to solicit or obtain this contract upon an agreement or understanding for a contingent fee, except a bona fide employee or agency. For breach or violation of this warranty, the Government shall have the right to annul this contract without liability or, in its discretion, to deduct from the contract price or consideration, or otherwise recover, the full amount of the contingent fee.

(b) "Bona fide agency," as used in this clause, means an established commercial or selling agency, maintained by a contractor for the purpose of securing business, that neither exerts nor proposes to exert improper influence to solicit or obtain Government contracts nor holds itself out as being able to obtain any Government contract or contracts through improper influence.

"Bona fide employee," as used in this clause, means a person, employed by a contractor and subject to the contractor's supervision and control as to time, place, and manner of performance, who neither exerts nor proposes to exert improper influence to solicit or obtain Government contracts nor holds out as being able to obtain any Government contract or contracts through improper influence.

"Contingent fee," as used in this clause, means any commission, percentage, brokerage, or other fee that is contingent upon the success that a person or concern has in securing a Government contract.

"Improper influence," as used in this clause, means any influence that induces or tends to induce a Government employee or officer to give consideration or to act regarding a Government contract on any basis other than the merits of the matter.

(End of clause)

52.203-7 ANTI-KICKBACK PROCEDURES. (JUL 1995)

(a) Definitions.

"Kickback," as used in this clause, means any money, fee, commission, credit, gift, gratuity, thing of value, or compensation of any kind which is provided, directly or indirectly, to any prime Contractor, prime Contractor employee, subcontractor, or subcontractor employee for the purpose of improperly obtaining or rewarding favorable treatment in connection with a prime contract or in connection with a subcontract relating to a prime contract.

"Person," as used in this clause, means a corporation, partnership, business association of any kind, trust, joint-stock company, or individual.

"Prime contract," as used in this clause, means a contract or contractual action entered into by the United States for the purpose of obtaining supplies, materials, equipment, or services of any kind.

"Prime Contractor," as used in this clause, means a person who has entered into a prime contract with the United States.

"Prime Contractor employee," as used in this clause, means any officer, partner, employee, or agent of a prime Contractor.

"Subcontract," as used in this clause, means a contract or contractual action entered into by a prime Contractor or subcontractor for the purpose of obtaining supplies, materials, equipment, or services of any kind under a prime contract.

"Subcontractor," as used in this clause, (1) means any person, other than the prime Contractor, who offers to furnish or furnishes any supplies, materials, equipment, or services of any kind under a prime contract or a subcontract entered into in connection with such prime contract, and (2) includes any person who offers to furnish or furnishes general supplies to the prime Contractor or a higher tier subcontractor.

"Subcontractor employee," as used in this clause, means any officer, partner, employee, or agent of a subcontractor.

(b) The Anti-Kickback Act of 1986 (41 U.S.C. 51-58) (the Act), prohibits any person from -

(1) Providing or attempting to provide or offering to provide any kickback;

(2) Soliciting, accepting, or attempting to accept any kickback; or

(3) Including, directly or indirectly, the amount of any kickback in the contract price charged by a prime Contractor to the United States or in the contract price charged by a subcontractor to a prime Contractor or higher tier subcontractor.

(c)(1) The Contractor shall have in place and follow reasonable procedures designed to prevent and detect possible violations described in paragraph (b) of this clause in its own operations and direct business relationships.

(2) When the Contractor has reasonable grounds to believe that a violation described in paragraph (b) of this clause may have occurred, the Contractor shall promptly report in writing the possible violation. Such reports shall be made to the inspector general of the contracting agency, the head of the contracting agency if the agency does not have an inspector general, or the Department of Justice.

(3) The Contractor shall cooperate fully with any Federal agency investigating a possible violation described in paragraph (b) of this clause.

(4) The Contracting Officer may (i) offset the amount of the kickback against any monies owed by the United States under the prime contract and/or (ii) direct that the Prime Contractor withhold, from sums owed a subcontractor under the prime contract, the amount of any kickback. The Contracting Officer may order the monies withheld under subdivision (c)(4)(ii) of this clause be paid over to the Government unless the Government has already offset those monies under subdivision (c)(4)(i) of this clause. In either case, the Prime Contractor shall notify the Contracting Officer when the monies are withheld.

(5) The Contractor agrees to incorporate the substance of this clause, including this subparagraph (c)(5) but excepting subparagraph (c)(1), in all subcontracts under this contract which exceed $100,000.

52.203-8 CANCELLATION, RESCISSION, AND RECOVERY OF FUNDS FOR ILLEGAL OR IMPROPER ACTIVITY (JAN 1997)

(a) If the Government receives information that a contractor or a person has engaged in conduct constituting a violation of subsection (a), (b), (c), or (d) of Section 27 of the Office of Federal Procurement Policy Act (41 U.S.C. 423) (the Act), as amended by section 4304 of the 1996 National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1996 (Pub. L. 104-106), the Government may--

(1) Cancel the solicitation, if the contract has not yet been awarded or issued; or

(2) Rescind the contract with respect to which--

(i) The Contractor or someone acting for the Contractor has been convicted for an offense where the conduct constitutes a violation of subsection 27(a) or (b) of the Act for the purpose of either--

(A) Exchanging the information covered by such subsections for anything of value; or

(B) Obtaining or giving anyone a competitive advantage in the award of a Federal agency procurement contract; or

(ii) The head of the contracting activity has determined, based upon a preponderance of the evidence, that the Contractor or someone acting for the Contractor has engaged in conduct constituting an offense punishable under subsections 27(e)(1) of the Act.

(b) If the Government rescinds the contract under paragraph (a) of this clause, the Government is entitled to recover, in addition to any penalty prescribed by law, the amount expended under the contract.

(c) The rights and remedies of the Government specified herein are not exclusive, and are in addition to any other rights and remedies provided by law, regulation, or under this contract.

(End of clause)

52.203-10 PRICE OR FEE ADJUSTMENT FOR ILLEGAL OR IMPROPER ACTIVITY (JAN 1997)

(a) The Government, at its election, may reduce the price of a fixed-price type contract and the total cost and fee under a cost-type contract by the amount of profit or fee determined as set forth in paragraph (b) of this clause if the head of the contracting activity or designee determines that there was a violation of subsection 27 (a), (b), or (c) of the Office of Federal Procurement Policy Act, as amended (41 U.S.C. 423), as implemented in section 3.104 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation.

(b) The price or fee reduction referred to in paragraph (a) of this clause shall be--

(1) For cost-plus-fixed-fee contracts, the amount of the fee specified in the contract at the time of award;

(2) For cost-plus-incentive-fee contracts, the target fee specified in the contract at the time of award, notwithstanding any minimum fee or "fee floor" specified in the contract;

(3) For cost-plus-award-fee contracts--

(i) The base fee established in the contract at the time of contract award;

(ii) If no base fee is specified in the contract, 30 percent of the amount of each award fee otherwise payable to the Contractor for each award fee evaluation period or at each award fee determination point.

(4) For fixed-price-incentive contracts, the Government may--

(i) Reduce the contract target price and contract target profit both by an amount equal to the initial target profit specified in the contract at the time of contract award; or

(ii) If an immediate adjustment to the contract target price and contract target profit would have a significant adverse impact on the incentive price revision relationship under the contract, or adversely affect the contract financing provisions, the Contracting Officer may defer such adjustment until establishment of the total final price of the contract. The total final price established in accordance with the incentive price revision provisions of the contract shall be reduced by an amount equal to the initial target profit specified in the contract at the time of contract award and such reduced price shall be the total final contract price.

(5) For firm-fixed-price contracts, by 10 percent of the initial contract price or a profit amount determined by the

Contracting Officer from records or documents in existence prior to the date of the contract award.

(c) The Government may, at its election, reduce a prime contractor's price or fee in accordance with the procedures of paragraph (b) of this clause for violations of the Act by its subcontractors by an amount not to exceed the amount of profit or fee reflected in the subcontract at the time the subcontract was first definitively priced.

(d) In addition to the remedies in paragraphs (a) and (c) of this clause, the Government may terminate this contract for default. The rights and remedies of the Government specified herein are not exclusive, and are in addition to any other rights and remedies provided by law or under this contract.

(End of clause)

52.203-12 LIMITATION ON PAYMENTS TO INFLUENCE CERTAIN FEDERAL TRANSACTIONS (JUN 2003)

(a) Definitions.

"Agency," as used in this clause, means executive agency as defined in 2.101.

"Covered Federal action," as used in this clause, means any of the following Federal actions:

(1) The awarding of any Federal contract.

(2) The making of any Federal grant.

(3) The making of any Federal loan.

(4) The entering into of any cooperative agreement.

(5) The extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

"Indian tribe" and "tribal organization," as used in this clause, have the meaning provided in section 4 of the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act (25 U.S.C. 450B) and include Alaskan Natives.

"Influencing or attempting to influence," as used in this clause, means making, with the intent to influence, any communication to or appearance before an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with any covered Federal action.

"Local government," as used in this clause, means a unit of government in a State and, if chartered, established, or otherwise recognized by a State for the performance of a governmental duty, including a local public authority, a special district, an intrastate district, a council of governments, a sponsor group representative organization, and any other instrumentality of a local government.

"Officer or employee of an agency," as used in this clause, includes the following individuals who are employed by an agency:

(1) An individual who is appointed to a position in the Government under Title 5, United States Code, including a position under a temporary appointment.

(2) A member of the uniformed services, as defined in subsection 101(3),Title 37, United States Code.

(3) A special Government employee, as defined in section 202, Title 18, United States Code.

(4) An individual who is a member of a Federal advisory committee, as defined by the Federal Advisory Committee Act, Title 5, United States Code, appendix 2.

"Person," as used in this clause, means an individual, corporation, company, association, authority, firm, partnership, society, State, and local government, regardless of whether such entity is operated for profit, or not for profit. This term excludes an Indian tribe, tribal organization, or any other Indian organization with respect to expenditures specifically permitted by other Federal law.

"Reasonable compensation," as used in this clause, means, with respect to a regularly employed officer or employee of any person, compensation that is consistent with the normal compensation for such officer or employee for work that is not furnished to, not funded by, or not furnished in cooperation with the Federal Government.

"Reasonable payment," as used in this clause, means, with respect to professional and other technical services, a payment in an amount that is consistent with the amount normally paid for such services in the private sector.

"Recipient," as used in this clause, includes the Contractor and all subcontractors. This term excludes an Indian tribe, tribal organization, or any other Indian organization with respect to expenditures specifically permitted by other Federal law.

"Regularly employed," as used in this clause, means, with respect to an officer or employee of a person requesting or receiving a Federal contract, an officer or employee who is employed by such person for at least 130 working days within 1 year immediately preceding the date of the submission that initiates agency consideration of such person for receipt of such contract. An officer or employee who is employed by such person for less than 130 working days within 1 year immediately preceding the date of the submission that initiates agency consideration of such person shall be considered to be regularly employed as soon as he or she is employed by such person for 130 working days.

State, as used in this clause, means a State of the United States, the District of Columbia, or an outlying area of the United States, an agency or instrumentality of a State, and multi-State, regional, or interstate entity having governmental duties and powers.

(b) Prohibitions.

(1) Section 1352 of Title 31, United States Code, among other things, prohibits a recipient of a Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement from using appropriated funds to pay any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with any of the following covered Federal actions: the awarding of any Federal contract; the making of any Federal grant; the making of any Federal loan; the entering into of any cooperative agreement; or the modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

(2) The Act also requires Contractors to furnish a disclosure if any funds other than Federal appropriated funds (including profit or fee received under a covered Federal transaction) have been paid, or will be paid, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with a Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

(3) The prohibitions of the Act do not apply under the following conditions:

(i) Agency and legislative liaison by own employees.

(A) The prohibition on the use of appropriated funds, in subparagraph (b)(1) of this clause, does not apply in the case of a payment of reasonable compensation made to an officer or employee of a person requesting or receiving a

covered Federal action if the payment is for agency and legislative liaison activities not directly related to a covered Federal action.

(B) For purposes of subdivision (b)(3)(i)(A) of this clause, providing any information specifically requested by an agency or Congress is permitted at any time.

(C) The following agency and legislative liaison activities are permitted at any time where they are not related to a specific solicitation for any covered Federal action:

(1) Discussing with an agency the qualities and characteristics (including individual demonstrations) of the person's products or services, conditions or terms of sale, and service capabilities.

(2) Technical discussions and other activities regarding the application or adaptation of the person's products or services for an agency's use.

(D) The following agency and legislative liaison activities are permitted where they are prior to formal solicitation of any covered Federal action--

(1) Providing any information not specifically requested but necessary for an agency to make an informed decision about initiation of a covered Federal action;

(2) Technical discussions regarding the preparation of an unsolicited proposal prior to its official submission; and

(3) Capability presentations by persons seeking awards from an agency pursuant to the provisions of the Small Business Act, as amended by Pub. L. 95-507, and subsequent amendments.

(E) Only those services expressly authorized by subdivision (b)(3)(i)(A) of this clause are permitted under this clause.

(ii) Professional and technical services.

(A) The prohibition on the use of appropriated funds, in subparagraph (b)(1) of this clause, does not apply in the case of--

(1) A payment of reasonable compensation made to an officer or employee of a person requesting or receiving a covered Federal action or an extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of a covered Federal action, if payment is for professional or technical services rendered directly in the preparation, submission, or negotiation of any bid, proposal, or application for that Federal action or for meeting requirements imposed by or pursuant to law as a condition for receiving that Federal action.

(2) Any reasonable payment to a person, other than an officer or employee of a person requesting or receiving a covered Federal action or an extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of a covered Federal action if the payment is for professional or technical services rendered directly in the preparation, submission, or negotiation of any bid, proposal, or application for that Federal action or for meeting requirements imposed by or pursuant to law as a condition for receiving that Federal action. Persons other than officers or employees of a person requesting or receiving a covered Federal action include consultants and trade associations.

(B) For purposes of subdivision (b)(3)(ii)(A) of this clause, "professional and technical services" shall be limited to advice and analysis directly applying any professional or technical discipline. For example, drafting of a legal document accompanying a bid or proposal by a lawyer is allowable. Similarly, technical advice provided by an engineer on the performance or operational capability of a piece of equipment rendered directly in the negotiation of a contract is allowable. However, communications with the intent to influence made by a professional (such as a licensed lawyer) or a technical person (such as a licensed accountant) are not allowable under this section unless they provide advice and analysis directly applying their professional or technical expertise and unless the advice or

analysis is rendered directly and solely in the preparation, submission or negotiation of a covered Federal action. Thus, for example, communications with the intent to influence made by a lawyer that do not provide legal advice or analysis directly and solely related to the legal aspects of his or her client's proposal, but generally advocate one proposal over another are not allowable under this section because the lawyer is not providing professional legal services. Similarly, communications with the intent to influence made by an engineer providing an engineering analysis prior to the preparation or submission of a bid or proposal are not allowable under this section since the engineer is providing technical services but not directly in the preparation, submission or negotiation of a covered Federal action.

(C) Requirements imposed by or pursuant to law as a condition for receiving a covered Federal award include those required by law or regulation and any other requirements in the actual award documents.

(D) Only those services expressly authorized by subdivisions (b)(3)(ii)(A)(1) and (2) of this clause are permitted under this clause.

(E) The reporting requirements of FAR 3.803(a) shall not apply with respect to payments of reasonable compensation made to regularly employed officers or employees of a person.

(c) Disclosure.

(1) The Contractor who requests or receives from an agency a Federal contract shall file with that agency a disclosure form, OMB standard form LLL, Disclosure of Lobbying Activities, if such person has made or has agreed to make any payment using nonappropriated funds (to include profits from any covered Federal action), which would be prohibited under subparagraph (b)(1) of this clause, if paid for with appropriated funds.

(2) The Contractor shall file a disclosure form at the end of each calendar quarter in which there occurs any event that materially affects the accuracy of the information contained in any disclosure form previously filed by such person under subparagraph (c)(1) of this clause. An event that materially affects the accuracy of the information reported includes--

(i) A cumulative increase of $25,000 or more in the amount paid or expected to be paid for influencing or attempting to influence a covered Federal action; or

(ii) A change in the person(s) or individual(s) influencing or attempting to influence a covered Federal action; or

(iii) A change in the officer(s), employee(s), or Member(s) contacted to influence or attempt to influence a covered Federal action.

(3) The Contractor shall require the submittal of a certification, and if required, a disclosure form by any person who requests or receives any subcontract exceeding $100,000 under the Federal contract.

(4) All subcontractor disclosure forms (but not certifications) shall be forwarded from tier to tier until received by the prime Contractor. The prime Contractor shall submit all disclosures to the Contracting Officer at the end of the calendar quarter in which the disclosure form is submitted by the subcontractor. Each subcontractor certification shall be retained in the subcontract file of the awarding Contractor.

(d) Agreement. The Contractor agrees not to make any payment prohibited by this clause.

(e) Penalties.

(1) Any person who makes an expenditure prohibited under paragraph (a) of this clause or who fails to file or amend the disclosure form to be filed or amended by paragraph (b) of this clause shall be subject to civil penalties as provided for by 31 U.S.C. 1352. An imposition of a civil penalty does not prevent the Government from seeking any other remedy that may be applicable.

(2) Contractors may rely without liability on the representation made by their subcontractors in the certification and disclosure form.

(f) Cost allowability. Nothing in this clause makes allowable or reasonable any costs which would otherwise be unallowable or unreasonable. Conversely, costs made specifically unallowable by the requirements in this clause will not be made allowable under any other provision.

(End of clause)

52.204-4 PRINTED OR COPIED DOUBLE-SIDED ON RECYCLED PAPER (AUG 2000)

(a) Definitions. As used in this clause--

“Postconsumer material” means a material or finished product that has served its intended use and has been discarded for disposal or recovery, having completed its life as a consumer item. Postconsumer material is a part of the broader category of “recovered material.” For paper and paper products, postconsumer material means “postconsumer fiber” defined by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) as--

(1) Paper, paperboard, and fibrous materials from retail stores, office buildings, homes, and so forth, after they have passed through their end-usage as a consumer item, including: used corrugated boxes; old newspapers; old magazines; mixed waste paper; tabulating cards; and used cordage; or

(2) All paper, paperboard, and fibrous materials that enter and are collected from municipal solid waste; but not

(3) Fiber derived from printers' over-runs, converters' scrap, and over-issue publications.

“Printed or copied double-sided” means printing or reproducing a document so that information is on both sides of a sheet of paper.

“Recovered material,” for paper and paper products, is defined by EPA in its Comprehensive Procurement Guideline as “recovered fiber” and means the following materials:

(1) Postconsumer fiber; and

(2) Manufacturing wastes such as--

(i) Dry paper and paperboard waste generated after completion of the papermaking process (that is, those manufacturing operations up to and including the cutting and trimming of the paper machine reel into smaller rolls or rough sheets) including: envelope cuttings, bindery trimmings, and other paper and paperboard waste resulting from printing, cutting, forming, and other converting operations; bag, box, and carton manufacturing wastes; and butt rolls, mill wrappers, and rejected unused stock; and

(ii) Repulped finished paper and paperboard from obsolete inventories of paper and paperboard manufacturers, merchants, wholesalers, dealers, printers, converters, or others.

(b) In accordance with Section 101 of Executive Order 13101 of September 14, 1998, Greening the Government through Waste Prevention, Recycling, and Federal Acquisition, the Contractor is encouraged to submit paper documents, such as offers, letters, or reports, that are printed or copied double-sided on recycled paper that meet minimum content standards specified in Section 505 of Executive Order 13101, when not using electronic commerce methods to submit information or data to the Government.

(c) If the Contractor cannot purchase high-speed copier paper, offset paper, forms bond, computer printout paper, carbonless paper, file folders, white wove envelopes, writing and office paper, book paper, cotton fiber paper, and cover stock meeting the 30 percent postconsumer material standard for use in submitting paper documents to the Government, it should use paper containing no less than 20 percent postconsumer material. This lesser standard should be used only when paper meeting the 30 percent postconsumer material standard is not obtainable at a reasonable price or does not meet reasonable performance standards.

(End of clause)

52.209-6 PROTECTING THE GOVERNMENT'S INTEREST WHEN SUBCONTRACTING WITH CONTRACTORS DEBARRED, SUSPENDED, OR PROPOSED FOR DEBARMENT (JAN 2005)

(a) The Government suspends or debars Contractors to protect the Government's interests. The Contractor shall not enter into any subcontract in excess of the $25,000 with a Contractor that is debarred, suspended, or proposed for debarment unless there is a compelling reason to do so.

(b) The Contractor shall require each proposed first-tier subcontractor, whose subcontract will exceed $25,000, to disclose to the Contractor, in writing, whether as of the time of award of the subcontract, the subcontractor, or its principles, is or is not debarred, suspended, or proposed for debarment by the Federal Government.

(c) A corporate officer or a designee of the Contractor shall notify the Contracting Officer, in writing, before entering into a subcontract with a party that is debarred, suspended, or proposed for debarment (see FAR 9.404 for information on the in the Excluded Parties List System). The notice must include the following:

(1) The name of the subcontractor.

(2) The Contractor's knowledge of the reasons for the subcontractor being in the Excluded Parties List System.

(3) The compelling reason(s) for doing business with the subcontractor notwithstanding its inclusion in the Excluded Parties List System.

(4) The systems and procedures the Contractor has established to ensure that it is fully protecting the Government's interests when dealing with such subcontractor in view of the specific basis for the party's debarment, suspension, or proposed debarment.

(End of clause)

52.211-18 VARIATION IN ESTIMATED QUANTITY (APR 1984)

If the quantity of a unit-priced item in this contract is an estimated quantity and the actual quantity of the unit-priced item varies more than 15 percent above or below the estimated quantity, an equitable adjustment in the contract price shall be made upon demand of either party. The equitable adjustment shall be based upon any increase or decrease in costs due solely to the variation above 115 percent or below 85 percent of the estimated quantity. If the quantity variation is such as to cause an increase in the time necessary for completion, the Contractor may request, in writing, an extension of time, to be received by the Contracting Officer within 10 days from the beginning of the delay, or within such further period as may be granted by the Contracting Officer before the date of final settlement of the contract. Upon the receipt of a written request for an extension, the Contracting Officer shall ascertain the facts and make an adjustment for extending the completion date as, in the judgement of the Contracting Officer, is justified.

52.214-26 AUDIT AND RECORDS--SEALED BIDDING. (OCT 1997)

(a) As used in this clause, records includes books, documents, accounting procedures and practices, and other data, regardless of type and regardless of whether such items are in written form, in the form of computer data, or in any other form.

(b) Cost or pricing data. If the Contractor has been required to submit cost or pricing data in connection with the pricing of any modification to this contract, the Contracting Officer, or an authorized representative of the Contracting Officer, in order to evaluate the accuracy, completeness, and currency of the cost or pricing data, shall have the right to examine and audit all of the Contractor's records, including computations and projections, related to--

(1) The proposal for the modification;

(2) The discussions conducted on the proposal(s), including those related to negotiating;

(3) Pricing of the modification; or

(4) Performance of the modification.

(c) Comptroller General. In the case of pricing any modification, the Comptroller General of the United States, or an authorized representative, shall have the same rights as specified in paragraph (b) of this clause.

(d) Availability. The Contractor shall make available at its office at all reasonable times the materials described in reproduction, until 3 years after final payment under this contract, or for any other period specified in Subpart 4.7 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR). FAR Subpart 4.7, Contractor Records Retention, in effect on the data of this contract, is incorporated by reference in its entirety and made a part of this contract.

(1) If this contract is completely or partially terminated, the records relating to the work terminated shall be made available for 3 years after any resulting final termination settlement.

(2) Records pertaining to appeals under the Disputes clause or to litigation or the settlement of claims arising under or relating to the performance of this contract shall be made available until disposition of such appeals, litigation, or claims.

(e) The Contractor shall insert a clause containing all the provisions of this clause, including this paragraph (e), in all subcontracts expected to exceed the threshold in FAR 15.403-4(a)(1) for submission of cost or pricing data.

(End of clause)

52.214-27 PRICE REDUCTION FOR DEFECTIVE COST OR PRICING DATA - MODIFICATIONS - SEALED BIDDING. (OCT 1997)

(a) This clause shall become operative only for any modification to this contract involving aggregate increases and/or decreases in costs, plus applicable profits, expected to exceed the threshold for the submission of cost or pricing data at FAR 15.403-4(a)(1), except that this clause does not apply to a modification if an exception under FAR 15.403-1(b) applies.

(1) Based on adequate price competition;

(2) Based on established catalog or market prices of commercial items sold in substantial quantities to the general public; or

(3) Set by law or regulation.

(b) If any price, including profit, negotiated in connection with any modification under this clause, was increased by any significant amount because

(1) the Contractor or a subcontractor furnished cost or pricing data that were not complete, accurate, and current as certified in its Certificate of Current Cost or Pricing Data;

(2) a subcontractor or prospective subcontractor furnished the Contractor cost or pricing data that were not complete, accurate, and current as certified in the Contractor's Certificate of Current Cost or Pricing Data; or

(3) any of these parties furnished data of any description that were not accurate, the price shall be reduced accordingly and the contract shall be modified to reflect the reduction. This right to a price reduction is limited to that resulting from defects in data relating to modifications for which this clause becomes operative under paragraph (a) above.

(c) Any reduction in the contract price under paragraph (b) above due to defective data from a prospective subcontractor that was not subsequently awarded the subcontract shall be limited to the amount, plus applicable overhead and profit markup, by which:

(1) the actual subcontract; or

(2) the actual cost to the Contractor, if there was no subcontract, was less than the prospective subcontract cost estimate submitted by the Contractor; provided, that the actual subcontract price was not itself affected by defective cost or pricing data.

(d) If the Contracting Officer determines under paragraph (b) of this clause that a price or cost reduction should be made:

(1) the Contractor agrees not to raise the following matters as a defense:

(i) The Contractor or subcontractor was a sole source supplier or otherwise was in a superior bargaining position and thus the price of the contract would not have been modified even if accurate, complete, and current cost or pricing data had been submitted;

(ii) The Contracting Officer should have known that the cost or pricing data in issue were defective even though the Contractor or subcontractor took no affirmative action to bring the character of the data to the attention of the Contracting Officer;

(iii) The contract was based on an agreement about the total cost of the contract and there was no agreement about the cost of each item procured under the contract; or

(iv) The Contractor or subcontractor did not submit a Certificate of Current Cost or Pricing Data.

(2) Except as prohibited by subdivision (d)(2)(ii) of this clause:

(i) an offset in an amount determined appropriate by the Contracting Officer based upon the facts shall be allowed against the amount of a contract price reduction if:

(A) The Contractor certifies to the Contracting Officer that, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge and belief, the Contractor is entitled to the offset in the amount requested; and

(B) The Contractor proves that the cost or pricing data were available before the date of agreement on the price of the contract (or price of the modification) and that the data were not submitted before such date.

(ii) An offset shall not be allowed if:

(A) The understated data was known by the Contractor to be understated when the Certificate of Current Cost or Pricing Data was signed; or (B) The Government proves that the facts demonstrate that the contract price would not have increased in the amount to be offset even if the available data had been submitted before the date of agreement on price.

(e) If any reduction in the contract price under this clause reduces the price of items for which payment was made prior to the date of the modification reflecting the price reduction, the Contractor shall be liable to and shall pay the United States at the time such overpayment is repaid:

(1) Simple interest on the amount of such overpayment to be computed from the date(s) of overpayment to the Contractor to the date the Government is repaid by the Contractor at the applicable underpayment rate effective for each quarter prescribed by the Secretary of the Treasury under 26 U.S.C. 6621(a)(2); and

(2) A penalty equal to the amount of the overpayment, if the Contractor or subcontractor knowingly submitted cost or pricing data which were incomplete, inaccurate, or noncurrent.

(End of clause)

52.214-28 SUBCONTRACTOR COST OR PRICING DATA - MODIFICATIONS - SEALED BIDDING. (OCT 1997)

(a) The requirements of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this clause shall:

(1) become operative only for any modification to this contract involving aggregate increases and/or decreases in costs, plus applicable profits, expected to exceed the threshold for submission of cost or pricing data at (FAR) 48 CFR 15.403-4(a)(1); and

(2) be limited to such modifications.

(b) Before awarding any subcontract expected to exceed the threshold for submission of cost or pricing data at FAR 15.403-4(a)(1), on the date of agreement on price or the date of award, whichever is later; or before pricing any subcontract modifications involving aggregate increases and/or decreases in costs, plus applicable profits, expected to exceed the threshold for submission of cost or pricing data at FAR 15.403-4(a)(1), the Contractor shall require the subcontractor to submit cost or pricing data (actually or by specific identification in writing), unless an exception under FAR 15.403-1(b) applies.

(1) Based on adequate price competition;

(2) Based on established catalog or market prices of commercial items sold in substantial quantities to the general public; or

(3) Set by law or regulation.

(c) The Contractor shall require the subcontractor to certify in substantially the form prescribed in subsection 15.406-2 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation that, to the best of its knowledge and belief, the data submitted under paragraph (b) above were accurate, complete, and current as of the date of agreement on the negotiated price of the subcontract or subcontract modification.

(d) The Contractor shall insert the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (d), in each subcontract that, when entered into, exceeds the threshold for submission of cost or pricing data at FAR 15.403-4(a)(1).

(End of clause)

52.215-2 AUDIT AND RECORDS--NEGOTIATION (JUN 1999)

(a) As used in this clause, "records" includes books, documents, accounting procedures and practices, and other data, regardless of type and regardless of whether such items are in written form, in the form of computer data, or in any other form.

(b) Examination of costs. If this is a cost-reimbursement, incentive, time-and-materials, labor-hour, or price redeterminable contract, or any combination of these, the Contractor shall maintain and the Contracting Officer, or an authorized representative of the Contracting Officer, shall have the right to examine and audit all records and other evidence sufficient to reflect properly all costs claimed to have been incurred or anticipated to be incurred directly or indirectly in performance of this contract. This right of examination shall include inspection at all reasonable times of the Contractor's plants, or parts of them, engaged in performing the contract.

(c) Cost or pricing data. If the Contractor has been required to submit cost or pricing data in connection with any pricing action relating to this contract, the Contracting Officer, or an authorized representative of the Contracting Officer, in order to evaluate the accuracy, completeness, and currency of the cost or pricing data, shall have the right to examine and audit all of the Contractor's records, including computations and projections, related to--

(1) The proposal for the contract, subcontract, or modification;

(2) The discussions conducted on the proposal(s), including those related to negotiating;

(3) Pricing of the contract, subcontract, or modification; or

(4) Performance of the contract, subcontract or modification.

(d) Comptroller General--(1) The Comptroller General of the United States, or an authorized representative, shall have access to and the right to examine any of the Contractor's directly pertinent records involving transactions related to this contract or a subcontract hereunder.

(2) This paragraph may not be construed to require the Contractor or subcontractor to create or maintain any record that the Contractor or subcontractor does not maintain in the ordinary course of business or pursuant to a provision of law.

(e) Reports. If the Contractor is required to furnish cost, funding, or performance reports, the Contracting Officer or an authorized representative of the Contracting Officer shall have the right to examine and audit the supporting records and materials, for the purpose of evaluating (1) the effectiveness of the Contractor's policies and procedures to produce data compatible with the objectives of these reports and (2) the data reported.

(f) Availability. The Contractor shall make available at its office at all reasonable times the records, materials, and other evidence described in paragraphs (a), (b), (c), (d), and (e) of this clause, for examination, audit, or reproduction, until 3 years after final payment under this contract or for any shorter period specified in Subpart 4.7,

Contractor Records Retention, of the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR), or for any longer period required by statute or by other clauses of this contract. In addition--

(1) If this contract is completely or partially terminated, the Contractor shall make available the records relating to the work terminated until 3 years after any resulting final termination settlement; and

(2) The Contractor shall make available records relating to appeals under the Disputes clause or to litigation or the settlement of claims arising under or relating to this contract until such appeals, litigation, or claims are finally resolved.

(g) The Contractor shall insert a clause containing all the terms of this clause, including this paragraph (g), in all subcontracts under this contract that exceed the simplified acquisition threshold, and--

(1) That are cost-reimbursement, incentive, time-and-materials, labor-hour, or price-redeterminable type or any combination of these;

(2) For which cost or pricing data are required; or

(3) That require the subcontractor to furnish reports as discussed in paragraph (e) of this clause.

The clause may be altered only as necessary to identify properly the contracting parties and the Contracting Officer under the Government prime contract.

(End of clause)

52.215-10 PRICE REDUCTION FOR DEFECTIVE COST OR PRICING DATA (OCT 1997)

(a) If any price, including profit or fee, negotiated in connection with this contract, or any cost reimbursable under this contract, was increased by any significant amount because--

(1) The Contractor or a subcontractor furnished cost or pricing data that were not complete, accurate, and current as certified in its Certificate of Current Cost or Pricing Data;

(2) A subcontractor or prospective subcontractor furnished the Contractor cost or pricing data that were not complete, accurate, and current as certified in the Contractor's Certificate of Current Cost or Pricing Data; or

(3) Any of these parties furnished data of any description that were not accurate, the price or cost shall be reduced accordingly and the contract shall be modified to reflect the reduction.

(b) Any reduction in the contract price under paragraph (a) of this clause due to defective data from a prospective subcontractor that was not subsequently awarded the subcontract shall be limited to the amount, plus applicable overhead and profit markup, by which--

(1) The actual subcontract; or

(2) The actual cost to the Contractor, if there was no subcontract, was less than the prospective subcontract cost estimate submitted by the Contractor; provided, that the actual subcontract price was not itself affected by defective cost or pricing data.

(c)(1) If the Contracting Officer determines under paragraph (a) of this clause that a price or cost reduction should be made, the Contractor agrees not to raise the following matters as a defense:

(i) The Contractor or subcontractor was a sole source supplier or otherwise was in a superior bargaining position and thus the price of the contract would not have been modified even if accurate, complete, and current cost or pricing data had been submitted.

(ii) The Contracting Officer should have known that the cost or pricing data in issue were defective even though the Contractor or subcontractor took no affirmative action to bring the character of the data to the attention of the Contracting Officer.

(iii) The contract was based on an agreement about the total cost of the contract and there was no agreement about the cost of each item procured under the contract.

(iv) The Contractor or subcontractor did not submit a Certificate of Current Cost or Pricing Data.

(2)(i) Except as prohibited by subdivision (c)(2)(ii) of this clause, an offset in an amount determined appropriate by the Contracting Officer based upon the facts shall be allowed against the amount of a contract price reduction if--

(A) The Contractor certifies to the Contracting Officer that, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge and belief, the Contractor is entitled to the offset in the amount requested; and

(B) The Contractor proves that the cost or pricing data were available before the “as of” date specified on its Certificate of Current Cost or Pricing Data, and that the data were not submitted before such date.

(ii) An offset shall not be allowed if--

(A) The understated data were known by the Contractor to be understated before the “as of” date specified on its Certificate of Current Cost or Pricing Data; or

(B) The Government proves that the facts demonstrate that the contract price would not have increased in the amount to be offset even if the available data had been submitted before the “as of” date specified on its Certificate of Current Cost or Pricing Data.

(d) If any reduction in the contract price under this clause reduces the price of items for which payment was made prior to the date of the modification reflecting the price reduction, the Contractor shall be liable to and shall pay the United States at the time such overpayment is repaid--

(1) Simple interest on the amount of such overpayment to be computed from the date(s) of overpayment to the Contractor to the date the Government is repaid by the Contractor at the applicable underpayment rate effective for each quarter prescribed by the Secretary of the Treasury under 26 U.S.C. 6621(a)(2); and

A penalty equal to the amount of the overpayment, if the Contractor or subcontractor knowingly submitted cost or pricing data that were incomplete, inaccurate, or noncurrent.

(End of clause)

52.215-11 PRICE REDUCTION FOR DEFECTIVE COST OR PRICING DATA--MODIFICATIONS (OCT 1997)

(a) This clause shall become operative only for any modification to this contract involving a pricing adjustment expected to exceed the threshold for submission of cost or pricing data at FAR 15.403-4, except that this clause does not apply to any modification if an exception under FAR 15.403-1 applies.

(b) If any price, including profit or fee, negotiated in connection with any modification under this clause, or any cost reimbursable under this contract, was increased by any significant amount because (1) the Contractor or a subcontractor furnished cost or pricing data that were not complete, accurate, and current as certified in its Certificate of Current Cost or Pricing Data, (2) a subcontractor or prospective subcontractor furnished the Contractor cost or pricing data that were not complete, accurate, and current as certified in the Contractor's Certificate of Current Cost or Pricing Data, or (3) any of these parties furnished data of any description that were not accurate, the price or cost shall be reduced accordingly and the contract shall be modified to reflect the reduction. This right to a price reduction is limited to that resulting from defects in data relating to modifications for which this clause becomes operative under paragraph (a) of this clause.

(c) Any reduction in the contract price under paragraph (b) of this clause due to defective data from a prospective subcontractor that was not subsequently awarded the subcontract shall be limited to the amount, plus applicable overhead and profit markup, by which--

(1) The actual subcontract; or

(2) The actual cost to the Contractor, if there was no subcontract, was less than the prospective subcontract cost estimate submitted by the Contractor; provided, that the actual subcontract price was not itself affected by defective cost or pricing data.

(d)(1) If the Contracting Officer determines under paragraph (b) of this clause that a price or cost reduction should be made, the Contractor agrees not to raise the following matters as a defense:

(i) The Contractor or subcontractor was a sole source supplier or otherwise was in a superior bargaining position and thus the price of the contract would not have been modified even if accurate, complete, and current cost or pricing data had been submitted.

(ii) The Contracting Officer should have known that the cost or pricing data in issue were defective even though the Contractor or subcontractor took no affirmative action to bring the character of the data to the attention of the Contracting Officer.

(iii) The contract was based on an agreement about the total cost of the contract and there was no agreement about the cost of each item procured under the contract.

(iv) The Contractor or subcontractor did not submit a Certificate of Current Cost or Pricing Data.

(2)(i) Except as prohibited by subdivision (d)(2)(ii) of this clause, an offset in an amount determined appropriate by the Contracting Officer based upon the facts shall be allowed against the amount of a contract price reduction if--

(A) The Contractor certifies to the Contracting Officer that, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge and belief, the Contractor is entitled to the offset in the amount requested; and

(B) The Contractor proves that the cost or pricing data were available before the “as of” date specified on its Certificate of Current Cost or Pricing Data, and that the data were not submitted before such date.

(ii) An offset shall not be allowed if--

(A) The understated data were known by the Contractor to be understated before the “as of” date specified on its Certificate of Current Cost or Pricing Data; or

(B) The Government proves that the facts demonstrate that the contract price would not have increased in the amount to be offset even if the available data had been submitted before the “as of” date specified on its Certificate of Current Cost or Pricing Data.

(e) If any reduction in the contract price under this clause reduces the price of items for which payment was made prior to the date of the modification reflecting the price reduction, the Contractor shall be liable to and shall pay the United States at the time such overpayment is repaid--

(1) Simple interest on the amount of such overpayment to be computed from the date(s) of overpayment to the Contractor to the date the Government is repaid by the Contractor at the applicable underpayment rate effective for each quarter prescribed by the Secretary of the Treasury under 26 U.S.C. 6621(a)(2); and

A penalty equal to the amount of the overpayment, if the Contractor or subcontractor knowingly submitted cost or pricing data that were incomplete, inaccurate, or noncurrent.

(End of clause)

52.215-13 SUBCONTRACTOR COST OR PRICING DATA--MODIFICATIONS (OCT 1997)

(a) The requirements of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this clause shall--

(1) Become operative only for any modification to this contract involving a pricing adjustment expected to exceed the threshold for submission of cost or pricing data at FAR 15.403-4; and

(2) Be limited to such modifications.

(b) Before awarding any subcontract expected to exceed the threshold for submission of cost or pricing data at FAR 15.403-4, on the date of agreement on price or the date of award, whichever is later; or before pricing any subcontract modification involving a pricing adjustment expected to exceed the threshold for submission of cost or pricing data at FAR 15.403-4, the Contractor shall require the subcontractor to submit cost or pricing data (actually or by specific identification in writing), unless an exception under FAR 15.403-1 applies.

(c) The Contractor shall require the subcontractor to certify in substantially the form prescribed in FAR 15.406-2 that, to the best of its knowledge and belief, the data submitted under paragraph (b) of this clause were accurate, complete, and current as of the date of agreement on the negotiated price of the subcontract or subcontract modification.

The Contractor shall insert the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (d), in each subcontract that exceeds the threshold for submission of cost or pricing data at FAR 15.403-4 on the date of agreement on price or the date of award, whichever is later.

(End of clause)

52.215-19 NOTIFICATION OF OWNERSHIP CHANGES (OCT 1997)

(a) The Contractor shall make the following notifications in writing:

(1) When the Contractor becomes aware that a change in its ownership has occurred, or is certain to occur, that could result in changes in the valuation of its capitalized assets in the accounting records, the Contractor shall notify the Administrative Contracting Officer (ACO) within 30 days.

(2) The Contractor shall also notify the ACO within 30 days whenever changes to asset valuations or any other cost changes have occurred or are certain to occur as a result of a change in ownership.

(b) The Contractor shall--

(1) Maintain current, accurate, and complete inventory records of assets and their costs;

(2) Provide the ACO or designated representative ready access to the records upon request;

(3) Ensure that all individual and grouped assets, their capitalized values, accumulated depreciation or amortization, and remaining useful lives are identified accurately before and after each of the Contractor's ownership changes; and

(4) Retain and continue to maintain depreciation and amortization schedules based on the asset records maintained before each Contractor ownership change.

The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause in all subcontracts under this contract that meet the applicability requirement of FAR 15.408(k).

(End of clause)

52.219-9 SMALL BUSINESS SUBCONTRACTING PLAN (JAN 2002)--ALTERNATE II (OCT 2001).

(a) This clause does not apply to small business concerns.

(b) Definitions. As used in this clause--

“Commercial item” means a product or service that satisfies the definition of commercial item in section 2.101 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation.

“Commercial plan” means a subcontracting plan (including goals) that covers the offeror’s fiscal year and that applies to the entire production of commercial items sold by either the entire company or a portion thereof (e.g., division, plant, or product line).

“Individual contract plan” means a subcontracting plan that covers the entire contract period (including option periods), applies to a specific contract, and has goals that are based on the offeror’s planned subcontracting in support of the specific contract except that indirect costs incurred for common or joint purposes may be allocated on a prorated basis to the contract.

“Master plan” means a subcontracting plan that contains all the required elements of an individual contract plan, except goals, and may be incorporated into individual contract plans, provided the master plan has been approved.

“Subcontract” means any agreement (other than one involving an employer-employee relationship) entered into by a Federal Government prime Contractor or subcontractor calling for supplies or services required for performance of the contract or subcontract.

(c) Proposals submitted in response to this solicitation shall include a subcontracting plan that separately addresses subcontracting with small business, veteran-owned small business, service-disabled veteran-owned small business, HUBZone small business, small disadvantaged business, and women-owned small business concerns. If the offeror is submitting an individual contract plan, the plan must separately address subcontracting with small business, veteran-owned small business, service-disabled veteran-owned small business, HUBZone small business, small disadvantaged business, and women-owned small business concerns, with a separate part for the basic contract and separate parts for each option (if any). The plan shall be included in and made a part of the resultant contract. The subcontracting plan shall be negotiated within the time specified by the Contracting Officer. Failure to submit and negotiate a subcontracting plan shall make the offeror ineligible for award of a contract.

(d) The offeror's subcontracting plan shall include the following:

(1) Goals, expressed in terms of percentages of total planned subcontracting dollars, for the use of small business, veteran-owned small business, service-disabled veteran-owned small business, HUBZone small business, small disadvantaged business, and women-owned small business concerns as subcontractors. The offeror shall include all subcontracts that contribute to contract performance, and may include a proportionate share of products and services that are normally allocated as indirect costs.

(2) A statement of --

(i) Total dollars planned to be subcontracted for an individual contract plan; or the offeror's total projected sales, expressed in dollars, and the total value of projected subcontracts to support the sales for a commercial plan;

(ii) Total dollars planned to be subcontracted to small business concerns;

(iii) Total dollars planned to be subcontracted to veteran-owned small business concerns;

(iv) Total dollars planned to be subcontracted to service-disabled veteran-owned small business;

(v) Total dollars planned to be subcontracted to HUBZone small business concerns;

(vi) Total dollars planned to be subcontracted to small disadvantaged business concerns; and

(vii) Total dollars planned to be subcontracted to women-owned small business concerns.

(3) A description of the principal types of supplies and services to be subcontracted, and an identification of the types planned for subcontracting to --

(i) Small business concerns,

(ii) Veteran-owned small business concerns;

(iii) Service-disabled veteran-owned small business concerns;

(iv) HUBZone small business concerns;

(v) Small disadvantaged business concerns, and

(vi) Women-owned small business concerns.

(4) A description of the method used to develop the subcontracting goals in paragraph (d)(1) of this clause.

(5) A description of the method used to identify potential sources for solicitation purposes (e.g., existing company source lists, the Procurement Marketing and Access Network (PRO-Net) of the Small Business Administration (SBA), veterans service organizations, the National Minority Purchasing Council Vendor Information Service, the Research and Information Division of the Minority Business Development Agency in the Department of Commerce, or small, HUBZone, small disadvantaged, and women-owned small business trade associations). A firm may rely on the information contained in PRO-Net as an accurate representation of a concern's size and ownership characteristics for the purposes of maintaining a small, veteran-owned small, service-disabled veteran-owned small, HUBZone small, small disadvantaged, and women-owned small business source list. Use of PRO-Net as its source list does not relieve a firm of its responsibilities (e.g., outreach, assistance, counseling, or publicizing subcontracting opportunities) in this clause.

(6) A statement as to whether or not the offeror included indirect costs in establishing subcontracting goals, and a description of the method used to determine the proportionate share of indirect costs to be incurred with --

(i) Small business concerns;

(ii) Veteran-owned small business concerns;

(iii) Service-disabled veteran-owned small business concerns;

(iv) HUBZone small business concerns;

(v) Small disadvantaged business concerns; and

(vi) Women-owned small business concerns.

(7) The name of the individual employed by the offeror who will administer the offeror's subcontracting program, and a description of the duties of the individual.

(8) A description of the efforts the offeror will make to assure that small business, veteran-owned small business, service-disabled veteran-owned small business, HUBZone small business, small disadvantaged business, and women-owned small business concerns have an equitable opportunity to compete for subcontracts.

(9) Assurances that the offeror will include the clause of this contract entitled "Utilization of Small Business Concerns" in all subcontracts that offer further subcontracting opportunities, and that the offeror will require all subcontractors (except small business concerns) that receive subcontracts in excess of $500,000 ($1,000,000 for construction of any public facility) to adopt a plan similar to the plan that complies with the requirements of this clause.

(10) Assurances that the offeror will --

(i) Cooperate in any studies or surveys as may be required;

(ii) Submit periodic reports so that the Government can determine the extent of compliance by the offeror with the subcontracting plan;

(iii) Submit Standard Form (SF) 294, Subcontracting Report for Individual Contracts, and/or SF 295, Summary Subcontract Report, in accordance with the paragraph (j) of this clause. The reports shall provide information on subcontract awards to small business concerns, veteran-owned small business concerns, service-disabled veteran-owned small business concerns, HUBZone small business concerns, small disadvantaged business concerns, women-owned small business concerns, and Historically Black Colleges and Universities and Minority Institutions. Reporting shall be in accordance with the instructions on the forms or as provided in agency regulations.

(iv) Ensure that its subcontractors agree to submit SF 294 and 295.

(11) A description of the types of records that will be maintained concerning procedures that have been adopted to comply with the requirements and goals in the plan, including establishing source lists; and a description of the offeror's efforts to locate small business, veteran-owned small business, service-disabled veteran-owned small business, HUBZone small business, small disadvantaged business, and women-owned small business concerns and award subcontracts to them. The records shall include at least the following (on a plant-wide or company-wide basis, unless otherwise indicated):

(i) Source lists (e.g., PRO-Net), guides, and other data that identify small business, veteran-owned small business, service-disabled veteran-owned small business, HUBZone small business, small disadvantaged business, and women-owned small business concerns.

(ii) Organizations contacted in an attempt to locate sources that are small business, veteran-owned small business, service-disabled veteran-owned small business, HUBZone small business, small disadvantaged business, or women-owned small business concerns.

(iii) Records on each subcontract solicitation resulting in an award of more than $100,000, indicating --

(A) Whether small business concerns were solicited and if not, why not;

(B) Whether veteran-owned small business concerns were solicited and, if not, why not;

(C) Whether service-disabled veteran-owned small business concerns were solicited and, if not, why not;

(D) Whether HUBZone small business concerns were solicited and, if not, why not;

(E) Whether small disadvantaged business concerns were solicited and if not, why not;

(F) Whether women-owned small business concerns were solicited and if not, why not; and

(G) If applicable, the reason award was not made to a small business concern.

(iv) Records of any outreach efforts to contact --

(A) Trade associations;

(B) Business development organizations;

(C) Conferences and trade fairs to locate small, HUBZone small, small disadvantaged, and women-owned small business sources; and

(D) Veterans service organizaions.

(v) Records of internal guidance and encouragement provided to buyers through --

(A) Workshops, seminars, training, etc., and

(B) Monitoring performance to evaluate compliance with the program’s requirements.

(vi) On a contract-by-contract basis, records to support award data submitted by the offeror to the Government, including the name, address, and business size of each subcontractor. Contractors having commercial plans need not comply with this requirement.

(e) In order to effectively implement this plan to the extent consistent with efficient contract performance, the Contractor shall perform the following functions:

(1) Assist small business, veteran-owned small business, service-disabled veteran-owned small business, HUBZone small business, small disadvantaged business, and women-owned small business concerns by arranging solicitations, time for the preparation of bids, quantities, specifications, and delivery schedules so as to facilitate the participation by such concerns. Where the Contractor’s lists of potential small business, veteran-owned small business, service-disabled veteran-owned small business, HUBZone small business, small disadvantaged business, and women-owned small business subcontractors are excessively long, reasonable effort shall be made to give all such small business concerns an opportunity to compete over a period of time.

(2) Provide adequate and timely consideration of the potentialities of small business, veteran-owned small business, service-disabled veteran-owned small business, HUBZone small business, small disadvantaged business, and women-owned small business concerns in all “make-or-buy” decisions.

(3) Counsel and discuss subcontracting opportunities with representatives of small business, veteran-owned small business, service-disabled veteran-owned small business, HUBZone small business, small disadvantaged business, and women-owned small business firms.

(4) Provide notice to subcontractors concerning penalties and remedies for misrepresentations of business status as small, veteran-owned small business, HUBZone small, small disadvantaged or women-owned small business for the purpose of obtaining a subcontract that is to be included as part or all of a goal contained in the Contractor’s subcontracting plan.

(f) A master plan on a plant or division-wide basis that contains all the elements required by paragraph (d) of this clause, except goals, may be incorporated by reference as a part of the subcontracting plan required of the offeror by this clause; provided --

(1) The master plan has been approved;

(2) The offeror ensures that the master plan is updated as necessary and provides copies of the approved master plan, including evidence of its approval, to the Contracting Officer; and

(3) Goals and any deviations from the master plan deemed necessary by the Contracting Officer to satisfy the requirements of this contract are set forth in the individual subcontracting plan.

(g) A commercial plan is the preferred type of subcontracting plan for contractors furnishing commercial items. The commercial plan shall relate to the offeror’s planned subcontracting generally, for both commercial and Government business, rather than solely to the Government contract. Commercial plans are also preferred for subcontractors that provide commercial items under a prime contract, whether or not the prime contractor is supplying a commercial item.

(h) Prior compliance of the offeror with other such subcontracting plans under previous contracts will be considered by the Contracting Officer in determining the responsibility of the offeror for award of the contract.

(i) The failure of the Contractor or subcontractor to comply in good faith with --

(1) The clause of this contract entitled “Utilization Of Small Business Concerns;” or

(2) An approved plan required by this clause, shall be a material breach of the contract.

(j) The Contractor shall submit the following reports:

(1) Standard Form 294, Subcontracting Report for Individual Contracts. This report shall be submitted to the Contracting Officer semiannually and at contract completion. The report covers subcontract award data related to this contract. This report is not required for commercial plans.

(2) Standard Form 295, Summary Subcontract Report. This report encompasses all the contracts with the awarding agency. It must be submitted semi-annually for contracts with the Department of Defense and annually for contracts with civilian agencies. If the reporting activity is covered by a commercial plan, the reporting activity must report annually all subcontract awards under that plan. All reports submitted at the close of each fiscal year (both individual and commercial plans) shall include a breakout, in the Contractor’s format, of subcontract awards, in whole dollars, to small disadvantaged business concerns by North American Industry Classification System (NAICS) Industry Subsector. For a commercial plan, the Contractor may obtain from each of its subcontractors a

predominant NAICS Industry Subsector and report all awards to that subcontractor under its predominant NAICS Industry Subsector.

(End of clause)

52.222-3 CONVICT LABOR (JUN 2003)

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this clause, the Contractor shall not employ in the performance of this contract any person undergoing a sentence of imprisonment imposed by any court of a State, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Northern Mariana Islands, American Samoa, Guam, or the U.S. Virgin Islands.

(b) The Contractor is not prohibited from employing persons--

(1) On parole or probation to work at paid employment during the term of their sentence;

(2) Who have been pardoned or who have served their terms; or

(3) Confined for violation of the laws of any of the States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Northern Mariana Islands, American Samoa, Guam, or the U.S. Virgin Islands who are authorized to work at paid employment in the community under the laws of such jurisdiction, if--

(i) The worker is paid or is in an approved work training program on a voluntary basis;

(ii) Representatives of local union central bodies or similar labor union organizations have been consulted;

(iii) Such paid employment will not result in the displacement of employed workers, or be applied in skills, crafts, or trades in which there is a surplus of available gainful labor in the locality, or impair existing contracts for services;

(iv) The rates of pay and other conditions of employment will not be less than those paid or provided for work of a similar nature in the locality in which the work is being performed; and

(v) The Attorney General of the United States has certified that the work-release laws or **regulations** of the jurisdiction involved are in conformity with the requirements of Executive Order 11755, as amended by Executive Orders 12608 and 12943.

(End of clause)

52.222-4 CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT - OVERTIME COMPENSATION. (SEP 2000)

(a) Overtime requirements. No Contractor or subcontractor employing laborers or mechanics (see Federal Acquisition Regulation 22.300) shall require or permit them to work over 40 hours in any workweek unless they are paid at least 1 and 1/2 times the basic rate of pay for each hour worked over 40 hours.

(b) Violation; liability for unpaid wages; liquidated damages. The responsible Contractor and subcontractor are liable for unpaid wages if they violate the terms in paragraph (a) of this clause. In addition, the Contractor and subcontractor are liable for liquidated damages payable to the Government. The Contracting Officer will assess liquidated damages at the rate of $10 per affected employee for each calendar day on which the employer required

or permitted the employee to work in excess of the standard workweek of 40 hours without paying overtime wages required by the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act.

(c) Withholding for unpaid wages and liquidated damages. The Contracting Officer will withhold from payments due under the contract sufficient funds required to satisfy any Contractor or subcontractor liabilities for unpaid wages and liquidated damages. If amounts withheld under the contract are insufficient to satisfy Contractor or subcontractor liabilities, the Contracting Officer will withhold payments from other Federal or Federally assisted contracts held by the same Contractor that are subject to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act.

(d) Payrolls and basic records.

(1) The Contractor and its subcontractors shall maintain payrolls and basic payroll records for all laborers and mechanics working on the contract during the contract and shall make them available to the Government until 3 years after contract completion. The records shall contain the name and address of each employee, social security number, labor classifications, hourly rates of wages paid, daily and weekly number of hours worked, deductions made, and actual wages paid. The records need not duplicate those required for construction work by Department of Labor regulations at 29 CFR 5.5(a)(3) implementing the Davis-Bacon Act.

(2) The Contractor and its subcontractors shall allow authorized representatives of the Contracting Officer or the Department of Labor to inspect, copy, or transcribe records maintained under paragraph (d)(1) of this clause. The Contractor or subcontractor also shall allow authorized representatives of the Contracting Officer or Department of Labor to interview employees in the workplace during working hours.

(e) Subcontracts. The Contractor shall insert the provisions set forth in paragraphs (a) through (d) of this clause in subcontracts exceeding $100,000 and require subcontractors to include these provisions in any lower tier subcontracts. The Contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor or lower-tier subcontractor with the provisions set forth in paragraphs (a) through (d) of this clause.

(End of clause)

52.222-6 DAVIS-BACON ACT (FEB 1995)

(a) All laborers and mechanics employed or working upon the site of the work will be paid unconditionally and not less often than once a week, and without subsequent deduction or rebate on any account (except such payroll deductions as are permitted by regulations issued by the Secretary of Labor under the Copeland Act (29 CFR Part 3), the full amount of wages and bona fide fringe benefits (or cash equivalents thereof) due at time of payment computed at rates not less than those contained in the wage determination of the Secretary of Labor which is attached hereto and made a part hereof, regardless of any contractual relationship which may be alleged to exist between the Contractor and such laborers and mechanics. Contributions made or costs reasonably anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits under section 1(b)(2) of the Davis-Bacon Act on behalf of laborers or mechanics are considered wages paid to such laborers or mechanics, subject to the provisions of paragraph (d) of this clause; also, regular contributions made or costs incurred for more than a weekly period (but not less often than quarterly) under plans, funds, or programs which cover the particular weekly period, are deemed to be constructively made or incurred during such period. Such laborers and mechanics shall be paid not less than the appropriate wage rate and fringe benefits in the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed, without regard to skill, except as provided in the clause entitled Apprentices and Trainees. Laborers or mechanics performing work in more than one classification may be compensated at the rate specified for each classification for the time actually worked therein; provided, That the employer's payroll records accurately set forth the time spent in each classification in which work is performed. The wage determination (including any additional classifications and wage rates conformed under paragraph (b) of this clause) and the Davis-Bacon poster (WH-1321) shall be posted at all times by the Contractor and its subcontractors at the site of the work in a prominent and accessible place where it can be easily seen by the workers.

(b)(1) The Contracting Officer shall require that any class of laborers or mechanics which is not listed in the wage determination and which is to be employed under the contract shall be classified in conformance with the wage determination. The Contracting Officer shall approve an additional classification and wage rate and fringe benefits therefor only when all the following criteria have been met:

(i) The work to be performed by the classification requested is not performed by a classification in the wage determination.

(ii) The classification is utilized in the area by the construction industry.

(iii) The proposed wage rate, including any bona fide fringe benefits, bears a reasonable relationship to the wage rates contained in the wage determination.

(2) If the Contractor and the laborers and mechanics to be employed in the classification (if known), or their representatives, and the Contracting Officer agree on the classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits, where appropriate), a report of the action taken shall be sent by the Contracting Officer to the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division, Employment Standards Administration, U.S. Department of Labor, Washington, DC 20210. The Administrator or an authorized representative will approve, modify, or disapprove every additional classification action within 30 days of receipt and so advise the Contracting Officer or will notify the Contracting Officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(3) In the event the Contractor, the laborers or mechanics to be employed in the classification, or their representatives, and the Contracting Officer do not agree on the proposed classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits, where appropriate), the Contracting Officer shall refer the questions, including the views of all interested parties and the recommendation of the Contracting Officer, to the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division for determination. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will issue a determination within 30 days of receipt and so advise the Contracting Officer or will notify the Contracting Officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(4) The wage rate (including fringe benefits, where appropriate) determined pursuant to subparagraphs (b)(2) and (b)(3) of this clause shall be paid to all workers performing work in the classification under this contract from the first day on which work is performed in the classification.

(c) Whenever the minimum wage rate prescribed in the contract for a class of laborers or mechanics includes a fringe benefit which is not expressed as an hourly rate, the Contractor shall either pay the benefit as stated in the wage determination or shall pay another bona fide fringe benefit or an hourly cash equivalent thereof.

(d) If the Contractor does not make payments to a trustee or other third person, the Contractor may consider as part of the wages of any laborer or mechanic the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing bona fide fringe benefits under a plan or program; provided, That the Secretary of Labor has found, upon the written request of the Contractor, that the applicable standards of the Davis-Bacon Act have been met. The Secretary of Labor may require the Contractor to set aside in a separate account assets for the meeting of obligations under the plan or program.

(End of clause)

52.222-7 WITHHOLDING OF FUNDS (FEB 1988)

The Contracting Officer shall, upon his or her own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor, withhold or cause to be withheld from the Contractor under this contract or any other Federal contract with the same Prime Contractor, or any other Federally assisted contract subject to Davis-Bacon prevailing wage requirements, which is held by the same Prime Contractor, so much of the accrued payments or

advances as may be considered necessary to pay laborers and mechanics, including apprentices, trainees, and helpers, employed by the Contractor or any subcontractor the full amount of wages required by the contract. In the event of failure to pay any laborer or mechanic, including any apprentice, trainee, or helper, employed or working on the site of the work, all or part of the wages required by the contract, the Contracting Officer may, after written notice to the Contractor, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds until such violations have ceased.

(End of clause)

52.222-8 PAYROLLS AND BASIC RECORDS (FEB 1988)

(a) Payrolls and basic records relating thereto shall be maintained by the Contractor during the course of the work and preserved for a period of 3 years thereafter for all laborers and mechanics working at the site of the work. Such records shall contain the name, address, and social security number of each such worker, his or her correct classification, hourly rates of wages paid (including rates of contributions or costs anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits or cash equivalents thereof of the types described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act), daily and weekly number of hours worked, deductions made, and actual wages paid. Whenever the Secretary of Labor has found, under paragraph (d) of the clause entitled Davis-Bacon Act, that the wages of any laborer or mechanic include the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing benefits under a plan or program described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act, the Contractor shall maintain records which show that the commitment to provide such benefits is enforceable, that the plan or program is financially responsible, and that the plan or program has been communicated in writing to the laborers or mechanics affected, and records which show the costs anticipated or the actual cost incurred in providing such benefits. Contractors employing apprentices or trainees under approved programs shall maintain written evidence of the registration of apprenticeship programs and certification of trainee programs, the registration of the apprentices and trainees, and the ratios and wage rates prescribed in the applicable programs.

(b)(1) The Contractor shall submit weekly for each week in which any contract work is performed a copy of all payrolls to the Contracting Officer. The payrolls submitted shall set out accurately and completely all of the information required to be maintained under paragraph (a) of this clause. This information may be submitted in any form desired. Optional Form WH-347 (Federal Stock Number 029-005-00014-1) is available for this purpose and may be purchased from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402. The Prime Contractor is responsible for the submission of copies of payrolls by all subcontractors.

(2) Each payroll submitted shall be accompanied by a "Statement of Compliance," signed by the Contractor or subcontractor or his or her agent who pays or supervises the payment of the persons employed under the contract and shall certify--

(i) That the payroll for the payroll period contains the information required to be maintained under paragraph (a) of this clause and that such information is correct and complete;

(ii) That each laborer or mechanic (including each helper, apprentice, and trainee) employed on the contract during the payroll period has been paid the full weekly wages earned, without rebate, either directly or indirectly, and that no deductions have been made either directly or indirectly from the full wages earned, other than permissible deductions as set forth in the Regulations, 29 CFR Part 3; and

(iii) That each laborer or mechanic has been paid not less than the applicable wage rates and fringe benefits or cash equivalents for the classification of work performed, as specified in the applicable wage determination incorporated into the contract.

(3) The weekly submission of a properly executed certification set forth on the reverse side of Optional Form WH-347 shall satisfy the requirement for submission of the "Statement of Compliance" required by subparagraph (b)(2)

of this clause.

(4) The falsification of any of the certifications in this clause may subject the Contractor or subcontractor to civil or criminal prosecution under Section 1001 of Title 18 and Section 3729 of Title 31 of the United States Code.

(c) The Contractor or subcontractor shall make the records required under paragraph (a) of this clause available for inspection, copying, or transcription by the Contracting Officer or authorized representatives of the Contracting Officer or the Department of Labor. The Contractor or subcontractor shall permit the Contracting Officer or representatives of the Contracting Officer or the Department of Labor to interview employees during working hours on the job. If the Contractor or subcontractor fails to submit required records or to make them available, the Contracting Officer may, after written notice to the Contractor, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment. Furthermore, failure to submit the required records upon request or to make such records available may be grounds for debarment action pursuant to 29 CFR 5.12.

(End of clause)

52.222-9 APPRENTICES AND TRAINEES (FEB 1988)

(a) Apprentices. Apprentices will be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work they performed when they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a bona fide apprenticeship program registered with the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training, or with a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Bureau, or if a person is employed in his or her first 90 days of probationary employment as an apprentice in such an apprenticeship program, who is not individually registered in the program, but who has been certified by the Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training or a State Apprenticeship Agency (where appropriate) to be eligible for probationary employment as an apprentice. The allowable ratio of apprentices to journeymen on the job site in any craft classification shall not be greater than the ratio permitted to the Contractor as to the entire work force under the registered program. Any worker listed on a payroll at an apprentice wage rate, who is not registered or otherwise employed as stated in this paragraph, shall be paid not less than the applicable wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any apprentice performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. Where a contractor is performing construction on a project in a locality other than that in which its program is registered, the ratios and wage rates (expressed in percentages of the journeyman's hourly rate) specified in the Contractor's or subcontractor's registered program shall be observed. Every apprentice must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the registered program for the apprentice's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeyman hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Apprentices shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the apprenticeship program. If the apprenticeship program does not specify fringe benefits, apprentices must be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination for the applicable classification. If the Administrator determines that a different practice prevails for the applicable apprentice classification, fringes shall be paid in accordance with that determination. In the event the Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training, or a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Bureau, withdraws approval of an apprenticeship program, the Contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize apprentices at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.

(b) Trainees. Except as provided in 29 CFR 5.16, trainees will not be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work performed unless they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a program which has received prior approval, evidenced by formal certification by the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration. The ratio of trainees to journeymen on the job site shall not be greater than permitted under the plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration. Every trainee must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the approved program for the trainee's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeyman hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Trainees shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the trainee program. If the trainee program does not mention

fringe benefits, trainees shall be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed in the wage determination unless the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division determines that there is an apprenticeship program associated with the corresponding journeyman wage rate in the wage determination which provides for less than full fringe benefits for apprentices. Any employee listed on the payroll at a trainee rate who is not registered and participating in a training plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate in the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any trainee performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate in the wage determination for the work actually performed. In the event the Employment and Training Administration withdraws approval of a training program, the Contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize trainees at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.

(c) Equal employment opportunity. The utilization of apprentices, trainees, and journeymen under this clause shall be in conformity with the equal employment opportunity requirements of Executive Order 11246, as amended, and 29 CFR Part 30.

(End of clause)

52.222-10 COMPLIANCE WITH COPELAND ACT REQUIREMENTS (FEB 1988)

The Contractor shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR Part 3, which are hereby incorporated by reference in this contract.

(End of clause)

52.222-11 SUBCONTRACTS (LABOR STANDARDS (FEB 1988)

(a) The Contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses entitled Davis-Bacon Act, Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act-Overtime Compensation, Apprentices and Trainees, Payrolls and Basic Records, Compliance with Copeland Act Requirements, Withholding of Funds, Subcontracts (Labor Standards), Contract Termination-Debarment, Disputes Concerning Labor Standards, Compliance with Davis-Bacon and Related Act Regulations, and Certification of Eligibility, and such other clauses as the Contracting Officer may, by appropriate instructions, require, and also a clause requiring subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The Prime Contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with all the contract clauses cited in this paragraph.

(b)(1) Within 14 days after award of the contract, the Contractor shall deliver to the Contracting Officer a completed Statement and Acknowledgment Form (SF 1413) for each subcontract, including the subcontractor's signed and dated acknowledgment that the clauses set forth in paragraph (a) of this clause have been included in the subcontract.

(2) Within 14 days after the award of any subsequently awarded subcontract the Contractor shall deliver to the Contracting Officer an updated completed SF 1413 for such additional subcontract.

(End of clause)

52.222-12 CONTRACT TERMINATION--DEBARMENT (FEB 1988)

A breach of the contract clauses entitled Davis-Bacon Act, Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act--Overtime Compensation, Apprentices and Trainees, Payrolls and Basic Records, Compliance with Copeland Act Requirements, Subcontracts (Labor Standards), Compliance with Davis-Bacon and Related Act Regulations, or Certification of Eligibility may be grounds for termination of the contract, and for debarment as a Contractor and subcontractor as provided in 29 CFR 5.12.

(End of clause)

52.222-13 COMPLIANCE WITH DAVIS-BACON AND RELATED ACT REGULATIONS (FEB 1988)

All rulings and interpretations of the Davis-Bacon and Related Acts contained in 29 CFR Parts 1, 3, and 5 are hereby incorporated by reference in this contract.

(End of clause)

52.222-14 DISPUTES CONCERNING LABOR STANDARDS (FEB 1988)

The United States Department of Labor has set forth in 29 CFR Parts 5, 6, and 7 procedures for resolving disputes concerning labor standards requirements. Such disputes shall be resolved in accordance with those procedures and not the Disputes clause of this contract. Disputes within the meaning of this clause include disputes between the Contractor (or any of its subcontractors) and the contracting agency, the U.S. Department of Labor, or the employees or their representatives.

(End of clause)

52.222-15 CERTIFICATION OF ELIGIBILITY (FEB 1988)

(a) By entering into this contract, the Contractor certifies that neither it (nor he or she) nor any person or firm who has an interest in the Contractor's firm is a person or firm ineligible to be awarded Government contracts by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).

(b) No part of this contract shall be subcontracted to any person or firm ineligible for award of a Government contract by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).

(2) The penalty for making false statements is prescribed in the U.S. Criminal Code, 18 U.S.C. 1001.

(End of clause)

52.222-26 EQUAL OPPORTUNITY (APR 2002)

(a) Definition. United States, as used in this clause, means the 50 States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Northern Mariana Islands, American Samoa, Guam, the U.S. Virgin Islands, and Wake Island.

(b) If, during any 12-month period (including the 12 months preceding the award of this contract), the Contractor has been or is awarded nonexempt Federal contracts and/or subcontracts that have an aggregate value in excess of $10,000, the Contractor shall comply with paragraphs (b)(1) through (b)(11) of this clause, except for work

performed outside the United States by employees who were not recruited within the United States. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide information necessary to determine the applicability of this clause.

(1) The Contractor shall not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin. However, it shall not be a violation of this clause for the Contractor to extend a publicly announced preference in employment to Indians living on or near an Indian reservation, in connection with employment opportunities on or near an Indian reservation, as permitted by 41 CFR 60-1.5.

(2) The Contractor shall take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment, without regard to their race, color, religion, sex, or national origin. This shall include, but not be limited to, (i) employment, (ii) upgrading, (iii) demotion, (iv) transfer, (v) recruitment or recruitment advertising, (vi) layoff or termination, (vii) rates of pay or other forms of compensation, and (viii) selection for training, including apprenticeship.

(3) The Contractor shall post in conspicuous places available to employees and applicants for employment the notices to be provided by the Contracting Officer that explain this clause.

(4) The Contractor shall, in all solicitations or advertisements for employees placed by or on behalf of the Contractor, state that all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment without regard to race, color, religion, sex, or national origin.

(5) The Contractor shall send, to each labor union or representative of workers with which it has a collective bargaining agreement or other contract or understanding, the notice to be provided by the Contracting Officer advising the labor union or workers' representative of the Contractor's commitments under this clause, and post copies of the notice in conspicuous places available to employees and applicants for employment.

(6) The Contractor shall comply with Executive Order 11246, as amended, and the rules, regulations, and orders of the Secretary of Labor.

(7) The Contractor shall furnish to the contracting agency all information required by Executive Order 11246, as amended, and by the rules, regulations, and orders of the Secretary of Labor. The Contractor shall also file Standard Form 100 (EEO-1), or any successor form, as prescribed in 41 CFR part 60-1. Unless the Contractor has filed within the 12 months preceding the date of contract award, the Contractor shall, within 30 days after contract award, apply to either the regional Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs (OFCCP) or the local office of the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission for the necessary forms.

(8) The Contractor shall permit access to its premises, during normal business hours, by the contracting agency or the OFCCP for the purpose of conducting on-site compliance evaluations and complaint investigations. The Contractor shall permit the Government to inspect and copy any books, accounts, records (including computerized records), and other material that may be relevant to the matter under investigation and pertinent to compliance with Executive Order 11246, as amended, and rules and regulations that implement the Executive Order.

(9) If the OFCCP determines that the Contractor is not in compliance with this clause or any rule, regulation, or order of the Secretary of Labor, this contract may be canceled, terminated, or suspended in whole or in part and the Contractor may be declared ineligible for further Government contracts, under the procedures authorized in Executive Order 11246, as amended. In addition, sanctions may be imposed and remedies invoked against the Contractor as provided in Executive Order 11246, as amended; in the rules, regulations, and orders of the Secretary of Labor; or as otherwise provided by law.

(10) The Contractor shall include the terms and conditions of subparagraphs (b)(1) through (11) of this clause in every subcontract or purchase order that is not exempted by the rules, regulations, or orders of the Secretary of Labor issued under Executive Order 11246, as amended, so that these terms and conditions will be binding upon each subcontractor or vendor.

(11) The Contractor shall take such action with respect to any subcontract or purchase order as the contracting officer may direct as a means of enforcing these terms and conditions, including sanctions for noncompliance; provided, that if the Contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with, litigation with a subcontractor or vendor as a result of any direction, the Contractor may request the United States to enter into the litigation to protect the interests of the United States.

(c) Notwithstanding any other clause in this contract, disputes relative to this clause will be governed by the procedures in 41 CFR 60-1.1.
(End of clause)

52.222-27 AFFIRMATIVE ACTION COMPLIANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR CONSTRUCTION (FEB 1999)

(a) Definitions. "Covered area," as used in this clause, means the geographical area described in the solicitation for this contract.

"Deputy Assistant Secretary," as used in this clause, means Deputy Assistant Secretary for Federal Contract Compliance, U.S. Department of Labor, or a designee.

"Employer's identification number," as used in this clause, means the Federal Social Security number used on the employer's quarterly federal tax return, U.S. Treasury Department Form 941.

"Minority," as used in this clause, means--

(1) American Indian or Alaskan Native (all persons having origins in any of the original peoples of North America and maintaining identifiable tribal affiliations through membership and participation or community identification).

(2) Asian and Pacific Islander (all persons having origins in any of the original peoples of the Far East, Southeast Asia, the Indian Subcontinent, or the Pacific Islands);

(3) Black (all persons having origins in any of the black African racial groups not of Hispanic origin); and

(4) Hispanic (all persons of Mexican, Puerto Rican, Cuban, Central or South American, or other Spanish culture or origin, regardless of race).

(b) If the Contractor, or a subcontractor at any tier, subcontracts a portion of the work involving any construction trade, each such subcontract in excess of $10,000 shall include this clause and the Notice containing the goals for minority and female participation stated in the solicitation for this contract.

(c) If the Contractor is participating in a Hometown Plan (41 CFR 60-4) approved by the U.S. Department of Labor in a covered area, either individually or through an association, its affirmative action obligations on all work in the plan area (including goals) shall comply with the plan for those trades that have unions participating in the plan. Contractors must be able to demonstrate participation in, and compliance with, the provisions of the plan. Each Contractor or subcontractor participating in an approved plan is also required to comply with its obligations under the Equal Opportunity clause, and to make a good faith effort to achieve each goal under the plan in each trade in which it has employees. The overall good-faith performance by other Contractors or subcontractors toward a goal in an approved plan does not excuse any Contractor's or subcontractor's failure to make good-faith efforts to achieve the plan's goals.

(d) The Contractor shall implement the affirmative action procedures in subparagraphs (g)(1) through (16) of this clause. The goals stated in the solicitation for this contract are expressed as percentages of the total hours of employment and training of minority and female utilization that the Contractor should reasonably be able to achieve in each construction trade in which it has employees in the covered area. If the Contractor performs construction

work in a geographical area located outside of the covered area, it shall apply the goals established for the geographical area where that work is actually performed. The Contractor is expected to make substantially uniform progress toward its goals in each craft.

(e) Neither the terms and conditions of any collective bargaining agreement, nor the failure by a union with which the Contractor has a collective bargaining agreement, to refer minorities or women shall excuse the Contractor's obligations under this clause, Executive Order 11246, as amended, or the regulations thereunder.

(f) In order for the nonworking training hours of apprentices and trainees to be counted in meeting the goals, apprentices and trainees must be employed by the Contractor during the training period, and the Contractor must have made a commitment to employ the apprentices and trainees at the completion of their training, subject to the availability of employment opportunities. Trainees must be trained pursuant to training programs approved by the U.S. Department of Labor.

(g) The Contractor shall take affirmative action to ensure equal employment opportunity. The evaluation of the Contractor's compliance with this clause shall be based upon its effort to achieve maximum results from its actions. The Contractor shall document these efforts fully and implement affirmative action steps at least as extensive as the following:

(1) Ensure a working environment free of harassment, intimidation, and coercion at all sites and in all facilities where the Contractor's employees are assigned to work. The Contractor, if possible, will assign two or more women to each construction project. The Contractor shall ensure that foremen, superintendents, and other onsite supervisory personnel are aware of and carry out the Contractor's obligation to maintain such a working environment, with specific attention to minority or female individuals working at these sites or facilities.

(2) Establish and maintain a current list of sources for minority and female recruitment. Provide written notification to minority and female recruitment sources and community organizations when the Contractor or its unions have employment opportunities available, and maintain a record of the organizations' responses.

(3) Establish and maintain a current file of the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of each minority and female off-the-street applicant, referrals of minorities or females from unions, recruitment sources, or community organizations, and the action taken with respect to each individual. If an individual was sent to the union hiring hall for referral and not referred back to the Contractor by the union or, if referred back, not employed by the Contractor, this shall be documented in the file, along with whatever additional actions the Contractor may have taken.

(4) Immediately notify the Deputy Assistant Secretary when the union or unions with which the Contractor has a collective bargaining agreement has not referred back to the Contractor a minority or woman sent by the Contractor, or when the Contractor has other information that the union referral process has impeded the Contractor's efforts to meet its obligations.

(5) Develop on-the-job training opportunities and/or participate in training programs for the area that expressly include minorities and women, including upgrading programs and apprenticeship and trainee programs relevant to the Contractor's employment needs, especially those programs funded or approved by the Department of Labor. The Contractor shall provide notice of these programs to the sources compiled under subparagraph (g)(2) of this clause.

(6) Disseminate the Contractor's equal employment policy by--

(i) Providing notice of the policy to unions and to training, recruitment, and outreach programs, and requesting their cooperation in assisting the Contractor in meeting its contract obligations;

(ii) Including the policy in any policy manual and in collective bargaining agreements;

(iii) Publicizing the policy in the company newspaper, annual report, etc.;

(iv) Reviewing the policy with all management personnel and with all minority and female employees at least once a year; and

(v) Posting the policy on bulletin boards accessible to employees at each location where construction work is performed.

(7) Review, at least annually, the Contractor's equal employment policy and affirmative action obligations with all employees having responsibility for hiring, assignment, layoff, termination, or other employment decisions. Conduct review of this policy with all on-site supervisory personnel before initiating construction work at a job site. A written record shall be made and maintained identifying the time and place of these meetings, persons attending, subject matter discussed, and disposition of the subject matter.

(8) Disseminate the Contractor's equal employment policy externally by including it in any advertising in the news media, specifically including minority and female news media. Provide written notification to, and discuss this policy with, other Contractors and subcontractors with which the Contractor does or anticipates doing business.

(9) Direct recruitment efforts, both oral and written, to minority, female, and community organizations, to schools with minority and female students, and to minority and female recruitment and training organizations serving the Contractor's recruitment area and employment needs. Not later than 1 month before the date for acceptance of applications for apprenticeship or training by any recruitment source, send written notification to organizations such as the above, describing the openings, screening procedures, and tests to be used in the selection process.

(10) Encourage present minority and female employees to recruit minority persons and women. Where reasonable, provide after-school, summer, and vacation employment to minority and female youth both on the site and in other areas of the Contractor's workforce.

(11) Validate all tests and other selection requirements where required under 41 CFR 60-3.

(12) Conduct, at least annually, an inventory and evaluation at least of all minority and female personnel for promotional opportunities. Encourage these employees to seek or to prepare for, through appropriate training, etc., opportunities for promotion.

(13) Ensure that seniority practices, job classifications, work assignments, and other personnel practices do not have a discriminatory effect by continually monitoring all personnel and employment-related activities to ensure that the Contractor's obligations under this contract are being carried out.

(14) Ensure that all facilities and company activities are nonsegregated except that separate or single-user rest rooms and necessary dressing or sleeping areas shall be provided to assure privacy between the sexes.

(15) Maintain a record of solicitations for subcontracts for minority and female construction contractors and suppliers, including circulation of solicitations to minority and female contractor associations and other business associations.

(16) Conduct a review, at least annually, of all supervisors' adherence to and performance under the Contractor's equal employment policy and affirmative action obligations.

(h) The Contractor is encouraged to participate in voluntary associations that may assist in fulfilling one or more of the affirmative action obligations contained in subparagraphs (g)(1) through (16) of this clause. The efforts of a contractor association, joint contractor-union, contractor-community, or similar group of which the contractor is a member and participant may be asserted as fulfilling one or more of its obligations under subparagraphs (g)(1) through (16) of this clause, provided the Contractor--

(1) Actively participates in the group;

(2) Makes every effort to ensure that the group has a positive impact on the employment of minorities and women in the industry;

(3) Ensures that concrete benefits of the program are reflected in the Contractor's minority and female workforce participation;

(4) Makes a good-faith effort to meet its individual goals and timetables; and

(5) Can provide access to documentation that demonstrates the effectiveness of actions taken on behalf of the Contractor. The obligation to comply is the Contractor's, and failure of such a group to fulfill an obligation shall not be a defense for the Contractor's noncompliance.

(i) A single goal for minorities and a separate single goal for women shall be established. The Contractor is required to provide equal employment opportunity and to take affirmative action for all minority groups, both male and female, and all women, both minority and nonminority. Consequently, the Contractor may be in violation of Executive Order 11246, as amended, if a particular group is employed in a substantially disparate manner.

(j) The Contractor shall not use goals or affirmative action standards to discriminate against any person because of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin.

(k) The Contractor shall not enter into any subcontract with any person or firm debarred from Government contracts under Executive Order 11246, as amended.

(l) The Contractor shall carry out such sanctions and penalties for violation of this clause and of the Equal Opportunity clause, including suspension, termination, and cancellation of existing subcontracts, as may be imposed or ordered under Executive Order 11246, as amended, and its implementing regulations, by the OFCCP. Any failure to carry out these sanctions and penalties as ordered shall be a violation of this clause and Executive Order 11246, as amended.

(m) The Contractor in fulfilling its obligations under this clause shall implement affirmative action procedures at least as extensive as those prescribed in paragraph (g) of this clause, so as to achieve maximum results from its efforts to ensure equal employment opportunity. If the Contractor fails to comply with the requirements of Executive Order 11246, as amended, the implementing regulations, or this clause, the Deputy Assistant Secretary shall take action as prescribed in 41 CFR 60-4.8.

(n) The Contractor shall designate a responsible official to--

(1) Monitor all employment-related activity to ensure that the Contractor's equal employment policy is being carried out;

(2) Submit reports as may be required by the Government; and

(3) Keep records that shall at least include for each employee the name, address, telephone number, construction trade, union affiliation (if any), employee identification number, social security number, race, sex, status (e.g., mechanic, apprentice, trainee, helper, or laborer), dates of changes in status, hours worked per week in the indicated trade, rate of pay, and locations at which the work was performed. Records shall be maintained in an easily understandable and retrievable form; however, to the degree that existing records satisfy this requirement, separate records are not required to be maintained.

Nothing contained herein shall be construed as a limitation upon the application of other laws that establish different standards of compliance or upon the requirements for the hiring of local or other area residents (e.g., those under the

Public Works Employment Act of 1977 and the Community Development Block Grant Program).

(End of clause)

52.222-35 EQUAL OPPORTUNITY FOR SPECIAL DISABLED VETERANS, VETERANS OF THE VIETNAM ERA, AND OTHER ELIGIBLE VETERANS (DEC 2001)

(a) Definitions. As used in this clause--

All employment openings means all positions except executive and top management, those positions that will be filled from within the Contractor's organization, and positions lasting 3 days or less. This term includes full-time employment, temporary employment of more than 3 days duration, and part-time employment.

Executive and top management means any employee--

(1) Whose primary duty consists of the management of the enterprise in which the individual is employed or of a customarily recognized department or subdivision thereof;

(2) Who customarily and regularly directs the work of two or more other employees;

(3) Who has the authority to hire or fire other employees or whose suggestions and recommendations as to the hiring or firing and as to the advancement and promotion or any other change of status of other employees will be given particular weight;

(4) Who customarily and regularly exercises discretionary powers; and

(5) Who does not devote more than 20 percent or, in the case of an employee of a retail or service establishment, who does not devote more than 40 percent of total hours of work in the work week to activities that are not directly and closely related to the performance of the work described in paragraphs (1) through (4) of this definition. This paragraph (5) does not apply in the case of an employee who is in sole charge of an establishment or a physically separated branch establishment, or who owns at least a 20 percent interest in the enterprise in which the individual is employed.

Other eligible veteran means any other veteran who served on active duty during a war or in a campaign or expedition for which a campaign badge has been authorized.

Positions that will be filled from within the Contractor's organization means employment openings for which the Contractor will give no consideration to persons outside the Contractor's organization (including any affiliates, subsidiaries, and parent companies) and includes any openings the Contractor proposes to fill from regularly established “recall” lists. The exception does not apply to a particular opening once an employer decides to consider applicants outside of its organization.

Qualified special disabled veteran means a special disabled veteran who satisfies the requisite skill, experience, education, and other job-related requirements of the employment position such veteran holds or desires, and who, with or without reasonable accommodation, can perform the essential functions of such position.

Special disabled veteran means--

(1) A veteran who is entitled to compensation (or who but for the receipt of military retired pay would be entitled to compensation) under laws administered by the Department of Veterans Affairs for a disability--

(i) Rated at 30 percent or more; or

(ii) Rated at 10 or 20 percent in the case of a veteran who has been determined under 38 U.S.C. 3106 to have a serious employment handicap (i.e., a significant impairment of the veteran's ability to prepare for, obtain, or retain employment consistent with the veteran's abilities, aptitudes, and interests); or

(2) A person who was discharged or released from active duty because of a service-connected disability.

Veteran of the Vietnam era means a person who--

(1) Served on active duty for a period of more than 180 days and was discharged or released from active duty with other than a dishonorable discharge, if any part of such active duty occurred--

(i) In the Republic of Vietnam between February 28, 1961, and May 7, 1975; or

(ii) Between August 5, 1964, and May 7, 1975, in all other cases; or

(2) Was discharged or released from active duty for a service-connected disability if any part of the active duty was performed--

(i) In the Republic of Vietnam between February 28, 1961, and May 7, 1975; or

(ii) Between August 5, 1964, and May 7, 1975, in all other cases.
(b) General. (1) The Contractor shall not discriminate against the individual because the individual is a special disabled veteran, a veteran of the Vietnam era, or other eligible veteran, regarding any position for which the employee or applicant for employment is qualified. The Contractor shall take affirmative action to employ, advance in employment, and otherwise treat qualified special disabled veterans, veterans of the Vietnam era, and other eligible veterans without discrimination based upon their disability or veterans' status in all employment practices such as--

(i) Recruitment, advertising, and job application procedures;

(ii) Hiring, upgrading, promotion, award of tenure, demotion, transfer, layoff, termination, right of return from layoff and rehiring;

(iii) Rate of pay or any other form of compensation and changes in compensation;

(iv) Job assignments, job classifications, organizational structures, position descriptions, lines of progression, and seniority lists;

(v) Leaves of absence, sick leave, or any other leave;

(vi) Fringe benefits available by virtue of employment, whether or not administered by the Contractor;

(vii) Selection and financial support for training, including apprenticeship, and on-the-job training under 38 U.S.C. 3687, professional meetings, conferences, and other related activities, and selection for leaves of absence to pursue training;

(viii) Activities sponsored by the Contractor including social or recreational programs; and

(ix) Any other term, condition, or privilege of employment.

(2) The Contractor shall comply with the rules, regulations, and relevant orders of the Secretary of Labor issued under the Vietnam Era Veterans' Readjustment Assistance Act of 1972 (the Act), as amended (38 U.S.C. 4211 and 4212).

(c) Listing openings. (1) The Contractor shall immediately list all employment openings that exist at the time of the execution of this contract and those which occur during the performance of this contract, including those not generated by this contract, and including those occurring at an establishment of the Contractor other than the one where the contract is being performed, but excluding those of independently operated corporate affiliates, at an appropriate local public employment service office of the State wherein the opening occurs. Listing employment openings with the U.S. Department of Labor's America's Job Bank shall satisfy the requirement to list jobs with the local employment service office.

(2) The Contractor shall make the listing of employment openings with the local employment service office at least concurrently with using any other recruitment source or effort and shall involve the normal obligations of placing a bona fide job order, including accepting referrals of veterans and nonveterans. This listing of employment openings does not require hiring any particular job applicant or hiring from any particular group of job applicants and is not intended to relieve the Contractor from any requirements of Executive orders or regulations concerning nondiscrimination in employment.

(3) Whenever the Contractor becomes contractually bound to the listing terms of this clause, it shall advise the State public employment agency in each State where it has establishments of the name and location of each hiring location in the State. As long as the Contractor is contractually bound to these terms and has so advised the State agency, it need not advise the State agency of subsequent contracts. The Contractor may advise the State agency when it is no longer bound by this contract clause.

(d) Applicability. This clause does not apply to the listing of employment openings that occur and are filled outside the 50 States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, American Samoa, Guam, the Virgin Islands of the United States, and Wake Island.

(e) Postings. (1) The Contractor shall post employment notices in conspicuous places that are available to employees and applicants for employment.

(2) The employment notices shall--

(i) State the rights of applicants and employees as well as the Contractor's obligation under the law to take affirmative action to employ and advance in employment qualified employees and applicants who are special disabled veterans, veterans of the Vietnam era, and other eligible veterans; and

(ii) Be in a form prescribed by the Deputy Assistant Secretary for Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Department of Labor (Deputy Assistant Secretary of Labor), and provided by or through the Contracting Officer.

(3) The Contractor shall ensure that applicants or employees who are special disabled veterans are informed of the contents of the notice (e.g., the Contractor may have the notice read to a visually disabled veteran, or may lower the posted notice so that it can be read by a person in a wheelchair).

(4) The Contractor shall notify each labor union or representative of workers with which it has a collective bargaining agreement, or other contract understanding, that the Contractor is bound by the terms of the Act and is committed to take affirmative action to employ, and advance in employment, qualified special disabled veterans, veterans of the Vietnam era, and other eligible veterans.

(f) Noncompliance. If the Contractor does not comply with the requirements of this clause, the Government may take appropriate actions under the rules, regulations, and relevant orders of the Secretary of Labor issued pursuant to the Act.

(g) Subcontracts. The Contractor shall insert the terms of this clause in all subcontracts or purchase orders of $25,000 or more unless exempted by rules, regulations, or orders of the Secretary of Labor. The Contractor shall act as specified by the Deputy Assistant Secretary of Labor to enforce the terms, including action for noncompliance.

(End of clause)

52.222-36 AFFIRMATIVE ACTION FOR WORKERS WITH DISABILITIES (JUN 1998)

(a) General. (1) Regarding any position for which the employee or applicant for employment is qualified, the Contractor shall not discriminate against any employee or applicant because of physical or mental disability. The Contractor agrees to take affirmative action to employ, advance in employment, and otherwise treat qualified individuals with disabilities without discrimination based upon their physical or mental disability in all employment practices such as--

(i) Recruitment, advertising, and job application procedures;

(ii) Hiring, upgrading, promotion, award of tenure, demotion, transfer, layoff, termination, right of return from layoff, and rehiring;

(iii) Rates of pay or any other form of compensation and changes in compensation;

(iv) Job assignments, job classifications, organizational structures, position descriptions, lines of progression, and seniority lists;

(v) Leaves of absence, sick leave, or any other leave;

(vi) Fringe benefits available by virtue of employment, whether or not administered by the Contractor;

(vii) Selection and financial support for training, including apprenticeships, professional meetings, conferences, and other related activities, and selection for leaves of absence to pursue training;

(viii) Activities sponsored by the Contractor, including social or recreational programs; and

(ix) Any other term, condition, or privilege of employment.

(2) The Contractor agrees to comply with the rules, regulations, and relevant orders of the Secretary of Labor (Secretary) issued under the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 793) (the Act), as amended.

(b) Postings. (1) The Contractor agrees to post employment notices stating--

(i) The Contractor's obligation under the law to take affirmative action to employ and advance in employment qualified individuals with disabilities; and

(ii) The rights of applicants and employees.

(2) These notices shall be posted in conspicuous places that are available to employees and applicants for employment. The Contractor shall ensure that applicants and employees with disabilities are informed of the contents of the notice (e.g., the Contractor may have the notice read to a visually disabled individual, or may lower the posted notice so that it might be read by a person in a wheelchair). The notices shall be in a form prescribed by the Deputy Assistant Secretary for Federal Contract Compliance of the U.S. Department of Labor (Deputy Assistant Secretary) and shall be provided by or through the Contracting Officer.

(3) The Contractor shall notify each labor union or representative of workers with which it has a collective bargaining agreement or other contract understanding, that the Contractor is bound by the terms of Section 503 of the Act and is committed to take affirmative action to employ, and advance in employment, qualified individuals with physical or mental disabilities.

(c) Noncompliance. If the Contractor does not comply with the requirements of this clause, appropriate actions may be taken under the rules, regulations, and relevant orders of the Secretary issued pursuant to the Act.

(d) Subcontracts. The Contractor shall include the terms of this clause in every subcontract or purchase order in excess of $10,000 unless exempted by rules, regulations, or orders of the Secretary. The Contractor shall act as specified by the Deputy Assistant Secretary to enforce the terms, including action for noncompliance.

(End of clause)

52.222-37 EMPLOYMENT REPORTS ON SPECIAL DISABLED VETERANS, VETERANS OF THE VIETNAM ERA, AND OTHER ELIGIBLE VETERANS (DEC 2001)

(a) Unless the Contractor is a State or local government agency, the Contractor shall report at least annually, as required by the Secretary of Labor, on--

(1) The number of disabled veterans and the number of veterans of the Vietnam era in the workforce of the contractor by job category and hiring location; and

(2) The total number of new employees hired during the period covered by the report, and of that total, the number of disabled veterans, and the number of veterans of the Vietnam era.

(b) The above items shall be reported by completing the form entitled "Federal Contractor Veterans' Employment Report VETS-100."

(c) Reports shall be submitted no later than September 30 of each year beginning September 30, 1988.

(d) The employment activity report required by paragraph (a)(2) of this clause shall reflect total hires during the most recent 12-month period as of the ending date selected for the employment profile report required by paragraph (a)(1) of this clause. Contractors may select an ending date: (1) As of the end of any pay period during the period January through March 1st of the year the report is due, or (2) as of December 31, if the contractor has previous written approval from the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission to do so for purposes of submitting the Employer Information Report EEO-1 (Standard Form 100).

(e) The count of veterans reported according to paragraph (a) of this clause shall be based on voluntary disclosure. Each Contractor subject to the reporting requirements at 38 U.S.C. 4212 shall invite all disabled veterans and veterans of the Vietnam era who wish to benefit under the affirmative action program at 38 U.S.C. 4212 to identify themselves to the Contractor. The invitation shall state that the information is voluntarily provided; that the information will be kept confidential; that disclosure or refusal to provide the information will not subject the applicant or employee to any adverse treatment; and that the information will be used only in accordance with the regulations promulgated under 38 U.S.C. 4212.

(f) Subcontracts. The Contractor shall include the terms of this clause in every subcontract or purchase order of $10,000 or more unless exempted by rules, regulations, or orders of the Secretary.

(End of clause)

52.222-39 NOTIFICATION OF EMPLOYEE RIGHTS CONCERNING PAYMENT OF UNION DUES OR FEES (DEC 2004)

(a) Definition. As used in this clause--

United States means the 50 States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Northern Mariana Islands, American Samoa, Guam, the U.S. Virgin Islands, and Wake Island.

(b) Except as provided in paragraph (e) of this clause, during the term of this contract, the Contractor shall post a notice, in the form of a poster, informing employees of their rights concerning union membership and payment of union dues and fees, in conspicuous places in and about all its plants and offices, including all places where notices to employees are customarily posted. The notice shall include the following information (except that the information pertaining to National Labor Relations Board shall not be included in notices posted in the plants or offices of carriers subject to the Railway Labor Act, as amended (45 U.S.C. 151-188)).

Notice to Employees

Under Federal law, employees cannot be required to join a union or maintain membership in a union in order to retain their jobs. Under certain conditions, the law permits a union and an employer to enter into a union-security agreement requiring employees to pay uniform periodic dues and initiation fees. However, employees who are not union members can object to the use of their payments for certain purposes and can only be required to pay their share of union costs relating to collective bargaining, contract administration, and grievance adjustment.

If you do not want to pay that portion of dues or fees used to support activities not related to collective bargaining, contract administration, or grievance adjustment, you are entitled to an appropriate reduction in your payment. If you believe that you have been required to pay dues or fees used in part to support activities not related to collective bargaining, contract administration, or grievance adjustment, you may be entitled to a refund and to an appropriate reduction in future payments.

For further information concerning your rights, you may wish to contact the National Labor Relations Board (NLRB) either at one of its Regional offices or at the following address or toll free number:

National Labor Relations Board
Division of Information
1099 14th Street, N.W.
Washington, DC 20570
1-866-667-6572
1-866-316-6572 (TTY)

To locate the nearest NLRB office, see NLRB's website at http://www.nlrb.gov.

(c) The Contractor shall comply with all provisions of Executive Order 13201 of February 17, 2001, and related implementing regulations at 29 CFR part 470, and orders of the Secretary of Labor.

(d) In the event that the Contractor does not comply with any of the requirements set forth in paragraphs (b), (c), or (g), the Secretary may direct that this contract be cancelled, terminated, or suspended in whole or in part, and declare the Contractor ineligible for further Government contracts in accordance with procedures at 29 CFR part 470, Subpart B--Compliance Evaluations, Complaint Investigations and Enforcement Procedures. Such other sanctions or remedies may be imposed as are provided by 29 CFR part 470, which implements Executive Order 13201, or as are otherwise provided by law.

(e) The requirement to post the employee notice in paragraph (b) does not apply to--

(1) Contractors and subcontractors that employ fewer than 15 persons;

(2) Contractor establishments or construction work sites where no union has been formally recognized by the Contractor or certified as the exclusive bargaining representative of the Contractor's employees;

(3) Contractor establishments or construction work sites located in a jurisdiction named in the definition of the United States in which the law of that jurisdiction forbids enforcement of union-security agreements;

(4) Contractor facilities where upon the written request of the Contractor, the Department of Labor Deputy Assistant Secretary for Labor-Management Programs has waived the posting requirements with respect to any of the Contractor's facilities if the Deputy Assistant Secretary finds that the Contractor has demonstrated that--

(i) The facility is in all respects separate and distinct from activities of the Contractor related to the performance of a contract; and

(ii) Such a waiver will not interfere with or impede the effectuation of the Executive order; or

(5) Work outside the United States that does not involve the recruitment or employment of workers within the United States.

(f) The Department of Labor publishes the official employee notice in two variations; one for contractors covered by the Railway Labor Act and a second for all other contractors. The Contractor shall--

(1) Obtain the required employee notice poster from the Division of Interpretations and Standards, Office of Labor-Management Standards, U.S. Department of Labor, 200 Constitution Avenue, NW, Room N-5605, Washington, DC 20210, or from any field office of the Department's Office of Labor-Management Standards or Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs;

(2) Download a copy of the poster from the Office of Labor-Management Standards website at http://www.olms.dol.gov; or

(3) Reproduce and use exact duplicate copies of the Department of Labor's official poster.

(g) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause in every subcontract or purchase order that exceeds the simplified acquisition threshold, entered into in connection with this contract, unless exempted by the Department of Labor Deputy Assistant Secretary for Labor-Management Programs on account of special circumstances in the national interest under authority of 29 CFR 470.3(c). For indefinite quantity subcontracts, the Contractor shall include the substance of this clause if the value of orders in any calendar year of the subcontract is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold. Pursuant to 29 CFR part 470, Subpart B--Compliance Evaluations, Complaint Investigations and Enforcement Procedures, the Secretary of Labor may direct the Contractor to take such action in the enforcement of these regulations, including the imposition of sanctions for noncompliance with respect to any such subcontract or purchase order. If the Contractor becomes involved in litigation with a subcontractor or vendor, or is threatened with such involvement, as a result of such direction, the Contractor may request the United States, through the Secretary of Labor, to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of the United States.

(End of clause)

52.223-3 HAZARDOUS MATERIAL IDENTIFICATION AND MATERIAL SAFETY DATA (JAN 1997)

(a) "Hazardous material", as used in this clause, includes any material defined as hazardous under the latest version of Federal Standard No. 313 (including revisions adopted during the term of the contract).

(b) The offeror must list any hazardous material, as defined in paragraph (a) of this clause, to be delivered under this contract. The hazardous material shall be properly identified and include any applicable identification number, such as National Stock Number or Special Item Number. This information shall also be included on the Material Safety Data Sheet submitted under this contract.

Material (If none, insert "None")	Identification No.
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

(c) This list must be updated during performance of the contract whenever the Contractor determines that any other material to be delivered under this contract is hazardous.

(d) The apparently successful offeror agrees to submit, for each item as required prior to award, a Material Safety Data Sheet, meeting the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.1200(g) and the latest version of Federal Standard No. 313, for all hazardous material identified in paragraph (b) of this clause. Data shall be submitted in accordance with Federal Standard No. 313, whether or not the apparently successful offeror is the actual manufacturer of these items. Failure to submit the Material Safety Data Sheet prior to award may result in the apparently successful offeror being considered nonresponsible and ineligible for award.

(e) If, after award, there is a change in the composition of the item(s) or a revision to Federal Standard No. 313, which renders incomplete or inaccurate the data submitted under paragraph (d) of this clause, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Contracting Officer and resubmit the data.

(f) Neither the requirements of this clause nor any act or failure to act by the Government shall relieve the Contractor of any responsibility or liability for the safety of Government, Contractor, or subcontractor personnel or property.

(g) Nothing contained in this clause shall relieve the Contractor from complying with applicable Federal, State, and local laws, codes, ordinances, and regulations (including the obtaining of licenses and permits) in connection with hazardous material.

(h) The Government's rights in data furnished under this contract with respect to hazardous material are as follows:

(1) To use, duplicate and disclose any data to which this clause is applicable. The purposes of this right are to--

(i) Apprise personnel of the hazards to which they may be exposed in using, handling, packaging, transporting, or disposing of hazardous materials;

(ii) Obtain medical treatment for those affected by the material; and

(iii) Have others use, duplicate, and disclose the data for the Government for these purposes.

(2) To use, duplicate, and disclose data furnished under this clause, in accordance with subparagraph (h)(1) of this clause, in precedence over any other clause of this contract providing for rights in data.

(3) The Government is not precluded from using similar or identical data acquired from other sources.

(End of clause)

52.223-6 DRUG-FREE WORKPLACE (MAY 2001)

(a) Definitions. As used in this clause --

"Controlled substance" means a controlled substance in schedules I through V of section 202 of the Controlled Substances Act (21 U.S.C. 812) and as further defined in regulation at 21 CFR 1308.11 - 1308.15.

"Conviction" means a finding of guilt (including a plea of nolo contendere) or imposition of sentence, or both, by any judicial body charged with the responsibility to deter- mine violations of the Federal or State criminal drug statutes.

"Criminal drug statute" means a Federal or non-Federal criminal statute involving the manufacture, distribution, dispensing, possession, or use of any controlled substance.

"Drug-free workplace" means the site(s) for the performance of work done by the Contractor in connection with a specific contract at which employees of the Contractor are prohibited from engaging in the unlawful manufacture, distribution, dispensing, possession, or use of a controlled substance.

"Employee" means an employee of a Contractor directly engaged in the performance of work under a Government contract. "Directly engaged" is defined to include all direct cost employees and any other Contractor employee who has other than a minimal impact or involvement in contract performance.

"Individual" means an offeror/contractor that has no more than one employee including the offeror/contractor.

(b) The Contractor, if other than an individual, shall-- within 30 days after award (unless a longer period is agreed to in writing for contracts of 30 days or more performance duration), or as soon as possible for contracts of less than 30 days performance duration--

(1) Publish a statement notifying its employees that the unlawful manufacture, distribution, dispensing, possession, or use of a controlled substance is prohibited in the Contractor's workplace and specifying the actions that will be taken against employees for violations of such prohibition;

(2) Establish an ongoing drug-free awareness program to inform such employees about--

(i) The dangers of drug abuse in the workplace;

(ii) The Contractor's policy of maintaining a drug-free workplace;

(iii) Any available drug counseling, rehabilitation, and employee assistance programs; and

(iv) The penalties that may be imposed upon employees for drug abuse violations occurring in the workplace;

(3) Provide all employees engaged in performance of the contract with a copy of the statement required by subparagraph (b)(1) of this clause;

(4) Notify such employees in writing in the statement required by subparagraph (b)(1) of this clause that, as a condition of continued employment on this contract, the employee will--

(i) Abide by the terms of the statement; and

(ii) Notify the employer in writing of the employee's conviction under a criminal drug statute for a violation occurring in the workplace no later than 5 days after such conviction.

(5) Notify the Contracting Officer in writing within 10 days after receiving notice under subdivision (b)(4)(ii) of this clause, from an employee or otherwise receiving actual notice of such conviction. The notice shall include the position title of the employee;

(6) Within 30 days after receiving notice under subdivision (b)(4)(ii) of this clause of a conviction, take one of the following actions with respect to any employee who is convicted of a drug abuse violation occurring in the workplace:

(i) Taking appropriate personnel action against such employee, up to and including termination; or

(ii) Require such employee to satisfactorily participate in a drug abuse assistance or rehabilitation program approved for such purposes by a Federal, State, or local health, law enforcement, or other appropriate agency; and

(7) Make a good faith effort to maintain a drug-free workplace through implementation of subparagraphs (b)(1) though (b)(6) of this clause.

(c) The Contractor, if an individual, agrees by award of the contract or acceptance of a purchase order, not to engage in the unlawful manufacture, distribution, dispensing, possession, or use of a controlled substance while performing this contract.

(d) In addition to other remedies available to the Government, the Contractor's failure to comply with the requirements of paragraph (b) or (c) of this clause may, pursuant to FAR 23.506, render the Contractor subject to suspension of contract payments, termination of the contract for default, and suspension or debarment.

(End of clause)

52.223-14 TOXIC CHEMICAL RELEASE REPORTING (AUG 2003)

(a) Unless otherwise exempt, the Contractor, as owner or operator of a facility used in the performance of this contract, shall file by July 1 for the prior calendar year an annual Toxic Chemical Release Inventory Form (Form R) as described in sections 313(a) and (g) of the Emergency Planning and Community Right-to-Know Act of 1986 (EPCRA) (42 U.S.C. 11023(a) and (g)), and section 6607 of the Pollution Prevention Act of 1990 (PPA) (42 U.S.C. 13106). The Contractor shall file, for each facility subject to the Form R filing and reporting requirements, the annual Form R throughout the life of the contract.

(b) A Contractor-owned or -operated facility used in the performance of this contract is exempt from the requirement to file an annual Form R if--

(1) The facility does not manufacture, process, or otherwise use any toxic chemicals listed in 40 CFR 372.65;

(2) The facility does not have 10 or more full-time employees as specified in section 313(b)(1)(A) of EPCRA, 42 U.S.C. 11023(b)(1)(A);

(3) The facility does not meet the reporting thresholds of toxic chemicals established under of EPCRA, 42 U.S.C. 11023(f) (including the alternate thresholds at 40 CFR 372.27, provided an appropriate certification form has been filed with EPA);

(4) The facility does not fall within the following Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) codes or their corresponding North American Industry Classification System sectors:

(i) Major group code 10 (except 1011, 1081, and 1094.

(ii) Major group code 12 (except 1241).

(iii) Major group codes 20 through 39.

(iv) Industry code 4911, 4931, or 4939 (limited to facilities that combust coal and/or oil for the purpose of generating power for distribution in commerce).

(v) Industry code 4953 (limited to facilities regulated under the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act, Subtitle C (42 U.S.C. 6921, et seq.)), 5169, 5171, or 7389 (limited to facilities primarily engaged in solvent recovery services on a contract or fee basis); or

(5) The facility is not located in the United States or its outlying areas.

(c) If the Contractor has certified to an exemption in accordance with one or more of the criteria in paragraph (b) of this clause, and after award of the contract circumstances change so that any of its owned or operated facilities used in the performance of this contract is no longer exempt--

(1) The Contractor shall notify the Contracting Officer; and

(2) The Contractor, as owner or operator of a facility used in the performance of this contract that is no longer exempt, shall (i) submit a Toxic Chemical Release Inventory Form (Form R) on or before July 1 for the prior calendar year during which the facility becomes eligible; and (ii) continue to file the annual Form R for the life of the contract for such facility.

(d) The Contracting Officer may terminate this contract or take other action as appropriate, if the Contractor fails to comply accurately and fully with the EPCRA and PPA toxic chemical release filing and reporting requirements.

(e) Except for acquisitions of commercial items, as defined in FAR Part 2, the Contractor shall--

(1) For competitive subcontracts expected to exceed $100,000 (including all options), include a solicitation provision substantially the same as the provision at FAR 52.223-13, Certification of Toxic Chemical Release Reporting; and

(2) Include in any resultant subcontract exceeding $100,000 (including all options), the substance of this clause, except this paragraph (e).

(End of clause)

52.225-9 BUY AMERICAN ACT—CONSTRUCTION MATERIALS (JAN 2005)

(a) Definitions. As used in this clause--

Component means an article, material, or supply incorporated directly into a construction material.

Construction material means an article, material, or supply brought to the construction site by the Contractor or a subcontractor for incorporation into the building or work. The term also includes an item brought to the site preassembled from articles, materials, or supplies. However, emergency life safety systems, such as emergency lighting, fire alarm, and audio evacuation systems, that are discrete systems incorporated into a public building or work and that are produced as complete systems, are evaluated as a single and distinct construction material regardless of when or how the individual parts or components of those systems are delivered to the construction site. Materials purchased directly by the Government are supplies, not construction material.

Cost of components means--

(1) For components purchased by the Contractor, the acquisition cost, including transportation costs to the place of incorporation into the construction material (whether or not such costs are paid to a domestic firm), and any applicable duty (whether or not a duty-free entry certificate is issued); or

(2) For components manufactured by the Contractor, all costs associated with the manufacture of the component, including transportation costs as described in paragraph (1) of this definition, plus allocable overhead costs, but excluding profit. Cost of components does not include any costs associated with the manufacture of the construction material.

Domestic construction material means--

(1) An unmanufactured construction material mined or produced in the United States; or

(2) A construction material manufactured in the United States, if the cost of its components mined, produced, or manufactured in the United States exceeds 50 percent of the cost of all its components. Components of foreign origin of the same class or kind for which nonavailability determinations have been made are treated as domestic.

Foreign construction material means a construction material other than a domestic construction material.

United States means the 50 States, the District of Columbia, and outlying areas.

(b) Domestic preference. (1) This clause implements the Buy American Act (41 U.S.C. 10a-10d) by providing a preference for domestic construction material. The Contractor shall use only domestic construction material in performing this contract, except as provided in paragraphs (b)(2) and (b)(3) of this clause.

(2) This requirement does not apply to the construction material or components listed by the Government as follows: “none”

(3) The Contracting Officer may add other foreign construction material to the list in paragraph (b)(2) of this clause if the Government determines that

(i) The cost of domestic construction material would be unreasonable. The cost of a particular domestic construction material subject to the requirements of the Buy American Act is unreasonable when the cost of such material exceeds the cost of foreign material by more than 6 percent;

(ii) The application of the restriction of the Buy American Act to a particular construction material would be impracticable or inconsistent with the public interest; or

(iii) The construction material is not mined, produced, or manufactured in the United States in sufficient and reasonably available commercial quantities of a satisfactory quality.

(c) Request for determination of inapplicability of the Buy American Act. (1)(i) Any Contractor request to use foreign construction material in accordance with paragraph (b)(3) of this clause shall include adequate information for Government evaluation of the request, including--

(A) A description of the foreign and domestic construction materials;

(B) Unit of measure;

(C) Quantity;

(D) Price;

(E) Time of delivery or availability;

(F) Location of the construction project;

(G) Name and address of the proposed supplier; and

(H) A detailed justification of the reason for use of foreign construction materials cited in accordance with paragraph (b)(3) of this clause.

(ii) A request based on unreasonable cost shall include a reasonable survey of the market and a completed price comparison table in the format in paragraph (d) of this clause.

(iii) The price of construction material shall include all delivery costs to the construction site and any applicable duty (whether or not a duty-free certificate may be issued).

(iv) Any Contractor request for a determination submitted after contract award shall explain why the Contractor could not reasonably foresee the need for such determination and could not have requested the determination before contract award. If the Contractor does not submit a satisfactory explanation, the Contracting Officer need not make a determination.

(2) If the Government determines after contract award that an exception to the Buy American Act applies and the Contracting Officer and the Contractor negotiate adequate consideration, the Contracting Officer will modify the contract to allow use of the foreign construction material. However, when the basis for the exception is the unreasonable price of a domestic construction material, adequate consideration is not less than the differential established in paragraph (b)(3)(i) of this clause.

(3) Unless the Government determines that an exception to the Buy American Act applies, use of foreign construction material is noncompliant with the Buy American Act.

(d) Data. To permit evaluation of requests under paragraph (c) of this clause based on unreasonable cost, the Contractor shall include the following information and any applicable supporting data based on the survey of suppliers:

Foreign and Domestic Construction Materials Price Comparison

Construction material description	Unit of measure	Quantity	Price (dollars) \1\
Item 1			
Foreign construction material....	.....	.....	.....
Domestic construction material...	.....	.....	.....
Item 2			
Foreign construction material....	.....	.....	.....

Domestic construction material... ....

Include all delivery costs to the construction site and any applicable duty (whether or not a duty-free entry certificate is issued).
List name, address, telephone number, and contact for suppliers surveyed. Attach copy of response; if oral, attach summary.
Include other applicable supporting information.

(End of clause)

52.225-11 BUY AMERICAN ACT--CONSTRUCTION MATERIALS UNDER TRADE AGREEMENTS (JAN 2005)

(a) Definitions. As used in this clause--

Caribbean Basin country construction material means a construction material that--

(1) Is wholly the growth, product, or manufacture of a Caribbean Basin country; or

(2) In the case of a construction material that consists in whole or in part of materials from another country, has been substantially transformed in a Caribbean Basin country into a new and different construction material distinct from the materials from which it was transformed.

Component means an article, material, or supply incorporated directly into a construction material.

Construction material means an article, material, or supply brought to the construction site by the Contractor or subcontractor for incorporation into the building or work. The term also includes an item brought to the site preassembled from articles, materials, or supplies. However, emergency life safety systems, such as emergency lighting, fire alarm, and audio evacuation systems, that are discrete systems incorporated into a public building or work and that are produced as complete systems, are evaluated as a single and distinct construction material regardless of when or how the individual parts or components of those systems are delivered to the construction site. Materials purchased directly by the Government are supplies, not construction material.

Cost of components means--

(1) For components purchased by the Contractor, the acquisition cost, including transportation costs to the place of incorporation into the construction material (whether or not such costs are paid to a domestic firm), and any applicable duty (whether or not a duty-free entry certificate is issued); or

(2) For components manufactured by the Contractor, all costs associated with the manufacture of the component, including transportation costs as described in paragraph (1) of this definition, plus allocable overhead costs, but excluding profit. Cost of components does not include any costs associated with the manufacture of the construction material.

Designated country means any of the following countries:

(1) A World Trade Organization Government Procurement Agreement country (Aruba, Austria, Belgium, Canada, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hong Kong, Hungary, Iceland, Ireland, Israel, Italy, Japan, Korea (Republic of), Latvia, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Singapore, Slovak Republic, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, or United Kingdom);

(2) A Free Trade Agreement country (Australia, Canada, Chile, Mexico, Morocco, or Singapore);

(3) A least developed country (Afghanistan, Angola, Bangladesh, Benin, Bhutan, Burkina Faso, Burundi, Cambodia, Cape Verde, Central African Republic, Chad, Comoros, Democratic Republic of Congo, Djibouti, East Timor, Equatorial Guinea, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Gambia, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Haiti, Kiribati, Laos, Lesotho, Madagascar, Malawi, Maldives, Mali, Mauritania, Mozambique, Nepal, Niger, Rwanda, Samoa, Sao Tome and Principe, Senegal, Sierra Leone, Solomon Islands, Somalia, Tanzania, Togo, Tuvalu, Uganda, Vanuatu, Yemen, or Zambia); or

(4) A Caribbean Basin country (Antigua and Barbuda, Aruba, Bahamas, Barbados, Belize, British Virgin Islands, Costa Rica, Dominica, Dominican Republic, El Salvador, Grenada, Guatemala, Guyana, Haiti, Honduras, Jamaica, Montserrat, Netherlands Antilles, Nicaragua, St. Kitts and Nevis, St. Lucia, St. Vincent and the Grenadines, or Trinidad and Tobago).

Designated country construction material means a construction material that is a WTO GPA country construction material, an FTA country construction material, a least developed country construction material, or a Caribbean Basin country construction material.

Domestic construction material means--

(1) An unmanufactured construction material mined or produced in the United States; or

(2) A construction material manufactured in the United States, if the cost of its components mined, produced, or manufactured in the United States exceeds 50 percent of the cost of all its components. Components of foreign origin of the same class or kind for which nonavailability determinations have been made are treated as domestic.

Foreign construction material means a construction material other than a domestic construction material.

Least developed country construction material means a construction material that--

(1) Is wholly the growth, product, or manufacture of a least developed country; or

(2) In the case of a construction material that consists in whole or in part of materials from another country, has been substantially transformed in a least developed country into a new and different construction material distinct from the materials from which it was transformed.

United States means the 50 States, the District of Columbia, and outlying areas.

WTO GPA country construction material means a construction material that--

(1) Is wholly the growth, product, or manufacture of a WTO GPA country; or

(2) In the case of a construction material that consists in whole or in part of materials from another country, has been substantially transformed in a WTO GPA country into a new and different construction material distinct from the materials from which it was transformed.

(b) Construction materials. (1) This clause implements the Buy American Act (41 U.S.C. 10a-10d) by providing a preference for domestic construction material. In addition, the Contracting Officer has determined that the WTO GPA and Free Trade Agreements (FTAs) apply to this acquisition. Therefore, the Buy American Act restrictions are waived for designated country construction materials.

(2) The Contractor shall use only domestic, designated country construction material in performing this contract, except as provided in paragraphs (b)(3) and (b)(4) of this clause.

(3) The requirement in paragraph (b)(2) of this clause does not apply to the construction materials or components listed by the Government as follows: "none"

(4) The Contracting Officer may add other foreign construction material to the list in paragraph (b)(3) of this clause if the Government determines that--

(i) The cost of domestic construction material would be unreasonable. The cost of a particular domestic construction material subject to the restrictions of the Buy American Act is unreasonable when the cost of such material exceeds the cost of foreign material by more than 6 percent;

(ii) The application of the restriction of the Buy American Act to a particular construction material would be impracticable or inconsistent with the public interest; or

(iii) The construction material is not mined, produced, or manufactured in the United States in sufficient and reasonably available commercial quantities of a satisfactory quality.

(c) Request for determination of inapplicability of the Buy American Act.

(1)(i) Any Contractor request to use foreign construction material in accordance with paragraph (b)(4) of this clause shall include adequate information for Government evaluation of the request, including--

(A) A description of the foreign and domestic construction materials;

(B) Unit of measure;

(C) Quantity;

(D) Price;

(E) Time of delivery or availability;

(F) Location of the construction project;

(G) Name and address of the proposed supplier; and

(H) A detailed justification of the reason for use of foreign construction materials cited in accordance with paragraph (b)(3) of this clause.

(ii) A request based on unreasonable cost shall include a reasonable survey of the market and a completed price comparison table in the format in paragraph (d) of this clause.

(iii) The price of construction material shall include all delivery costs to the construction site and any applicable duty (whether or not a duty-free certificate may be issued).

(iv) Any Contractor request for a determination submitted after contract award shall explain why the Contractor could not reasonably foresee the need for such determination and could not have requested the determination before contract award. If the Contractor does not submit a satisfactory explanation, the Contracting Officer need not make a determination.

(2) If the Government determines after contract award that an exception to the Buy American Act applies and the Contracting Officer and the Contractor negotiate adequate consideration, the Contracting Officer will modify the contract to allow use of the foreign construction material. However, when the basis for the exception is the unreasonable price of a domestic construction material, adequate consideration is not less than the differential established in paragraph (b)(4)(i) of this clause.

(3) Unless the Government determines that an exception to the Buy American Act applies, use of foreign construction material is noncompliant with the Buy American Act.

(d) Data. To permit evaluation of requests under paragraph (c) of this clause based on unreasonable cost, the Contractor shall include the following information and any applicable supporting data based on the survey of suppliers:

Foreign and Domestic Construction Materials Price Comparison

Construction material description	Unit of measure	Quantity	Price (dollars) \1\
Item 1:			
Foreign construction material....	.....	.....	.....
Domestic construction material...	.....	.....	.....
Item 2:			
Foreign construction material....	.....	.....	.....
Domestic construction material...	.....	.....	.....

\1\ Include all delivery costs to the construction site and any applicable duty (whether or not a duty-free entry certificate is issued).

List name, address, telephone number, and contact for suppliers surveyed. Attach copy of response; if oral, attach summary.

Include other applicable supporting information.

(End of clause)

52.226-1 UTILIZATION OF INDIAN ORGANIZATIONS AND INDIAN-OWNED ECONOMIC ENTERPRISES (JUN 2000)

(a) Definitions. As used in this clause:

"Indian" means any person who is a member of any Indian tribe, band, group, pueblo or community that is recognized by the Federal Government as eligible for services from the Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA) in accordance with 25 U.S.C. 1452(c) and any ``Native" as defined in the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (43 U.S.C. 1601).

"Indian organization" means the governing body of any Indian tribe or entity established or recognized by the governing body of an Indian tribe for the purposes of 25 U.S.C., chapter 17.

"Indian-owned economic enterprise" means any Indian-owned (as determined by the Secretary of the Interior) commercial, industrial, or business activity established or organized for the purpose of profit, provided that Indian ownership constitutea not less than 51 percent of the enterprise.

"Indian tribe" means any Indian tribe, band, group, pueblo or community, including native villages and native groups (including corporations organized by Kenai, Juneau, Sitka, and Kodiak) as defined in the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, that is recognized by the Federal Government as eligible for services from BIA in

accordance with 25 U.S.C. 1542(c).

"Interested party" means a prime contractor or an actual or prospective offeror whose direct economic interest would be affected by the award of a subcontract or by the failure to award a subcontract.

(b) The Contractor shall use its best efforts to give Indian organizations and Indian-owned economic enterprises (25 U.S.C. 1544) the maximum practicable opportunity to participate in the subcontracts it awards to the fullest extent consistent with efficient performance of its contract.

(1) The Contracting Officer and the Contractor, acting in good faith, may rely on the representation of an Indian organization or Indian-owned economic enterprise as to its eligibility, unless an interested party challenges its status or the Contracting Officer has independent reason to question that status. In the event of a challenge to the representation of a subcontractor, the Contracting Officer will refer the matter to the U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA), Attn: Chief, Division of Contracting and Grants Administration, 1849 C Street, NW., MS 2626-MIB, Washington, DC 20240-4000.

The BIA will determine the eligibility and notify the Contracting Officer. No incentive payment will be made within 50 working days of subcontract award or while a challenge is pending. If a subcontractor is determined to be an ineligible participant, no incentive payment will be made under the Indian Incentive Program.

(2) The Contractor may request an adjustment under the Indian Incentive Program to the following:

(i) The estimated cost of a cost-type contract.

(ii) The target cost of a cost-plus-incentive-fee prime contract.

(iii) The target cost and ceiling price of a fixed-price incentive prime contract.

(iv) The price of a firm-fixed-price prime contract.

(3) The amount of the adjustment to the prime contract is 5 percent of the estimated cost, target cost, or firm-fixed-price included in the subcontract initially awarded to the Indian organization or Indian-owned economic enterprise.

(4) The Contractor has the burden of proving the amount claimed and must assert its request for an adjustment prior to completion of contract performance.

(c) The Contracting Officer, subject to the terms and conditions of the contract and the availability of funds, will authorize an incentive payment of 5 percent of the amount paid to the subcontractor. The Contracting Officer will seek funding in accordance with agency procedures.
(End of clause)

52.227-1 AUTHORIZATION AND CONSENT (JUL 1995)

(a) The Government authorizes and consents to all use and manufacture, in performing this contract or any subcontract at any tier, of any invention described in and covered by a United States patent (1) embodied in the structure or composition of any article the delivery of which is accepted by the Government under this contract or (2) used in machinery, tools, or methods whose use necessarily results from compliance by the Contractor or a subcontractor with (i) specifications or written provisions forming a part of this contract or (ii) specific written instructions given by the Contracting Officer directing the manner of performance. The entire liability to the Government for infringement of a patent of the United States shall be determined solely by the provisions of the

indemnity clause, if any, included in this contract or any subcontract hereunder (including any lower-tier subcontract), and the Government assumes liability for all other infringement to the extent of the authorization and consent hereinabove granted.

(b) The Contractor agrees to include, and require inclusion of, this clause, suitably modified to identify the parties, in all subcontracts at any tier for supplies or services (including construction, architect-engineer services, and materials, supplies, models, samples, and design or testing services expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold (however, omission of this clause from any subcontract, including those at or below the simplified acquisition threshold, does not affect this authorization and consent.)

(End of clause)

52.227-4 PATENT INDEMNITY--CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS (APR 1984)

Except as otherwise provided, the Contractor agrees to indemnify the Government and its officers, agents, and employees against liability, including costs and expenses, for infringement upon any United States patent (except a patent issued upon an application that is now or may hereafter be withheld from issue pursuant to a Secrecy Order under 35 U.S.C. 181) arising out of performing this contract or out of the use or disposal by or for the account of the Government of supplies furnished or work performed under this contract.

(End of clause)

52.228-1 BID GUARANTEE (SEP 1996)

(a) Failure to furnish a bid guarantee in the proper form and amount, by the time set for opening of bids, may be cause for rejection of the bid.

(b) The bidder shall furnish a bid guarantee in the form of a firm commitment, e.g., bid bond supported by good and sufficient surety or sureties acceptable to the Government, postal money order, certified check, cashier's check, irrevocable letter of credit, or, under Treasury Department regulations, certain bonds or notes of the United States. The Contracting Officer will return bid guarantees, other than bid bonds, (1) to unsuccessful bidders as soon as practicable after the opening of bids, and (2) to the successful bidder upon execution of contractual documents and bonds (including any necessary coinsurance or reinsurance agreements), as required by the bid as accepted.-

(c) The amount of the bid guarantee shall be twenty percent of the bid price or $3,000,000.00, whichever is less.-

(d) If the successful bidder, upon acceptance of its bid by the Government within the period specified for acceptance, fails to execute all contractual documents or furnish executed bond(s) within 10 days after receipt of the forms by the bidder, the Contracting Officer may terminate the contract for default.-

(e) In the event the contract is terminated for default, the bidder is liable for any cost of acquiring the work that exceeds the amount of its bid, and the bid guarantee is available to offset the difference.
(End of clause)

52.228-2 ADDITIONAL BOND SECURITY (OCT 1997)

The Contractor shall promptly furnish additional security required to protect the Government and persons supplying labor or materials under this contract if--

(a) Any surety upon any bond, or issuing financial institution for other security, furnished with this contract becomes unacceptable to the Government.

(b) Any surety fails to furnish reports on its financial condition as required by the Government;

(c) The contract price is increased so that the penal sum of any bond becomes inadequate in the opinion of the Contracting Officer; or

(d) An irrevocable letter of credit (ILC) used as security will expire before the end of the period of required security. If the Contractor does not furnish an acceptable extension or replacement ILC, or other acceptable substitute, at least 30 days before an ILC's scheduled expiration, the Contracting officer has the right to immediately draw on the ILC.
(End of clause)
52.228-5 INSURANCE--WORK ON A GOVERNMENT INSTALLATION (JAN 1997)

(a) The Contractor shall, at its own expense, provide and maintain during the entire performance of this contract, at least the kinds and minimum amounts of insurance required in the Schedule or elsewhere in the contract.

(b) Before commencing work under this contract, the Contractor shall notify the Contracting Officer in writing that the required insurance has been obtained. The policies evidencing required insurance shall contain an endorsement to the effect that any cancellation or any material change adversely affecting the Government's interest shall not be effective (1) for such period as the laws of the State in which this contract is to be performed prescribe, or (2) until 30 days after the insurer or the Contractor gives written notice to the Contracting Officer, whichever period is longer.

(c) The Contractor shall insert the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (c), in subcontracts under this contract that require work on a Government installation and shall require subcontractors to provide and maintain the insurance required in the Schedule or elsewhere in the contract. The Contractor shall maintain a copy of all subcontractors' proofs of required insurance, and shall make copies available to the Contracting Officer upon request.

(End of clause)

52.228-11 PLEDGES OF ASSETS (FEB 1992)

(a) Offerors shall obtain from each person acting as an individual surety on a bid guarantee, a performance bond, or a payment bond--

(1) Pledge of assets; and

(2) Standard Form 28, Affidavit of Individual Surety.

(b) Pledges of assets from each person acting as an individual surety shall be in the form of--

(1) Evidence of an escrow account containing cash, certificates of deposit, commercial or Government securities, or other assets described in FAR 28.203-2 (except see 28.203-2(b)(2) with respect to Government securities held in book entry form) and/or;

(2) A recorded lien on real estate. The offeror will be required to provide--

(i) Evidence of title in the form of a certificate of title prepared by a title insurance company approved by the United States Department of Justice. This title evidence must show fee simple title vested in the surety along with any concurrent owners; whether any real estate taxes are due and payable; and any recorded encumbrances against the

property, including the lien filed in favor of the Government as required by FAR 28.203-3(d);

(ii) Evidence of the amount due under any encumbrance shown in the evidence of title;

(iii) A copy of the current real estate tax assessment of the property or a current appraisal dated no earlier than 6 months prior to the date of the bond, prepared by a professional appraiser who certifies that the appraisal has been conducted in accordance with the generally accepted appraisal standards as reflected in the Uniform Standards of Professional Appraisal Practice, as promulgated by the Appraisal Foundation.

(End of clause)

52.228-12 PROSPECTIVE SUBCONTRACTOR REQUESTS FOR BONDS. (OCT 1995)

In accordance with Section 806(a)(3) of Pub. L. 102-190, as amended by Sections 2091 and 8105 of Pub. L. 103-355, upon the request of a prospective subcontractor or supplier offering to furnish labor or material for the performance of this contract for which a payment bond has been furnished to the Government pursuant to the Miller Act, the Contractor shall promptly provide a copy of such payment bond to the requester.

(End of clause)

52.228-13 ALTERNATIVE PAYMENT PROTECTIONS (JULY 2000)

(a) The Contractor shall submit one of the following payment protections:

(i) a payment bond; or (ii) an irrevocable letter of credit (ILC).

(b) The amount of the payment protection shall be 100 percent of the contract price.

(c) The submission of the payment protection is required within 10 calendar days of contract award.

(d) The payment protection shall provide protection for the full contract performance period plus a one-year period.

(e) Except for escrow agreements and payment bonds, which provide their own protection procedures, the Contracting Officer is authorized to access funds under the payment protection when it has been alleged in writing by a supplier of labor or material that a nonpayment has occurred, and to withhold such funds pending resolution by administrative or judicial proceedings or mutual agreement of the parties.

(f) When a tripartite escrow agreement is used, the Contractor shall utilize only suppliers of labor and material that signed the escrow agreement.

(End of clause)

52.228-14 IRREVOCABLE LETTER OF CREDIT (DEC 1999)

(a) “Irrevocable letter of credit” (ILC), as used in this clause, means a written commitment by a federally insured financial institution to pay all or part of a stated amount of money, until the expiration date of the letter, upon presentation by the Government (the beneficiary) of a written demand therefor. Neither the financial institution nor

the offeror/Contractor can revoke or condition the letter of credit.

(b) If the offeror intends to use an ILC in lieu of a bid bond, or to secure other types of bonds such as performance and payment bonds, the letter of credit and letter of confirmation formats in paragraphs (e) and (f) of this clause shall be used.

(c) The letter of credit shall be irrevocable, shall require presentation of no document other than a written demand and the ILC (including confirming letter, if any), shall be issued/confirmed by an acceptable federally insured financial institution as provided in paragraph (d) of this clause, and--

(1) If used as a bid guarantee, the ILC shall expire no earlier than 60 days after the close of the bid acceptance period;

(2) If used as an alternative to corporate or individual sureties as security for a performance or payment bond, the offeror/Contractor may submit an ILC with an initial expiration date estimated to cover the entire period for which financial security is required or may submit an ILC with an initial expiration date that is a minimum period of one year from the date of issuance. The ILC shall provide that, unless the issuer provides the beneficiary written notice of non-renewal at least 60 days in advance of the current expiration date, the ILC is automatically extended without amendment for one year from the expiration date, or any future expiration date, until the period of required coverage is completed and the Contracting Officer provides the financial institution with a written statement waiving the right to payment. The period of required coverage shall be:

(i) For contracts subject to the Miller Act, the later of--

(A) One year following the expected date of final payment;

(B) For performance bonds only, until completion of any warranty period; or

(C) For payment bonds only, until resolution of all claims filed against the payment bond during the one-year period following final payment.

(ii) For contracts not subject to the Miller Act, the later of--

(A) 90 days following final payment; or

(B) For performance bonds only, until completion of any warranty period.

(d) Only federally insured financial institutions rated investment grade or higher shall issue or confirm the ILC. The offeror/Contractor shall provide the Contracting Officer a credit rating that indicates the financial institution has the required rating(s) as of the date of issuance of the ILC. Unless the financial institution issuing the ILC had letter of credit business of less than $25 million in the past year, ILCs over $5 million must be confirmed by another acceptable financial institution that had letter of credit business of less than $25 million in the past year.

(e) The following format shall be used by the issuing financial institution to create an ILC:

_____

[Issuing Financial Institution's Letterhead or Name and Address]

Issue Date _____

IRREVOCABLE LETTER OF CREDIT NO. _____

Account party's name _____

Account party's address _____

For Solicitation No. _____(for reference only)

TO: [U.S. Government agency]

[U.S. Government agency's address]

1. We hereby establish this irrevocable and transferable Letter of Credit in your favor for one or more drawings up to United States $_____. This Letter of Credit is payable at [issuing financial institution's and, if any, confirming financial institution's] office at [issuing financial institution's address and, if any, confirming financial institution's address] and expires with our close of business on _____, or any automatically extended expiration date.

2. We hereby undertake to honor your or the transferee's sight draft(s) drawn on the issuing or, if any, the confirming financial institution, for all or any part of this credit if presented with this Letter of Credit and confirmation, if any, at the office specified in paragraph 1 of this Letter of Credit on or before the expiration date or any automatically extended expiration date.

3. [This paragraph is omitted if used as a bid guarantee, and subsequent paragraphs are renumbered.] It is a condition of this Letter of Credit that it is deemed to be automatically extended without amendment for one year from the expiration date hereof, or any future expiration date, unless at least 60 days prior to any expiration date, we notify you or the transferee by registered mail, or other receipted means of delivery, that we elect not to consider this Letter of Credit renewed for any such additional period. At the time we notify you, we also agree to notify the account party (and confirming financial institution, if any) by the same means of delivery.

4. This Letter of Credit is transferable. Transfers and assignments of proceeds are to be effected without charge to either the beneficiary or the transferee/assignee of proceeds. Such transfer or assignment shall be only at the written direction of the Government (the beneficiary) in a form satisfactory to the issuing financial institution and the confirming financial institution, if any.

5. This Letter of Credit is subject to the Uniform Customs and Practice (UCP) for Documentary Credits, 1993 Revision, International Chamber of Commerce Publication No. 500, and to the extent not inconsistent therewith, to the laws of _____ [state of confirming financial institution, if any, otherwise state of issuing financial institution].

6. If this credit expires during an interruption of business of this financial institution as described in Article 17 of the UCP, the financial institution specifically agrees to effect payment if this credit is drawn against within 30 days after the resumption of our business.

Sincerely,

_____

[Issuing financial institution]

(f) The following format shall be used by the financial institution to confirm an ILC:

_____

[Confirming Financial Institution's Letterhead or Name and Address]

(Date) _____

Our Letter of Credit Advice Number _____

Beneficiary: _____ [U.S. Government agency]

Issuing Financial Institution: _____

Issuing Financial Institution's LC No.: _____

Gentlemen:

1. We hereby confirm the above indicated Letter of Credit, the original of which is attached, issued by _____ [name of issuing financial institution] for drawings of up to United States dollars _____/U.S. $_____ and expiring with our close of business on _____ [the expiration date], or any automatically extended expiration date.

2. Draft(s) drawn under the Letter of Credit and this Confirmation are payable at our office located at _____.

3. We hereby undertake to honor sight draft(s) drawn under and presented with the Letter of Credit and this Confirmation at our offices as specified herein.

4. [This paragraph is omitted if used as a bid guarantee, and subsequent paragraphs are renumbered.] It is a condition of this confirmation that it be deemed automatically extended without amendment for one year from the expiration date hereof, or any automatically extended expiration date, unless:

(a) At least 60 days prior to any such expiration date, we shall notify the Contracting Officer, or the transferee and the issuing financial institution, by registered mail or other receipted means of delivery, that we elect not to consider this confirmation extended for any such additional period; or

(b) The issuing financial institution shall have exercised its right to notify you or the transferee, the account party, and ourselves, of its election not to extend the expiration date of the Letter of Credit.

5. This confirmation is subject to the Uniform Customs and Practice (UCP) for Documentary Credits, 1993 Revision, International Chamber of Commerce Publication No. 500, and to the extent not inconsistent therewith, to the laws of _____ [state of confirming financial institution].

6. If this confirmation expires during an interruption of business of this financial institution as described in Article 17 of the UCP, we specifically agree to effect payment if this credit is drawn against within 30 days after the resumption of our business.

Sincerely,

_____

[Confirming financial institution]

(g) The following format shall be used by the Contracting Officer for a sight draft to draw on the Letter of Credit:

SIGHT DRAFT

_____

[City, State]

(Date) _____

[Name and address of financial institution]

Pay to the order of _____ [Beneficiary Agency] _____ the sum of United States $_____.
This draft is drawn under Irrevocable Letter of Credit No. _____.

_____

[Beneficiary Agency]

By: _____

(End of clause)

52.228-15 PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BONDS--CONSTRUCTION (JUL 2000)-

(a) Definitions. As used in this clause--

Original contract price means the award price of the contract; or, for requirements contracts, the price payable for the estimated total quantity; or, for indefinite-quantity contracts, the price payable for the specified minimum quantity. Original contract price does not include the price of any options, except those options exercised at the time of contract award.

(b) Amount of required bonds. Unless the resulting contract price is $100,000 or less, the successful offeror shall furnish performance and payment bonds to the Contracting Officer as follows:

(1) Performance bonds (Standard Form 25). The penal amount of performance bonds at the time of contract award shall be 100 percent of the original contract price.

(2) Payment Bonds (Standard Form 25-A). The penal amount of payment bonds at the time of contract award shall be 100 percent of the original contract price.

(3) Additional bond protection. (i) The Government may require additional performance and payment bond protection if the contract price is increased. The increase in protection generally will equal 100 percent of the increase in contract price.

(ii) The Government may secure the additional protection by directing the Contractor to increase the penal amount of the existing bond or to obtain an additional bond.

(c) Furnishing executed bonds. The Contractor shall furnish all executed bonds, including any necessary reinsurance agreements, to the Contracting Officer, within the time period specified in the Bid Guarantee provision of the solicitation, or otherwise specified by the Contracting Officer, but in any event, before starting work.

(d) Surety or other security for bonds. The bonds shall be in the form of firm commitment, supported by corporate sureties whose names appear on the list contained in Treasury Department Circular 570, individual sureties, or by other acceptable security such as postal money order, certified check, cashier's check, irrevocable letter of credit, or, in accordance with Treasury Department regulations, certain bonds or notes of the United States. Treasury Circular 570 is published in the Federal Register or may be obtained from the U.S. Department of Treasury, Financial Management Service, Surety Bond Branch, 401 14th Street, NW, 2nd Floor, West Wing, Washington, DC 20227.

(e) Notice of subcontractor waiver of protection (40 U.S.C. 270b(c). Any waiver of the right to sue on the payment bond is void unless it is in writing, signed by the person whose right is waived, and executed after such person has first furnished labor or material for use in the performance of the contract.

(End of clause)

52.229-3 FEDERAL, STATE, AND LOCAL TAXES (APR 2003)

(a) As used in this clause--

"Contract date" means the date set for bid opening or, if this is a negotiated contract or a modification, the effective date of this contract or modification.

"All applicable Federal, State, and local taxes and duties" means all taxes and duties, in effect on the contract date, that the taxing authority is imposing and collecting on the transactions or property covered by this contract.

"After-imposed Federal tax" means any new or increased Federal excise tax or duty, or tax that was exempted or excluded on the contract date but whose exemption was later revoked or reduced during the contract period, on the transactions or property covered by this contract that the Contractor is required to pay or bear as the result of legislative, judicial, or administrative action taking effect after the contract date. It does not include social security tax or other employment taxes.

"After-relieved Federal tax" means any amount of Federal excise tax or duty, except social security or other employment taxes, that would otherwise have been payable on the transactions or property covered by this contract, but which the Contractor is not required to pay or bear, or for which the Contractor obtains a refund or drawback, as the result of legislative, judicial, or administrative action taking effect after the contract date.

Local taxes includes taxes imposed by a possession or territory of the United States, Puerto Rico, or the Northern Mariana Islands, if the contract is performed wholly or partly in any of those areas.

(b) The contract price includes all applicable Federal, State, and local taxes and duties.

(c) The contract price shall be increased by the amount of any after-imposed Federal tax, provided the Contractor warrants in writing that no amount for such newly imposed Federal excise tax or duty or rate increase was included in the contract price, as a contingency reserve or otherwise.

(d) The contract price shall be decreased by the amount of any after-relieved Federal tax.

(e) The contract price shall be decreased by the amount of any Federal excise tax or duty, except social security or other employment taxes, that the Contractor is required to pay or bear, or does not obtain a refund of, through the Contractor's fault, negligence, or failure to follow instructions of the Contracting Officer.

(f) No adjustment shall be made in the contract price under this clause unless the amount of the adjustment exceeds $250.

(g) The Contractor shall promptly notify the Contracting Officer of all matters relating to any Federal excise tax or duty that reasonably may be expected to result in either an increase or decrease in the contract price and shall take appropriate action as the Contracting Officer directs.

(h) The Government shall, without liability, furnish evidence appropriate to establish exemption from any Federal, State, or local tax when the Contractor requests such evidence and a reasonable basis exists to sustain the

exemption.

(End of clause)

52.232-5 PAYMENTS UNDER FIXED-PRICE CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS (SEP 2002)

(a) Payment of price. The Government shall pay the Contractor the contract price as provided in this contract.

(b) Progress payments. The Government shall make progress payments monthly as the work proceeds, or at more frequent intervals as determined by the Contracting Officer, on estimates of work accomplished which meets the standards of quality established under the contract, as approved by the Contracting Officer.

(1) The Contractor's request for progress payments shall include the following substantiation:

(i) An itemization of the amounts requested, related to the various elements of work required by the contract covered by the payment requested.

(ii) A listing of the amount included for work performed by each subcontractor under the contract.

(iii) A listing of the total amount of each subcontract under the contract.

(iv) A listing of the amounts previously paid to each such subcontractor under the contract.

(v) Additional supporting data in a form and detail required by the Contracting Officer.

(2) In the preparation of estimates, the Contracting Officer may authorize material delivered on the site and preparatory work done to be taken into consideration. Material delivered to the Contractor at locations other than the site also may be taken into consideration if--

(i) Consideration is specifically authorized by this contract; and

(ii) The Contractor furnishes satisfactory evidence that it has acquired title to such material and that the material will be used to perform this contract.

(c) Contractor certification. Along with each request for progress payments, the Contractor shall furnish the following certification, or payment shall not be made: (However, if the Contractor elects to delete paragraph (c)(4) from the certification, the certification is still acceptable.)

I hereby certify, to the best of my knowledge and belief, that--

(1) The amounts requested are only for performance in accordance with the specifications, terms, and conditions of the contract;

(2) All payments due to subcontractors and suppliers from previous payments received under the contract have been made, and timely payments will be made from the proceeds of the payment covered by this certification, in accordance with subcontract agreements and the requirements of chapter 39 of Title 31, United States Code;

(3) This request for progress payments does not include any amounts which the prime contractor intends to withhold or retain from a subcontractor or supplier in accordance with the terms and conditions of the subcontract; and

(4) This certification is not to be construed as final acceptance of a subcontractor's performance.

_____

(Name)

_____

(Title)

_____

(Date)

(d) Refund of unearned amounts. If the Contractor, after making a certified request for progress payments, discovers that a portion or all of such request constitutes a payment for performance by the Contractor that fails to conform to the specifications, terms, and conditions of this contract (hereinafter referred to as the "unearned amount"), the Contractor shall--

(1) Notify the Contracting Officer of such performance deficiency; and

(2) Be obligated to pay the Government an amount (computed by the Contracting Officer in the manner provided in paragraph (j) of this clause) equal to interest on the unearned amount from the 8th day after the date of receipt of the unearned amount until--

(i) The date the Contractor notifies the Contracting Officer that the performance deficiency has been corrected; or

(ii) The date the Contractor reduces the amount of any subsequent certified request for progress payments by an amount equal to the unearned amount.

(e) Retainage. If the Contracting Officer finds that satisfactory progress was achieved during any period for which a progress payment is to be made, the Contracting Officer shall authorize payment to be made in full. However, if satisfactory progress has not been made, the Contracting Officer may retain a maximum of 10 percent of the amount of the payment until satisfactory progress is achieved. When the work is substantially complete, the Contracting Officer may retain from previously withheld funds and future progress payments that amount the Contracting Officer considers adequate for protection of the Government and shall release to the Contractor all the remaining withheld funds. Also, on completion and acceptance of each separate building, public work, or other division of the contract, for which the price is stated separately in the contract, payment shall be made for the completed work without retention of a percentage.

(f) Title, liability, and reservation of rights. All material and work covered by progress payments made shall, at the time of payment, become the sole property of the Government, but this shall not be construed as--

(1) Relieving the Contractor from the sole responsibility for all material and work upon which payments have been made or the restoration of any damaged work; or

(2) Waiving the right of the Government to require the fulfillment of all of the terms of the contract.

(g) Reimbursement for bond premiums. In making these progress payments, the Government shall, upon request, reimburse the Contractor for the amount of premiums paid for performance and payment bonds (including coinsurance and reinsurance agreements, when applicable) after the Contractor has furnished evidence of full payment to the surety. The retainage provisions in paragraph (e) of this clause shall not apply to that portion of progress payments attributable to bond premiums.

(h) Final payment. The Government shall pay the amount due the Contractor under this contract after--

(1) Completion and acceptance of all work;

(2) Presentation of a properly executed voucher; and

(3) Presentation of release of all claims against
the Government arising by virtue of this contract, other than claims, in stated amounts, that the Contractor has specifically excepted from the operation of the release. A release may also be required of the assignee if the Contractor's claim to amounts payable under this contract has been assigned under the Assignment of Claims Act of 1940 (31 U.S.C. 3727 and 41 U.S.C. 15).

(i) Limitation because of undefinitized work. Notwithstanding any provision of this contract, progress payments shall not exceed 80 percent on work accomplished on undefinitized contract actions. A "contract action" is any action resulting in a contract, as defined in FAR Subpart 2.1, including contract modifications for additional supplies or services, but not including contract modifications that are within the scope and under the terms of the contract, such as contract modifications issued pursuant to the Changes clause, or funding and other administrative changes.

(j) Interest computation on unearned amounts. In accordance with 31 U.S.C. 3903(c)(1), the amount payable under subparagraph (d)(2) of this clause shall be--

(1) Computed at the rate of average bond equivalent rates of 91-day Treasury bills auctioned at the most recent auction of such bills prior to the date the Contractor receives the unearned amount; and

(2) Deducted from the next available payment to the Contractor.

(End of clause)

52.232-17 INTEREST (JUNE 1996)

(a) Except as otherwise provided in this contract under a Price Reduction for Defective Cost or Pricing Data clause or a Cost Accounting Standards clause, all amounts that become payable by the Contractor to the Government under this contract (net of any applicable tax credit under the Internal Revenue Code (26 U.S.C. 1481)) shall bear simple interest from the date due until paid unless paid within 30 days of becoming due. The interest rate shall be the interest rate established by the Secretary of the Treasury as provided in Section 12 of the Contract Disputes Act of 1978 (Public Law 95-563), which is applicable to the period in which the amount becomes due, as provided in paragraph (b) of this clause, and then at the rate applicable for each six-month period as fixed by the Secretary until the amount is paid. reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and (b) Amounts shall be due at the earliest of the following dates:

(1) The date fixed under this contract.

(2) The date of the first written demand for payment consistent with this contract, including any demand resulting from a default termination.

(3) The date the Government transmits to the Contractor a proposed supplemental agreement to confirm completed negotiations establishing the amount of debt.

(4) If this contract provides for revision of prices, the date of written notice to the Contractor stating the amount of refund payable in connection with a pricing proposal or a negotiated pricing agreement not confirmed by contract modification.

(c) The interest charge made under this clause may be reduced under the procedures prescribed in 32.614-2 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation in effect on the date of this contract.

(End of clause)

52.232-23 ASSIGNMENT OF CLAIMS (JAN 1986)

(a) The Contractor, under the Assignment of Claims Act, as amended, 31 U.S.C. 3727, 41 U.S.C. 15 (hereafter referred to as "the Act"), may assign its rights to be paid amounts due or to become due as a result of the performance of this contract to a bank, trust company, or other financing institution, including any Federal lending agency. The assignee under such an assignment may thereafter further assign or reassign its right under the original assignment to any type of financing institution described in the preceding sentence.

(b) Any assignment or reassignment authorized under the Act and this clause shall cover all unpaid amounts payable under this contract, and shall not be made to more than one party, except that an assignment or reassignment may be made to one party as agent or trustee for two or more parties participating in the financing of this contract.

(c) The Contractor shall not furnish or disclose to any assignee under this contract any classified document (including this contract) or information related to work under this contract until the Contracting Officer authorizes such action in writing.

(End of clause)

52.232-27 PROMPT PAYMENT FOR CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS (OCT 2003)

Notwithstanding any other payment terms in this contract, the Government will make invoice payments under the terms and conditions specified in this clause. The Government considers payment as being made on the day a check is dated or the date of an electronic funds transfer. Definitions of pertinent terms are set forth in sections 2.101, 32.001, and 32.902 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation. All days referred to in this clause are calendar days, unless otherwise specified. (However, see paragraph (a)(3) concerning payments due on Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays.)

(a) Invoice payments--(1) Types of invoice payments. For purposes of this clause, there are several types of invoice payments that may occur under this contract, as follows:

(i) Progress payments, if provided for elsewhere in this contract, based on Contracting Officer approval of the estimated amount and value of work or services performed, including payments for reaching milestones in any project.

(A) The due date for making such payments is 14 days after the designated billing office receives a proper payment request. If the designated billing office fails to annotate the payment request with the actual date of receipt at the time of receipt, the payment due date is the 14th day after the date of the Contractor's payment request, provided the designated billing office receives a proper payment request and there is no disagreement over quantity, quality, or Contractor compliance with contract requirements.

(B) The due date for payment of any amounts retained by the Contracting Officer in accordance with the clause at 52.232-5, Payments Under Fixed-Price Construction Contracts, is as specified in the contract or, if not specified, 30 days after approval by the Contracting Officer for release to the Contractor.

(ii) Final payments based on completion and acceptance of all work and presentation of release of all claims against the Government arising by virtue of the contract, and payments for partial deliveries that have been accepted by the Government (e.g., each separate building, public work, or other division of the contract for which the price is stated separately in the contract).

(A) The due date for making such payments is the later of the following two events:

(1) The 30th day after the designated billing office receives a proper invoice from the Contractor.

(2) The 30th day after Government acceptance of the work or services completed by the Contractor. For a final invoice when the payment amount is subject to contract settlement actions (e.g., release of claims), acceptance is deemed to occur on the effective date of the contract settlement.

(B) If the designated billing office fails to annotate the invoice with the date of actual receipt at the time of receipt, the invoice payment due date is the 30th day after the date of the Contractor's invoice, provided the designated billing office receives a proper invoice and there is no disagreement over quantity, quality, or Contractor compliance with contract requirements.

(2) Contractor's invoice. The Contractor shall prepare and submit invoices to the designated billing office specified in the contract. A proper invoice must include the items listed in paragraphs (a)(2)(i) through (a)(2)(xi) of this clause. If the invoice does not comply with these requirements, the designated billing office must return it within 7 days after receipt, with the reasons why it is not a proper invoice. When computing any interest penalty owed the Contractor, the Government will take into account if the Government notifies the Contractor of an improper invoice in an untimely manner.

(i) Name and address of the Contractor.

(ii) Invoice date and invoice number. (The Contractor should date invoices as close as possible to the date of mailing or transmission.)

(iii) Contract number or other authorization for work or services performed (including order number and contract line item number).

(iv) Description of work or services performed.

(v) Delivery and payment terms (e.g., discount for prompt payment terms).

(vi) Name and address of Contractor official to whom payment is to be sent (must be the same as that in the contract or in a proper notice of assignment).

(vii) Name (where practicable), title, phone number, and mailing address of person to notify in the event of a defective invoice.

(viii) For payments described in paragraph (a)(1)(i) of this clause, substantiation of the amounts requested and certification in accordance with the requirements of the clause at 52.232-5, Payments Under Fixed-Price Construction Contracts.

(ix) Taxpayer Identification Number (TIN). The Contractor shall include its TIN on the invoice only if required elsewhere in this contract.

(x) Electronic funds transfer (EFT) banking information.

(A) The Contractor shall include EFT banking information on the invoice only if required elsewhere in this contract.

(B) If EFT banking information is not required to be on the invoice, in order for the invoice to be a proper invoice, the Contractor shall have submitted correct EFT banking information in accordance with the applicable solicitation provision (e.g., 52.232-38, Submission of Electronic Funds Transfer Information with Offer), contract clause (e.g., 52.232-33, Payment by Electronic Funds Transfer--Central Contractor Registration, or 52.232-34, Payment by Electronic Funds Transfer--Other Than Central Contractor Registration), or applicable agency procedures.

(C) EFT banking information is not required if the Government waived the requirement to pay by EFT.

(xi) Any other information or documentation required by the contract.

(3) Interest penalty. The designated payment office will pay an interest penalty automatically, without request from the Contractor, if payment is not made by the due date and the conditions listed in paragraphs (a)(3)(i) through (a)(3)(iii) of this clause are met, if applicable. However, when the due date falls on a Saturday, Sunday, or legal holiday, the designated payment office may make payment on the following working day without incurring a late payment interest penalty.

(i) The designated billing office received a proper invoice.

(ii) The Government processed a receiving report or other Government documentation authorizing payment and there was no disagreement over quantity, quality, Contractor compliance with any contract term or condition, or requested progress payment amount.

(iii) In the case of a final invoice for any balance of funds due the Contractor for work or services performed, the amount was not subject to further contract settlement actions between the Government and the Contractor.

(4) Computing penalty amount. The Government will compute the interest penalty in accordance with the Office of Management and Budget prompt payment regulations at 5 CFR part 1315.

(i) For the sole purpose of computing an interest penalty that might be due the Contractor for payments described in paragraph (a)(1)(ii) of this clause, Government acceptance or approval is deemed to occur constructively on the 7th day after the Contractor has completed the work or services in accordance with the terms and conditions of the contract. If actual acceptance or approval occurs within the constructive acceptance or approval period, the Government will base the determination of an interest penalty on the actual date of acceptance or approval. Constructive acceptance or constructive approval requirements do not apply if there is a disagreement over quantity, quality, or Contractor compliance with a contract provision. These requirements also do not compel Government officials to accept work or services, approve Contractor estimates, perform contract administration functions, or make payment prior to fulfilling their responsibilities.

(ii) The prompt payment regulations at 5 CFR 1315.10(c) do not require the Government to pay interest penalties if payment delays are due to disagreement between the Government and the Contractor over the payment amount or other issues involving contract compliance, or on amounts temporarily withheld or retained in accordance with the terms of the contract. The Government and the Contractor shall resolve claims involving disputes, and any interest that may be payable in accordance with the clause at FAR 52.233-1, Disputes.

(5) Discounts for prompt payment. The designated payment office will pay an interest penalty automatically, without request from the Contractor, if the Government takes a discount for prompt payment improperly. The Government will calculate the interest penalty in accordance with the prompt payment regulations at 5 CFR part 1315.

(6) Additional interest penalty. (i) The designated payment office will pay a penalty amount, calculated in accordance with the prompt payment regulations at 5 CFR part 1315 in addition to the interest penalty amount only if--

(A) The Government owes an interest penalty of $1 or more;

(B) The designated payment office does not pay the interest penalty within 10 days after the date the invoice amount is paid; and

(C) The Contractor makes a written demand to the designated payment office for additional penalty payment, in accordance with paragraph (a)(6)(ii) of this clause, postmarked not later than 40 days after the date the invoice amount is paid.

(ii)(A) The Contractor shall support written demands for additional penalty payments with the following data. The Government will not request any additional data. The Contractor shall--

(1) Specifically assert that late payment interest is due under a specific invoice, and request payment of all overdue late payment interest penalty and such additional penalty as may be required;

(2) Attach a copy of the invoice on which the unpaid late payment interest was due; and

(3) State that payment of the principal has been received, including the date of receipt.

(B) If there is no postmark or the postmark is illegible--

(1) The designated payment office that receives the demand will annotate it with the date of receipt provided the demand is received on or before the 40th day after payment was made; or

(2) If the designated payment office fails to make the required annotation, the Government will determine the demand's validity based on the date the Contractor has placed on the demand, provided such date is no later than the 40th day after payment was made.

(b) Contract financing payments. If this contract provides for contract financing, the Government will make contract financing payments in accordance with the applicable contract financing clause.

(c) Subcontract clause requirements. The Contractor shall include in each subcontract for property or services (including a material supplier) for the purpose of performing this contract the following:

(1) Prompt payment for subcontractors. A payment clause that obligates the Contractor to pay the subcontractor for satisfactory performance under its subcontract not later than 7 days from receipt of payment out of such amounts as are paid to the Contractor under this contract.

(2) Interest for subcontractors. An interest penalty clause that obligates the Contractor to pay to the subcontractor an interest penalty for each payment not made in accordance with the payment clause--

(i) For the period beginning on the day after the required payment date and ending on the date on which payment of the amount due is made; and

(ii) Computed at the rate of interest established by the Secretary of the Treasury, and published in the Federal Register, for interest payments under section 12 of the Contract Disputes Act of 1978 (41 U.S.C. 611) in effect at the time the Contractor accrues the obligation to pay an interest penalty.

(3) Subcontractor clause flowdown. A clause requiring each subcontractor to use:

(i) Include a payment clause and an interest penalty clause conforming to the standards set forth in paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this clause in each of its subcontracts; and

(ii) Require each of its subcontractors to include such clauses in their subcontracts with each lower-tier subcontractor or supplier.

(d) Subcontract clause interpretation. The clauses required by paragraph (c) of this clause shall not be construed to impair the right of the Contractor or a subcontractor at any tier to negotiate, and to include in their subcontract, provisions that--

(1) Retainage permitted. Permit the Contractor or a subcontractor to retain (without cause) a specified percentage of each progress payment otherwise due to a subcontractor for satisfactory performance under the subcontract without incurring any obligation to pay a late payment interest penalty, in accordance with terms and conditions agreed to by the parties to the subcontract, giving such recognition as the parties deem appropriate to the ability of a subcontractor to furnish a performance bond and a payment bond;

(2) Withholding permitted. Permit the Contractor or subcontractor to make a determination that part or all of the subcontractor's request for payment may be withheld in accordance with the subcontract agreement; and

(3) Withholding requirements. Permit such withholding without incurring any obligation to pay a late payment penalty if--

(i) A notice conforming to the standards of paragraph (g) of this clause previously has been furnished to the subcontractor; and

(ii) The Contractor furnishes to the Contracting Officer a copy of any notice issued by a Contractor pursuant to paragraph (d)(3)(i) of this clause.

(e) Subcontractor withholding procedures. If a Contractor, after making a request for payment to the Government but before making a payment to a subcontractor for the subcontractor's performance covered by the payment request, discovers that all or a portion of the payment otherwise due such subcontractor is subject to withholding from the subcontractor in accordance with the subcontract agreement, then the Contractor shall--

(1) Subcontractor notice. Furnish to the subcontractor a notice conforming to the standards of paragraph (g) of this clause as soon as practicable upon ascertaining the cause giving rise to a withholding, but prior to the due date for subcontractor payment;

(2) Contracting Officer notice. Furnish to the Contracting Officer, as soon as practicable, a copy of the notice furnished to the subcontractor pursuant to paragraph (e)(1) of this clause;

(3) Subcontractor progress payment reduction. Reduce the subcontractor's progress payment by an amount not to exceed the amount specified in the notice of withholding furnished under paragraph (e)(1) of this clause;

(4) Subsequent subcontractor payment. Pay the subcontractor as soon as practicable after the correction of the identified subcontract performance deficiency, and--

(i) Make such payment within--

(A) Seven days after correction of the identified subcontract performance deficiency (unless the funds therefor must be recovered from the Government because of a reduction under paragraph
(e)(5)(i)) of this clause; or

(B) Seven days after the Contractor recovers such funds from the Government; or

(ii) Incur an obligation to pay a late payment interest penalty computed at the rate of interest established by the Secretary of the Treasury, and published in the Federal Register, for interest payments under section 12 of the

Contracts Disputes Act of 1978 (41 U.S.C. 611) in effect at the time the Contractor accrues the obligation to pay an interest penalty;

(5) Notice to Contracting Officer. Notify the Contracting Officer upon--

(i) Reduction of the amount of any subsequent certified application for payment; or

(ii) Payment to the subcontractor of any withheld amounts of a progress payment, specifying--

(A) The amounts withheld under paragraph (e)(1) of this clause; and

(B) The dates that such withholding began and ended; and

(6) Interest to Government. Be obligated to pay to the Government an amount equal to interest on the withheld payments (computed in the manner provided in 31 U.S.C. 3903(c)(1)), from the 8th day after receipt of the withheld amounts from the Government until--

(i) The day the identified subcontractor performance deficiency is corrected; or

(ii) The date that any subsequent payment is reduced under paragraph (e)(5)(i) of this clause.

(f) Third-party deficiency reports--(1) Withholding from subcontractor. If a Contractor, after making payment to a first-tier subcontractor, receives from a supplier or subcontractor of the first-tier subcontractor (hereafter referred to as a “second-tier subcontractor”) a written notice in accordance with section 2 of the Act of August 24, 1935 (40 U.S.C. 270b, Miller Act), asserting a deficiency in such first-tier subcontractor's performance under the contract for which the Contractor may be ultimately liable, and the Contractor determines that all or a portion of future payments otherwise due such first-tier subcontractor is subject to withholding in accordance with the subcontract agreement, the Contractor may, without incurring an obligation to pay an interest penalty under paragraph (e)(6) of this clause--

(i) Furnish to the first-tier subcontractor a notice conforming to the standards of paragraph (g) of this clause as soon as practicable upon making such determination; and

(ii) Withhold from the first-tier subcontractor's next available progress payment or payments an amount not to exceed the amount specified in the notice of withholding furnished under paragraph (f)(1)(i) of this clause.

(2) Subsequent payment or interest charge. As soon as practicable, but not later than 7 days after receipt of satisfactory written notification that the identified subcontract performance deficiency has been corrected, the Contractor shall--

(i) Pay the amount withheld under paragraph (f)(1)(ii) of this clause to such first-tier subcontractor; or

(ii) Incur an obligation to pay a late payment interest penalty to such first-tier subcontractor computed at the rate of interest established by the Secretary of the Treasury, and published in the Federal Register, for interest payments under section 12 of the Contracts DisputesAct of 1978 (41 U.S.C. 611) in effect at the time the Contractor accrues the obligation to pay an interest penalty.

(g) Written notice of subcontractor withholding. The Contractor shall issue a written notice of any withholding to a subcontractor (with a copy furnished to the Contracting Officer), specifying--

(1) The amount to be withheld;

(2) The specific causes for the withholding under the terms of the subcontract; and

(3) The remedial actions to be taken by the subcontractor in order to receive payment of the amounts withheld.

(h) Subcontractor payment entitlement. The Contractor may not request payment from the Government of any amount withheld or retained in accordance with paragraph (d) of this clause until such time as the Contractor has determined and certified to the Contracting Officer that the subcontractor is entitled to the payment of such amount.

(i) Prime-subcontractor disputes. A dispute between the Contractor and subcontractor relating to the amount or entitlement of a subcontractor to a payment or a late payment interest penalty under a clause included in the subcontract pursuant to paragraph (c) of this clause does not constitute a dispute to which the Government is a party. The Government may not be interpleaded in any judicial or administrative proceeding involving such a dispute.

(j) Preservation of prime-subcontractor rights. Except as provided in paragraph (i) of this clause, this clause shall not limit or impair any contractual, administrative, or judicial remedies otherwise available to the Contractor or a subcontractor in the event of a dispute involving late payment or nonpayment by the Contractor or deficient subcontract performance or nonperformance by a subcontractor.

(k) Non-recourse for prime contractor interest penalty. The Contractor's obligation to pay an interest penalty to a subcontractor pursuant to the clauses included in a subcontract under paragraph (c) of this clause shall not be construed to be an obligation of the Government for such interest penalty. A cost-reimbursement claim may not include any amount for reimbursement of such interest penalty.

(l) Overpayments. If the Contractor becomes aware of a duplicate contract financing or invoice payment or that the Government has otherwise overpaid on a contract financing or invoice payment, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Contracting Officer and request instructions for disposition of the overpayment.

(End of clause)

52.233-1 DISPUTES. (JUL 2002)

(a) This contract is subject to the Contract Disputes Act of 1978, as amended (41 U.S.C. 601-613).

(b) Except as provided in the Act, all disputes arising under or relating to this contract shall be resolved under this clause.

(c) Claim, as used in this clause, means a written demand or written assertion by one of the contracting parties seeking, as a matter of right, the payment of money in a sum certain, the adjustment or interpretation of contract terms, or other relief arising under or relating to this contract. However, a written demand or written assertion by the Contractor seeking the payment of money exceeding $100,000 is not a claim under the Act until certified. A voucher, invoice, or other routine request for payment that is not in dispute when submitted is not a claim under the Act. The submission may be converted to a claim under the Act, by complying with the submission and certification requirements of this clause, if it is disputed either as to liability or amount or is not acted upon in a reasonable time.

(d)(1) A claim by the Contractor shall be made in writing and, unless otherwise stated in this contract, submitted within 6 years after accrual of the claim to the Contracting Officer for a written decision. A claim by the Government against the Contractor shall be subject to a written decision by the Contracting Officer.

(2)(i) The contractors shall provide the certification specified in subparagraph (d)(2)(iii) of this clause when submitting any claim -

(A) Exceeding $100,000; or

(B) Regardless of the amount claimed, when using -

(1) Arbitration conducted pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 575-580; or

(2) Any other alternative means of dispute resolution (ADR) technique that the agency elects to handle in accordance with the Administrative Dispute Resolution Act (ADRA).

(ii) The certification requirement does not apply to issues in controversy that have not been submitted as all or part of a claim.

(iii) The certification shall state as follows: "I certify that the claim is made in good faith; that the supporting data are accurate and complete to the best of my knowledge and belief; that the amount requested accurately reflects the contract adjustment for which the Contractor believes the Government is liable; and that I am duly authorized to certify the claim on behalf of the Contractor.

(3) The certification may be executed by any person duly authorized to bind the Contractor with respect to the claim.

(e) For Contractor claims of $100,000 or less, the Contracting Officer must, if requested in writing by the Contractor, render a decision within 60 days of the request. For Contractor-certified claims over $100,000, the Contracting Officer must, within 60 days, decide the claim or notify the Contractor of the date by which the decision will be made.

(f) The Contracting Officer's decision shall be final unless the Contractor appeals or files a suit as provided in the Act.

(g) If the claim by the Contractor is submitted to the Contracting Officer or a claim by the Government is presented to the Contractor, the parties, by mutual consent, may agree to use alternative disput resolution (ADR). If the Contractor refuses an offer for ADR, the Contractor shall inform the Contracting Officer, in writing, of the Contractor's specific reasons for rejecting the request.

(h) The Government shall pay interest on the amount found due and unpaid from (1) the date the Contracting Officer receives the claim (certified, if required); or (2) the date that payment otherwise would be due, if that date is later, until the date of payment. With regard to claims having defective certifications, as defined in (FAR) 48 CFR 33.201, interest shall be paid from the date that the Contracting Officer initially receives the claim. Simple interest on claims shall be paid at the rate, fixed by the Secretary of the Treasury as provided in the Act, which is applicable to the period during which the Contracting Officer receives the claim and then at the rate applicable for each 6-month period as fixed by the Treasury Secretary during the pendency of the claim.

(i) The Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of this contract, pending final resolution of any request for relief, claim, appeal, or action arising under the contract, and comply with any decision of the Contracting Officer.

(End of clause)

52.233-3 PROTEST AFTER AWARD (AUG. 1996)

(a) Upon receipt of a notice of protest (as defined in FAR 33.101) or a determination that a protest is likely (see FAR 33.102(d)), the Contracting Officer may, by written order to the Contractor, direct the Contractor to stop performance of the work called for by this contract. The order shall be specifically identified as a stop-work order issued under this clause. Upon receipt of the order, the Contractor shall immediately comply with its terms and take all reasonable steps to minimize the incurrence of costs allocable to the work covered by the order during the period

of work stoppage. Upon receipt of the final decision in the protest, the Contracting Officer shall either--

(1) Cancel the stop-work order; or

(2) Terminate the work covered by the order as provided in the Default, or the Termination for Convenience of the Government, clause of this contract.

(b) If a stop-work order issued under this clause is canceled either before or after a final decision in the protest, the Contractor shall resume work. The Contracting Officer shall make an equitable adjustment in the delivery schedule or contract price, or both, and the contract shall be modified, in writing, accordingly, if--

(1) The stop-work order results in an increase in the time required for, or in the Contractor's cost properly allocable to, the performance of any part of this contract; and

(2) The Contractor asserts its right to an adjustment within 30 days after the end of the period of work stoppage; provided, that if the Contracting Officer decides the facts justify the action, the Contracting Officer may receive and act upon a proposal at any time before final payment under this contract.

(c) If a stop-work order is not canceled and the work covered by the order is terminated for the convenience of the Government, the Contracting Officer shall allow reasonable costs resulting from the stop-work order in arriving at the termination settlement.

(d) If a stop-work order is not canceled and the work covered by the order is terminated for default, the Contracting Officer shall allow, by equitable adjustment or otherwise, reasonable costs resulting from the stop-work order.

(e) The Government's rights to terminate this contract at any time are not affected by action taken under this clause.

(f) If, as the result of the Contractor's intentional or negligent misstatement, misrepresentation, or miscertification, a protest related to this contract is sustained, and the Government pays costs, as provided in FAR 33.102(b)(2) or 33.104(h)(1), the Government may require the Contractor to reimburse the Government the amount of such costs. In addition to any other remedy available, and pursuant to the requirements of Subpart 32.6, the Government may collect this debt by offsetting the amount against any payment due the Contractor under any contract between the Contractor and the Government.

(End of clause)

52.233-4 APPLICABLE LAW FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT CLAIM (OCT 2004)

United States law will apply to resolve any claim of breach of this contract.

(End of clause)

52.236-2 DIFFERING SITE CONDITIONS (APR 1984)

As prescribed in 36.502, insert the following clause in solicitations and contracts when a fixed-price construction contract or a fixed-price dismantling, demolition, or removal of improvements contract is contemplated and the contract amount is expected to exceed the small purchase limitation. The Contracting Officer may insert the clause in solicitations and contracts when a fixed-price construction or a fixed-price contract for dismantling, demolition, or removal of improvements is contemplated and the contract amount is expected to be within the small purchase limitation.

(a) The Contractor shall promptly, and before the conditions are disturbed, give a written notice to the Contracting Officer of

(1) subsurface or latent physical conditions at the site which differ materially from those indicated in this contract, or

(2) unknown physical conditions at the site, of an unusual nature, which differ materially from those ordinarily encountered and generally recognized as inhering in work of the character provided for in the contract.

(b) The Contracting Officer shall investigate the site conditions promptly after receiving the notice. If the conditions do materially so differ and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or the time required for, performing any part of the work under this contract, whether or not changed as a result of the conditions, an equitable adjustment shall be made under this clause and the contract modified in writing accordingly.

(c) No request by the Contractor for an equitable adjustment to the contract under this clause shall be allowed, unless the Contractor has given the written notice required; provided, that the time prescribed in (a) above for giving written notice may be extended by the Contracting Officer.

(d) No request by the Contractor for an equitable adjustment to the contract for differing site conditions shall be allowed if made after final payment under this contract.

(End of clause)

52.236-3 SITE INVESTIGATION AND CONDITIONS AFFECTING THE WORK (APR 1984)

(a) The Contractor acknowledges that it has taken steps reasonably necessary to ascertain the nature and location of the work, and that it has investigated and satisfied itself as to the general and local conditions which can affect the work or its cost, including but not limited to

(1) conditions bearing upon transportation, disposal, handling, and storage of materials;

(2) the availability of labor, water, electric power, and roads;

(3) uncertainties of weather, river stages, tides, or similar physical conditions at the site;

(4) the conformation and conditions of the ground; and (5) the character of equipment and facilities needed preliminary to and during work performance. The Contractor also acknowledges that it has satisfied itself as to the character, quality, and quantity of surface and subsurface materials or obstacles to be encountered insofar as this information is reasonably ascertainable from an inspection of the site, including all exploratory work done by the Government, as well as from the drawings and specifications made a part of this contract. Any failure of the Contractor to take the actions described and acknowledged in this paragraph will not relieve the Contractor from responsibility for estimating properly the difficulty and cost of successfully performing the work, or for proceeding to successfully perform the work without additional expense to the Government.

(b) The Government assumes no responsibility for any conclusions or interpretations made by the Contractor based on the information made available by the Government. Nor does the Government assume responsibility for any understanding reached or representation made concerning conditions which can affect the work by any of its officers or agents before the execution of this contract, unless that understanding or representation is expressly stated in this contract.

(End of clause)

52.236-4 PHYSICAL DATA (APR 1984)

Data and information furnished or referred to below is for the Contractor's information. The Government shall not be responsible for any interpretation of or conclusion drawn from the data or information by the Contractor.

(a) The indications of physical conditions on the drawings and in the specifications are the result of site investigations by the methods identified in Division 1 of the specification.

(b) Weather conditions: See Division 1 of the specification.

(c) Transportation facilities: See Division 1 of the specification.

(d) Other: See Division 1 of the specification.
(End of clause)

52.236-5 MATERIAL AND WORKMANSHIP (APR 1984)

(a) All equipment, material, and articles incorporated into the work covered by this contract shall be new and of the most suitable grade for the purpose intended, unless otherwise specifically provided in this contract. References in the specifications to equipment, material, articles, or patented processes by trade name, make, or catalog number, shall be regarded as establishing a standard of quality and shall not be construed as limiting competition. The Contractor may, at its option, use any equipment, material, article, or process that, in the judgment of the Contracting Officer, is equal to that named in the specifications, unless otherwise specifically provided in this contract.

(b) The Contractor shall obtain the Contracting Officer's approval of the machinery and mechanical and other equipment to be incorporated into the work. When requesting approval, the Contractor shall furnish to the Contracting Officer the name of the manufacturer, the model number, and other information concerning the performance, capacity, nature, and rating of the machinery and mechanical and other equipment. When required by this contract or by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall also obtain the Contracting Officer's approval of the material or articles which the Contractor contemplates incorporating into the work. When requesting approval, the Contractor shall provide full information concerning the material or articles. When directed to do so, the Contractor shall submit samples for approval at the Contractor's expense, with all shipping charges prepaid. Machinery, equipment, material, and articles that do not have the required approval shall be installed or used at the risk of subsequent rejection.

(c) All work under this contract shall be performed in a skillful and workmanlike manner. The Contracting Officer may require, in writing, that the Contractor remove from the work any employee the Contracting Officer deems incompetent, careless, or otherwise objectionable.

(End of clause)

52.236-6 SUPERINTENDENCE BY THE CONTRACTOR (APR 1984)

At all times during performance of this contract and until the work is completed and accepted, the Contractor shall directly superintend the work or assign and have on the worksite a competent superintendent who is satisfactory to the Contracting Officer and has authority to act for the Contractor.

(End of clause)

52.236-7 PERMITS AND RESPONSIBILITIES (NOV 1991)

The Contractor shall, without additional expense to the Government, be responsible for obtaining any necessary licenses and permits, and for complying with any Federal, State, and municipal laws, codes, and regulations applicable to the performance of the work. The Contractor shall also be responsible for all damages to persons or property that occur as a result of the Contractor's fault or negligence. The Contractor shall also be responsible for all materials delivered and work performed until completion and acceptance of the entire work, except for any completed unit of work which may have been accepted under the contract.

(End of clause)

52.236-8 OTHER CONTRACTS (APR 1984)

The Government may undertake or award other contracts for additional work at or near the site of the work under this contract. The Contractor shall fully cooperate with the other contractors and with Government employees and shall carefully adapt scheduling and performing the work under this contract to accommodate the additional work, heeding any direction that may be provided by the Contracting Officer. The Contractor shall not commit or permit any act that will interfere with the performance of work by any other contractor or by Government employees.

(End of clause)

52.236-9 PROTECTION OF EXISTING VEGETATION, STRUCTURES, EQUIPMENT, UTILITIES, AND IMPROVEMENTS (APR 1984)

(a) The Contractor shall preserve and protect all structures, equipment, and vegetation (such as trees, shrubs, and grass) on or adjacent to the work site, which are not to be removed and which do not unreasonably interfere with the work required under this contract. The Contractor shall only remove trees when specifically authorized to do so, and shall avoid damaging vegetation that will remain in place. If any limbs or branches of trees are broken during contract performance, or by the careless operation of equipment, or by workmen, the Contractor shall trim those limbs or branches with a clean cut and paint the cut with a tree-pruning compound as directed by the Contracting Officer.

(b) The Contractor shall protect from damage all existing improvements and utilities

(1) at or near the work site, and

(2) on adjacent property of a third party, the locations of which are made known to or should be known by the Contractor. The Contractor shall repair any damage to those facilities, including those that are the property of a third party, resulting from failure to comply with the requirements of this contract or failure to exercise reasonable

care in performing the work. If the Contractor fails or refuses to repair the damage promptly, the Contracting Officer may have the necessary work performed and charge the cost to the Contractor.
(End of clause)

52.236-10 OPERATIONS AND STORAGE AREAS (APR 1984)

(a) The Contractor shall confine all operations (including storage of materials) on Government premises to areas authorized or approved by the Contracting Officer. The Contractor shall hold and save the Government, its officers and agents, free and harmless from liability of any nature occasioned by the Contractor's performance.

(b) Temporary buildings (e.g., storage sheds, shops, offices) and utilities may be erected by the Contractor only with the approval of the Contracting Officer and shall be built with labor and materials furnished by the Contractor without expense to the Government. The temporary buildings and utilities shall remain the property of the Contractor and shall be removed by the Contractor at its expense upon completion of the work. With the written consent of the Contracting Officer, the buildings and utilities may be abandoned and need not be removed.

(c) The Contractor shall, under regulations prescribed by the Contracting Officer, use only established roadways, or use temporary roadways constructed by the Contractor when and as authorized by the Contracting Officer. When materials are transported in prosecuting the work, vehicles shall not be loaded beyond the loading capacity recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle or prescribed by any Federal, State, or local law or regulation. When it is necessary to cross curbs or sidewalks, the Contractor shall protect them from damage. The Contractor shall repair or pay for the repair of any damaged curbs, sidewalks, or roads.
(End of clause)

52.236-11 USE AND POSSESSION PRIOR TO COMPLETION (APR 1984)

(a) The Government shall have the right to take possession of or use any completed or partially completed part of the work. Before taking possession of or using any work, the Contracting Officer shall furnish the Contractor a list of items of work remaining to be performed or corrected on those portions of the work that the Government intends to take possession of or use. However, failure of the Contracting Officer to list any item of work shall not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for complying with the terms of the contract. The Government's possession or use shall not be deemed an acceptance of any work under the contract.

(b) While the Government has such possession or use, the Contractor shall be relieved of the responsibility for the loss of or damage to the work resulting from the Government's possession or use, notwithstanding the terms of the clause in this contract entitled "Permits and Responsibilities." If prior possession or use by the Government delays the progress of the work or causes additional expense to the Contractor, an equitable adjustment shall be made in the contract price or the time of completion, and the contract shall be modified in writing accordingly.

(End of clause)

52.236-12 CLEANING UP (APR 1984)

The Contractor shall at all times keep the work area, including storage areas, free from accumulations of waste materials. Before completing the work, the Contractor shall remove from the work and premises any rubbish, tools, scaffolding, equipment, and materials that are not the property of the Government. Upon completing the work, the Contractor shall leave the work area in a clean, neat, and orderly condition satisfactory to the Contracting Officer.
(End of clause)

52.236-13 ACCIDENT PREVENTION (NOV 1991)

(a) The Contractor shall provide and maintain work environments and procedures which will

(1) safeguard the public and Government personnel, property, materials, supplies, and equipment exposed to Contractor operations and activities;

(2) avoid interruptions of Government operations and delays in project completion dates; and

(3) control costs in the performance of this contract.

(b) For these purposes on contracts for construction or dismantling, demolition, or removal of improvements, the Contractor shall-

(1) Provide appropriate safety barricades, signs, and signal lights;

(2) Comply with the standards issued by the Secretary of Labor at 29 CFR Part 1926 and 29 CFR Part 1910; and

(3) Ensure that any additional measures the Contracting Officer determines to be reasonably necessary for the purposes are taken.

(c) If this contract is for construction or dismantling, demolition or removal of improvements with any Department of Defense agency or component, the Contractor shall comply with all pertinent provisions of the latest version of U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Safety and Health Requirements Manual, EM 385-1-1, in effect on the date of the solicitation.

(d) Whenever the Contracting Officer becomes aware of any noncompliance with these requirements or any condition which poses a serious or imminent danger to the health or safety of the public or Government personnel, the Contracting Officer shall notify the Contractor orally, with written confirmation, and request immediate initiation of corrective action. This notice, when delivered to the Contractor or the Contractor's representative at the work site, shall be deemed sufficient notice of the noncompliance and that corrective action is required. After receiving the notice, the Contractor shall immediately take corrective action. If the Contractor fails or refuses to promptly take corrective action, the Contracting Officer may issue an order stopping all or part of the work until satisfactory corrective action has been taken. The Contractor shall not be entitled to any equitable adjustment of the contract price or extension of the performance schedule on any stop work order issued under this clause.

(3) The Contractor shall insert this clause, including this paragraph (e), with appropriate changes in the designation of the parties, in subcontracts.

(End of clause)

52.236-15 SCHEDULES FOR CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS (APR 1984)

(a) The Contractor shall, within five days after the work commences on the contract or another period of time determined by the Contracting Officer, prepare and submit to the Contracting Officer for approval three copies of a practicable schedule showing the order in which the Contractor proposes to perform the work, and the dates on which the Contractor contemplates starting and completing the several salient features of the work (including acquiring materials, plant, and equipment). The schedule shall be in the form of a progress chart of suitable scale to indicate appropriately the percentage of work scheduled for completion by any given date during the period. If the Contractor fails to submit a schedule within the time prescribed, the Contracting Officer may withhold approval of progress payments until the Contractor submits the required schedule.

(b) The Contractor shall enter the actual progress on the chart as directed by the Contracting Officer, and upon

doing so shall immediately deliver three copies of the annotated schedule to the Contracting Officer. If, in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, the Contractor falls behind the approved schedule, the Contractor shall take steps necessary to improve its progress, including those that may be required by the Contracting Officer, without additional cost to the Government. In this circumstance, the Contracting Officer may require the Contractor to increase the number of shifts, overtime operations, days of work, and/or the amount of construction plant, and to submit for approval any supplementary schedule or schedules in chart form as the Contracting Officer deems necessary to demonstrate how the approved rate of progress will be regained.

(c) Failure of the Contractor to comply with the requirements of the Contracting Officer under this clause shall be grounds for a determination by the Contracting Officer that the Contractor is not prosecuting the work with sufficient diligence to ensure completion within the time specified in the contract. Upon making this determination, the Contracting Officer may terminate the Contractor's right to proceed with the work, or any separable part of it, in accordance with the default terms of this contract.

(End of clause)

52.236-17 LAYOUT OF WORK (APR 1984)

The Contractor shall lay out its work from Government established base lines and bench marks indicated on the drawings, and shall be responsible for all measurements in connection with the layout. The Contractor shall furnish, at its own expense, all stakes, templates, platforms, equipment, tools, materials, and labor required to lay out any part of the work. The Contractor shall be responsible for executing the work to the lines and grades that may be established or indicated by the Contracting Officer. The Contractor shall also be responsible for maintaining and preserving all stakes and other marks established by the Contracting Officer until authorized to remove them. If such marks are destroyed by the Contractor or through its negligence before their removal is authorized, the Contracting Officer may replace them and deduct the expense of the replacement from any amounts due or to become due to the Contractor.

(End of clause)

52.236-21 SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS FOR CONSTRUCTION (FEB 1997)

(a) The Contractor shall keep on the work site a copy of the drawings and specifications and shall at all times give the Contracting Officer access thereto. Anything mentioned in the specifications and not shown on the drawings, or shown on the drawings and not mentioned in the specifications, shall be of like effect as if shown or mentioned in both. In case of difference between drawings and specifications, the specifications shall govern. In case of discrepancy in the figures, in the drawings, or in the specifications, the matter shall be promptly submitted to the Contracting Officer, who shall promptly make a determination in writing. Any adjustment by the Contractor without such a determination shall be at its own risk and expense. The Contracting Officer shall furnish from time to time such detailed drawings and other information as considered necessary, unless otherwise provided.

(b) Wherever in the specifications or upon the drawings the words "directed", "required", "ordered", "designated", "prescribed", or words of like import are used, it shall be understood that the "direction", "requirement", "order", "designation", or "prescription", of the Contracting Officer is intended and similarly the words "approved", "acceptable", "satisfactory", or words of like import shall mean "approved by," or "acceptable to", or "satisfactory to" the Contracting Officer, unless otherwise expressly stated.

(c) Where "as shown," as indicated", "as detailed", or words of similar import are used, it shall be understood that the reference is made to the drawings accompanying this contract unless stated otherwise. The word "provided" as used herein shall be understood to mean "provide complete in place," that is "furnished and installed".

(d) Shop drawings means drawings, submitted to the Government by the Contractor, subcontractor, or any lower tier subcontractor pursuant to a construction contract, showing in detail (1) the proposed fabrication and assembly of structural elements, and (2) the installation (i.e., fit, and attachment details) of materials or equipment. It includes drawings, diagrams, layouts, schematics, descriptive literature, illustrations, schedules, performance and test data, and similar materials furnished by the contractor to explain in detail specific portions of the work required by the contract. The Government may duplicate, use, and disclose in any manner and for any purpose shop drawings delivered under this contract.

(e) If this contract requires shop drawings, the Contractor shall coordinate all such drawings, and review them for accuracy, completeness, and compliance with contract requirements and shall indicate its approval thereon as evidence of such coordination and review. Shop drawings submitted to the Contracting Officer without evidence of the Contractor's approval may be returned for resubmission. The Contracting Officer will indicate an approval or disapproval of the shop drawings and if not approved as submitted shall indicate the Government's reasons therefor. Any work done before such approval shall be at the Contractor's risk. Approval by the Contracting Officer shall not relieve the Contractor from responsibility for any errors or omissions in such drawings, nor from responsibility for complying with the requirements of this contract, except with respect to variations described and approved in accordance with (f) below.

(f) If shop drawings show variations from the contract requirements, the Contractor shall describe such variations in writing, separate from the drawings, at the time of submission. If the Contracting Officer approves any such variation, the Contracting Officer shall issue an appropriate contract modification, except that, if the variation is minor or does not involve a change in price or in time of performance, a modification need not be issued.

(g) The Contractor shall submit to the Contracting Officer for approval four copies (unless otherwise indicated) of all shop drawings as called for under the various headings of these specifications. Three sets (unless otherwise indicated) of all shop drawings, will be retained by the Contracting Officer and one set will be returned to the Contractor.

(End of clause)

52.236-26 PRECONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE (FEB 1995)

If the Contracting Officer decides to conduct a preconstruction conference, the successful offeror will be notified and will be required to attend. The Contracting Officer's notification will include specific details regarding the date, time, and location of the conference, any need for attendance by subcontractors, and information regarding the items to be discussed.

(End of clause)

52.242-13 BANKRUPTCY (JUL 1995)

In the event the Contractor enters into proceedings relating to bankruptcy, whether voluntary or involuntary, the Contractor agrees to furnish, by certified mail or electronic commerce method authorized by the contract, written notification of the bankruptcy to the Contracting Officer responsible for administering the contract. This notification shall be furnished within five days of the initiation of the proceedings relating to bankruptcy filing. This notification shall include the date on which the bankruptcy petition was filed, the identity of the court in which the bankruptcy petition was filed, and a listing of Government contract numbers and contracting offices for all Government contracts against which final payment has not been made. This obligation remains in effect until final payment under this contract.

(End of clause)

52.242-14 SUSPENSION OF WORK (APR 1984)

(a) The Contracting Officer may order the Contractor, in writing, to suspend, delay, or interrupt all or any part of the work of this contract for the period of time that the Contracting Officer determines appropriate for the convenience of the Government.

(b) If the performance of all or any part of the work is, for an unreasonable period of time, suspended, delayed, or interrupted (1) by an act of the Contracting Officer in the administration of this contract, or (2) by the Contracting Officer's failure to act within the time specified in this contract (or within a reasonable time if not specified), an adjustment shall be made for any increase in the cost of performance of this contract (excluding profit) necessarily caused by the unreasonable suspension, delay, or interruption, and the contract modified in writing accordingly. However, no adjustment shall be made under this clause for any suspension, delay, or interruption to the extent that performance would have been so suspended, delayed, or interrupted by any other cause, including the fault or negligence of the Contractor, or for which an equitable adjustment is provided for or excluded under any other term or condition of this contract. (c) A claim under this clause shall not be allowed (1) for any costs incurred more than 20 days before the Contractor shall have notified the Contracting Officer in writing of the act or failure to act involved (but this requirement shall not apply as to a claim resulting from a suspension order), and (2) unless the claim, in an amount stated, is asserted in writing as soon as practicable after the termination of the suspension, delay, or interruption, but not later than the date of final payment under the contract.
(End of clause)

52.243-4 CHANGES (AUG 1987)

(a) The Contracting Officer may, at any time, without notice to the sureties, if any, by written order designated or indicated to be a change order, make changes in the work within the general scope of the contract, including changes--

(1) In the specifications (including drawings and designs);

(2) In the method or manner of performance of the work;

(3) In the Government-furnished facilities, equipment, materials, services, or site; or

(4) Directing acceleration in the performance of the work.

(b) Any other written or oral order (which, as used in this paragraph (b), includes direction, instruction, interpretation, or determination) from the Contracting Officer that causes a change shall be treated as a change order under this clause; provided, that the Contractor gives the Contracting Officer written notice stating

(1) the date, circumstances, and source of the order and

(2) that the Contractor regards the order as a change order.

(c) Except as provided in this clause, no order, statement, or conduct of the Contracting Officer shall be treated as a change under this clause or entitle the Contractor to an equitable adjustment.

(d) If any change under this clause causes an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or the time required for, the performance of any part of the work under this contract, whether or not changed by any such order, the

Contracting Officer shall make an equitable adjustment and modify the contract in writing. However, except for an adjustment based on defective specifications, no adjustment for any change under paragraph (b) of this clause shall be made for any costs incurred more than 20 days before the Contractor gives written notice as required. In the case of defective specifications for which the Government is responsible, the equitable adjustment shall include any increased cost reasonably incurred by the Contractor in attempting to comply with the defective specifications.

(e) The Contractor must assert its right to an adjustment under this clause within 30 days after

(1) receipt of a written change order under paragraph (a) of this clause or (2) the furnishing of a written notice under paragraph (b) of this clause, by submitting to the Contracting Officer a written statement describing the general nature and amount of the proposal, unless this period is extended by the Government. The statement of proposal for adjustment may be included in the notice under paragraph (b) above.

(f) No proposal by the Contractor for an equitable adjustment shall be allowed if asserted after final payment under this contract.

(End of clause)

52.244-6 SUBCONTRACTS FOR COMMERCIAL ITEMS (DEC 2004)

(a) Definitions.

"Commercial item", has the meaning contained in Federal Acquistion Regulation 2.101, Definitions.

"Subcontract", includes a transfer of commercial items between divisions, subsidiaries, or affiliates of the Contractor or subcontractor at any tier.

(b) To the maximum extent practicable, the Contractor shall incorporate, and require its subcontractors at all tiers to incorporate, commercial items or nondevelopmental items as components of items to be supplied under this contract.

(c) (1) The Contractor shall insert the following clauses in subcontracts for commercial items:

(i) 52.219-8, Utilization of Small Business Concerns (MAY 2004) (15 U.S.C. 637(d)(2) and (3)), in all subcontracts that offer further subcontracting opportunities. If the subcontract (except subcontracts to small business concerns) exceeds $500,000 ($1,000,000 for construction of any public facility), the subcontractor must include 52.219-8 in lower tier subcontracts that offer subcontracting opportunities.

(ii) 52.222-26, Equal Opportunity (Apr 2002) (E.O. 11246).

(iii) 52.222-35, Equal Opportunity for Special Disabled Veterans, Veterans of the Vietnam Era and Other Eligible Veterans (DEC 2001) (38 U.S.C. 4212(a)).

(iv) 52.222-36, Affirmative Action for Workers with Disabilities (JUN 1998) (29 U.S.C. 793).

(v) 52.222-39, Notification of Employee Rights Concerning Payment of Union Dues or Fees (DEC 2004) (E.O. 13201). Flow down as required in accordance with paragraph (g) of FAR clause 52.222-39).

(vi) 52.247-64, Preference for Privately Owned U.S.-Flag Commercial Vessels (APR 2003) (46 U.S.C. Appx 1241 and 10 U.S.C. 2631) (flow down required in accordance with paragraph (d) of FAR clause 52.247-64).

(2) While not required, the Contractor may flow down to subcontracts for commercial items a minimal number of additional clauses necessary to satisfy its contractual obligations.

(d) The Contractor shall include the terms of this clause, including this paragraph (d), in subcontracts awarded under this contract.

(End of clause)

52.245-2 GOVERNMENT PROPERTY (FIXED-PRICE CONTRACTS) (MAY 2004)

(a) Government-furnished property.

(1) Overseas contracts. If this contract is to be performed outside of the United States and its outlying areas, the words ``Government'' and ``Government-furnished'' (wherever they appear in this clause) shall be construed as ``United States Government'' and ``United States Government-furnished,'' respectively.

(2) The delivery or performance dates for this contract are based upon the expectation that Government-furnished property suitable for use (except for property furnished "as is") will be delivered to the Contractor at the times stated in the Schedule or, if not so stated, in sufficient time to enable the Contractor to meet the contract's delivery or performance dates.

(3) If Government-furnished property is received by the Contractor in a condition not suitable for the intended use, the Contractor shall, upon receipt of it, notify the Contracting Officer, detailing the facts, and, as directed by the Contracting Officer and at Government expense, either repair, modify, return, or otherwise dispose of the property. After completing the directed action and upon written request of the Contractor, the Contracting Officer shall make an equitable adjustment as provided in paragraph (h) of this clause.

(4) If Government-furnished property is not delivered to the Contractor by the required time, the Contracting Officer shall, upon the Contractor's timely written request, make a determination of the delay, if any, caused the Contractor and shall make an equitable adjustment in accordance with paragraph (h) of this clause.

(b) Changes in Government-furnished property. (1) The Contracting Officer may, by written notice, (i) decrease the Government-furnished property provided or to be provided under this contract, or (ii) substitute other Government-furnished property for the property to be provided by the Government, or to be acquired by the Contractor for the Government, under this contract. The Contractor shall promptly take such action as the Contracting Officer may direct regarding the removal, shipment, or disposal of the property covered by such notice.

(2) Upon the Contractor's written request, the Contracting Officer shall make an equitable adjustment to the contract in accordance with paragraph (h) of this clause, if the Government has agreed in the Schedule to make the property available for performing this contract and there is any--

(i) Decrease or substitution in this property pursuant to subparagraph (b)(1) of this clause; or

(ii) Withdrawal of authority to use this property, if provided under any other contract or lease.

(c) Title in Government property. (1) The Government shall retain title to all Government-furnished property.

(2) All Government-furnished property and all property acquired by the Contractor, title to which vests in the Government under this paragraph (collectively referred to as "Government property"), are subject to the provisions

of this clause. However, special tooling accountable to this contract is subject to the provisions of the Special Tooling clause and is not subject to the provisions of this clause. Title to Government property shall not be affected by its incorporation into or attachment to any property not owned by the Government, nor shall Government property become a fixture or lose its identity as personal property by being attached to any real property.

(3) Title to each item of facilities and special test equipment acquired by the Contractor for the Government under this contract shall pass to and vest in the Government when its use in performing this contract commences or when the Government has paid for it, whichever is earlier, whether or not title previously vested in the Government.

(4) If this contract contains a provision directing the Contractor to purchase material for which the Government will reimburse the Contractor as a direct item of cost under this contract--

(i) Title to material purchased from a vendor shall pass to and vest in the Government upon the vendor's delivery of such material; and

(ii) Title to all other material shall pass to and vest in the Government upon--

(A) Issuance of the material for use in contract performance;

(B) Commencement of processing of the material or its use in contract performance; or

(C) Reimbursement of the cost of the material by the Government, whichever occurs first.

(d) Use of Government property. The Government property shall be used only for performing this contract, unless otherwise provided in this contract or approved by the Contracting Officer.

(e) Property administration. (1) The Contractor shall be responsible and accountable for all Government property provided under this contract and shall comply with Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) Subpart 45.5, as in effect on the date of this contract.

(2) The Contractor shall establish and maintain a program for the use, maintenance, repair, protection, and preservation of Government property in accordance with sound industrial practice and the applicable provisions of Subpart 45.5 of the FAR.

(3) If damage occurs to Government property, the risk of which has been assumed by the Government under this contract, the Government shall replace the items or the Contractor shall make such repairs as the Government directs. However, if the Contractor cannot effect such repairs within the time required, the Contractor shall dispose of the property as directed by the Contracting Officer. When any property for which the Government is responsible is replaced or repaired, the Contracting Officer shall make an equitable adjustment in accordance with paragraph (h) of this clause.

(4) The Contractor represents that the contract price does not include any amount for repairs or replacement for which the Government is responsible. Repair or replacement of property for which the Contractor is responsible shall be accomplished by the Contractor at its own expense.

(f) Access. The Government and all its designees shall have access at all reasonable times to the premises in which any Government property is located for the purpose of inspecting the Government property.

(g) Risk of loss. Unless otherwise provided in this contract, the Contractor assumes the risk of, and shall be responsible for, any loss or destruction of, or damage to, Government property upon its delivery to the Contractor or upon passage of title to the Government under paragraph (c) of this clause. However, the Contractor is not responsible for reasonable wear and tear to Government property or for Government property properly consumed in performing this contract.

(h) Equitable adjustment. When this clause specifies an equitable adjustment, it shall be made to any affected contract provision in accordance with the procedures of the Changes clause. When appropriate, the Contracting Officer may initiate an equitable adjustment in favor of the Government. The right to an equitable adjustment shall be the Contractor's exclusive remedy. The Government shall not be liable to suit for breach of contract for--

(1) Any delay in delivery of Government-furnished property;

(2) Delivery of Government-furnished property in a condition not suitable for its intended use;

(3) A decrease in or substitution of Government-furnished property; or

(4) Failure to repair or replace Government property for which the Government is responsible.

(i) Government property disposal. Except as provided in paragraphs (i)(1)(i), (i)(2), and (i)(8)(i) of this clause, the Contractor shall not dispose of Government property until authorized to do so by the Plant Clearance Officer.

(1) Scrap (to which the Government has obtained title under paragraph (c) of this clause).--(i) Contractor with an approved scrap procedure.--(A) The Contractor may dispose of scrap resulting from production or testing under this contract without Government approval. However, if the scrap requires demilitarization or is sensitive property, the Contractor shall submit the scrap on an inventory disposal schedule.

(B) For scrap from other than production or testing the Contractor may prepare scrap lists in lieu of inventory disposal schedules (provided such lists are consistent with the approved scrap procedures), except that inventory disposal schedules shall be submitted for scrap aircraft or aircraft parts and scrap that--

(1) Requires demilitarization;

(2) Is a classified item;

(3) Is generated from classified items;

(4) Contains hazardous materials or hazardous wastes;

(5) Contains precious metals; or

(6) Is dangerous to the public health, safety, or welfare.

(ii) Contractor without an approved scrap procedure. The Contractor shall submit an inventory disposal schedule for all scrap.

(2) Pre-disposal requirements. When the Contractor determines that a property item acquired or produced by the Contractor, to which the Government has obtained title under paragraph (c) of this clause, is no longer needed for performance of this contract, the Contractor, in the following order of priority:

(i) May purchase the property at the **acquisition** cost.

(ii) Shall make reasonable efforts to return unused property to the appropriate supplier at fair market value (less, if applicable, a reasonable restocking fee that is consistent with the supplier's customary practices).

(iii) Shall list, on Standard Form 1428, Inventory Disposal Schedule, property that was not purchased under paragraph (i)(2)(i) of this clause, could not be returned to a supplier, or could not be used in the performance of other Government contracts.

(3) Inventory disposal schedules.--(i) The Contractor shall use Standard Form 1428, Inventory Disposal Schedule, to identify--

(A) Government-furnished property that is no longer required for performance of this contract, provided the terms of another Government contract do not require the Government to furnish that property for performance of that contract; and

(B) Property acquired or produced by the Contractor, to which the Government has obtained title under paragraph (c) of this clause, that is no longer required for performance of that contract.

(ii) The Contractor may annotate inventory disposal schedules to identify property the Contractor wishes to purchase from the Government.

(iii) Unless the Plant Clearance Officer has agreed otherwise, or the contract requires electronic submission of inventory disposal schedules, the Contractor shall prepare separate inventory disposal schedules for--

(A) Special test equipment with commercial components;

(B) Special test equipment without commercial components;

(C) Printing equipment;

(D) Computers, components thereof, peripheral equipment, and related equipment;

(E) Precious Metals;

(F) Nonnuclear hazardous materials or hazardous wastes; or

(G) Nuclear materials or nuclear wastes.

(iv) Property with the same description, condition code, and reporting location may be grouped in a single line item. The Contractor shall describe special test equipment in sufficient detail to permit an understanding of the special test equipment's intended use.

(4) Submission requirements. The Contractor shall submit inventory disposal schedules to the Plant Clearance Officer no later than--

(i) Thirty days following the Contractor's determination that a Government property item is no longer required for performance of the contract;

(ii) Sixty days, or such longer period as may be approved by the Plant Clearance Officer, following completion of contract deliveries or performance; or

(iii) One hundred twenty days, or such longer period as may be approved by the Plant Clearance Officer, following contract termination in whole or in part.

(5) Corrections. The Plant Clearance Officer may require the Contractor to correct an inventory disposal schedule or may reject a schedule if the property identified on the schedule is not accountable under this contract or is not in the quantity or condition indicated.

(6) Postsubmission adjustments. The Contractor shall provide the Plant Clearance Officer at least 10 working days advance written notice of its intent to remove a property item from an approved inventory disposal schedule. Unless the Plant Clearance Officer objects to the intended schedule adjustment within the notice period, the Contractor may make the adjustment upon expiration of the notice period.

(7) Storage.--

(i) The Contractor shall store the property identified on an inventory disposal schedule pending receipt of disposal instructions. The Government's failure to provide disposal instructions within 120 days following acceptance of an inventory disposal schedule might entitle the Contractor to an equitable adjustment for costs incurred to store such property on or after the 121st day.

(ii) The Contractor shall obtain the Plant Clearance Officer's approval to remove Government property from the premises at which the property is currently located prior to receipt of final disposition instructions. If approval is granted, any costs incurred by the Contractor to transport or store the property shall not increase the price or fee of any Government contract. The storage facility shall be appropriate for assuring the property's physical safety and suitability for use. Approval does not relieve the Contractor of any liability under this contract for such property.

(8) Disposition instructions.

(i) If the Government does not provide disposition instructions to the Contractor within 45 days following acceptance of a scrap list, the Contractor may dispose of the listed scrap in accordance with the Contractor's approved scrap procedures.

(ii) The Contractor shall prepare for shipment, deliver f.o.b. origin, or dispose of Government property as directed by the Plant Clearance Officer. The Contractor shall remove and destroy any markings identifying the property as Government property prior to disposing of the property.

(iii) The Contracting Officer may require the Contractor to demilitarize the property prior to shipment or disposal. Any equitable adjustment incident to the Contracting Officer's direction to demilitarize Government property shall be made in accordance with paragraph (h) of this clause.

(9) Disposal proceeds. The Contractor shall credit the net proceeds from the disposal of Government property to the price or cost of work covered by this contract or to the Government as the Contracting Officer directs.

(10) Subcontractor inventory disposal schedules. The Contractor shall require a subcontractor that is using property accountable under this contract at a subcontractor-managed site to submit inventory disposal schedules to the Contractor in sufficient time for the Contractor to comply with the requirements of paragraph (i)(4) of this clause.

(j) Abandonment of Government property.

(1) The Government will not abandon sensitive Government property without the Contractor's written consent.

(2) The Government, upon notice to the Contractor, may abandon any nonsensitive Government property in place at which time all obligations of the Government regarding such abandoned property shall cease.

(3) The Government has no obligation to restore or rehabilitate the Contractor's premises under any circumstances; however, if Government-furnished property is withdrawn or is unsuitable for the intended use, or if other Government property is substituted, then the equitable adjustment under paragraph (h) of this clause may properly include restoration or rehabilitation costs.

(k) Communications. All communications under this clause shall be in writing.

(l) Overseas contracts. If this contract is to be performed outside of the United States of America, its territories, or possessions, the words "Government" and "Government-furnished" (wherever they appear in this clause) shall be construed as "United States Government" and "United States Government-furnished," respectively.

(End of clause)

52.246-12 INSPECTION OF CONSTRUCTION (AUG 1996)

(a) Definition. "Work" includes, but is not limited to, materials, workmanship, and manufacture and fabrication of components.

(b) The Contractor shall maintain an adequate inspection system and perform such inspections as will ensure that the work performed under the contract conforms to contract requirements. The Contractor shall maintain complete inspection records and make them available to the Government. All work shall be conducted under the general direction of the Contracting Officer and is subject to Government inspection and test at all places and at all reasonable times before acceptance to ensure strict compliance with the terms of the contract.

(c) Government inspections and tests are for the sole benefit of the Government and do not--

(1) Relieve the Contractor of responsibility for providing adequate quality control measures;

(2) Relieve the Contractor of responsibility for damage to or loss of the material before acceptance;

(3) Constitute or imply acceptance; or

(4) Affect the continuing rights of the Government after acceptance of the completed work under paragraph (i) of this section.

(d) The presence or absence of a Government inspector does not relieve the Contractor from any contract requirement, nor is the inspector authorized to change any term or condition of the specification without the Contracting Officer's written authorization.

(e) The Contractor shall promptly furnish, at no increase in contract price, all facilities, labor, and material reasonably needed for performing such safe and convenient inspections and tests as may be required by the Contracting Officer. The Government may charge to the Contractor any additional cost of inspection or test when work is not ready at the time specified by the Contractor for inspection or test, or when prior rejection makes reinspection or retest necessary. The Government shall perform all inspections and tests in a manner that will not unnecessarily delay the work. Special, full size, and performance tests shall be performed as described in the contract.

(f) The Contractor shall, without charge, replace or correct work found by the Government not to conform to contract requirements, unless in the public interest the Government consents to accept the work with an appropriate adjustment in contract price. The Contractor shall promptly segregate and remove rejected material from the premises.

(g) If the Contractor does not promptly replace or correct rejected work, the Government may (1) by contract or otherwise, replace or correct the work and charge the cost to the Contractor or (2) terminate for default the Contractor's right to proceed.

(h) If, before acceptance of the entire work, the Government decides to examine already completed work by removing it or tearing it out, the Contractor, on request, shall promptly furnish all necessary facilities, labor, and material. If the work is found to be defective or nonconforming in any material respect due to the fault of the Contractor or its subcontractors, the Contractor shall defray the expenses of the examination and of satisfactory reconstruction. However, if the work is found to meet contract requirements, the Contracting Officer shall make an equitable adjustment for the additional services involved in the examination and reconstruction, including, if

completion of the work was thereby delayed, an extension of time.

(i) Unless otherwise specified in the contract, the Government shall accept, as promptly as practicable after completion and inspection, all work required by the contract or that portion of the work the Contracting Officer determines can be accepted separately. Acceptance shall be final and conclusive except for latent defects, fraud, gross mistakes amounting to fraud, or the Government's rights under any warranty or guarantee.

(End of clause)

52.246-21 WARRANTY OF CONSTRUCTION (MAR 1994)

(a) In addition to any other warranties in this contract, the Contractor warrants, except as provided in paragraph (i) of this clause, that work performed under this contract conforms to the contract requirements and is free of any defect in equipment, material, or design furnished, or workmanship performed by the Contractor or any subcontractor or supplier at any tier.

(b) This warranty shall continue for a period of 1 year from the date of final acceptance of the work. If the Government takes possession of any part of the work before final acceptance, this warranty shall continue for a period of 1 year from the date the Government takes possession.

(c) The Contractor shall remedy at the Contractor's expense any failure to conform, or any defect. In addition, the Contractor shall remedy at the Contractor's expense any damage to Government-owned or controlled real or personal property, when that damage is the result of--

(1) The Contractor's failure to conform to contract requirements; or

(2) Any defect of equipment, material, workmanship, or design furnished.

(d) The Contractor shall restore any work damaged in fulfilling the terms and conditions of this clause. The Contractor's warranty with respect to work repaired or replaced will run for 1 year from the date of repair or replacement.

(e) The Contracting Officer shall notify the Contractor, in writing, within a reasonable time after the discovery of any failure, defect, or damage.

(f) If the Contractor fails to remedy any failure, defect, or damage within a reasonable time after receipt of notice, the Government shall have the right to replace, repair, or otherwise remedy the failure, defect, or damage at the Contractor's expense.
(g) With respect to all warranties, express or implied, from subcontractors, manufacturers, or suppliers for work performed and materials furnished under this contract, the Contractor shall--

(1) Obtain all warranties that would be given in normal commercial practice;

(2) Require all warranties to be executed, in writing, for the benefit of the Government, if directed by the Contracting Officer; and

(3) Enforce all warranties for the benefit of the Government, if directed by the Contracting Officer.

(h) In the event the Contractor's warranty under paragraph (b) of this clause has expired, the Government may bring suit at its expense to enforce a subcontractor's, manufacturer's, or supplier's warranty.

(i) Unless a defect is caused by the negligence of the Contractor or subcontractor or supplier at any tier, the Contractor shall not be liable for the repair of any defects of material or design furnished by the Government nor for the repair of any damage that results from any defect in Government-furnished material or design.

(j) This warranty shall not limit the Government's rights under the Inspection and Acceptance clause of this contract with respect to latent defects, gross mistakes, or fraud.

(End of clause)

52.248-3 VALUE ENGINEERING--CONSTRUCTION (FEB 2000)

(a) General. The Contractor is encouraged to develop, prepare, and submit value engineering change proposals (VECP's) voluntarily. The Contractor shall share in any instant contract savings realized from accepted VECP's, in accordance with paragraph (f) below.

(b) Definitions. "Collateral costs," as used in this clause, means agency costs of operation, maintenance, logistic support, or Government-furnished property.

"Collateral savings," as used in this clause, means those measurable net reductions resulting from a VECP in the agency's overall projected collateral costs, exclusive of acquisition savings, whether or not the acquisition cost changes.

"Contractor's development and implementation costs," as used in this clause, means those costs the Contractor incurs on a VECP specifically in developing, testing, preparing, and submitting the VECP, as well as those costs the Contractor incurs to make the contractual changes required by Government acceptance of a VECP.

"Government costs," as used in this clause, means those agency costs that result directly from developing and implementing the VECP, such as any net increases in the cost of testing, operations, maintenance, and logistic support. The term does not include the normal administrative costs of processing the VECP.

"Instant contract savings," as used in this clause, means the estimated reduction in Contractor cost of performance resulting from acceptance of the VECP, minus allowable Contractor's development and implementation costs, including subcontractors' development and implementation costs (see paragraph (h) below).

"Value engineering change proposal (VECP)" means a proposal that--

(1) Requires a change to this, the instant contract, to implement; and

(2) Results in reducing the contract price or estimated cost without impairing essential functions or characteristics; provided, that it does not involve a change--

(i) In deliverable end item quantities only; or

(ii) To the contract type only.

(c) VECP preparation. As a minimum, the Contractor shall include in each VECP the information described in subparagraphs (1) through (7) below. If the proposed change is affected by contractually required configuration management or similar procedures, the instructions in those procedures relating to format, identification, and priority assignment shall govern VECP preparation. The VECP shall include the following:

(1) A description of the difference between the existing contract requirement and that proposed, the comparative advantages and disadvantages of each, a justification when an item's function or characteristics are being altered, and the effect of the change on the end item's performance.

(2) A list and analysis of the contract requirements that must be changed if the VECP is accepted, including any suggested specification revisions.

(3) A separate, detailed cost estimate for

(i) the affected portions of the existing contract requirement and

(ii) the VECP. The cost reduction associated with the VECP shall take into account the Contractor's allowable development and implementation costs, including any amount attributable to subcontracts under paragraph (h) below.

(4) A description and estimate of costs the Government may incur in implementing the VECP, such as test and evaluation and operating and support costs.

(5) A prediction of any effects the proposed change would have on collateral costs to the agency.

(6) A statement of the time by which a contract modification accepting the VECP must be issued in order to achieve the maximum cost reduction, noting any effect on the contract completion time or delivery schedule.

(7) Identification of any previous submissions of the VECP, including the dates submitted, the agencies and contract numbers involved, and previous Government actions, if known.

(d) Submission. The Contractor shall submit VECP's to the Resident Engineer at the worksite, with a copy to the Contracting Officer.

(e) Government action.

(1) The Contracting Officer will notify the Contractor of the status of the VECP within 45 calendar days after the contracting office receives it. If additional time is required, the Contracting Officer will notify the Contractor within the 45-day period and provide the reason for the delay and the expected date of the decision. The Government will process VECP's expeditiously; however, it shall not be liable for any delay in acting upon a VECP.

If the VECP is not accepted, the Contracting Officer will notify the Contractor in writing, explaining the reasons for rejection. The Contractor may withdraw any VECP, in whole or in part, at any time before it is accepted by the Government. The Contracting Officer may require that the Contractor provide written notification before undertaking significant expenditures for VECP effort.

Any VECP may be accepted, in whole or in part, by the Contracting Officer's award of a modification to this contract citing this clause. The Contracting Officer may accept the VECP, even though an agreement on price reduction has not been reached, by issuing the Contractor a notice to proceed with the change. Until a notice to proceed is issued or a contract modification applies a VECP to this contract, the Contractor shall perform in accordance with the existing contract. The decision to accept or reject all or part of any VECP is a unilateral decision made solely at the discretion of the Contracting Officer.

(f) Sharing.

(1) Rates. The Government's share of savings is determined by subtracting Government costs from instant contract savings and multiplying the result by

(i) 45 percent for fixed-price contracts or

(ii) 75 percent for cost-reimbursement contracts.

(2) Payment. Payment of any share due the Contractor for use of a VECP on this contract shall be authorized by a modification to this contract to--

(i) Accept the VECP;

(ii) Reduce the contract price or estimated cost by the amount of instant contract savings; and

(iii) Provide the Contractor's share of savings by adding the amount calculated to the contract price or fee.

(g) Collateral savings. If a VECP is accepted, the Contracting Officer will increase the instant contract amount by 20 percent of any projected collateral savings determined to be realized in a typical year of use after subtracting any Government costs not previously offset. However, the Contractor's share of collateral savings will not exceed the contract's firm-fixed-price or estimated cost, at the time the VECP is accepted, or $100,000, whichever is greater. The Contracting Officer is the sole determiner of the amount of collateral savings.

(h) Subcontracts. The Contractor shall include an appropriate value engineering clause in any subcontract of $50,000 or more and may include one in subcontracts of lesser value. In computing any adjustment in this contract's price under paragraph (f) above, the Contractor's allowable development and implementation costs shall include any subcontractor's allowable development and implementation costs clearly resulting from a VECP accepted by the Government under this contract, but shall exclude any value engineering incentive payments to a subcontractor. The Contractor may choose any arrangement for subcontractor value engineering incentive payments; provided, that these payments shall not reduce the Government's share of the savings resulting from the VECP.

(i) Data. The Contractor may restrict the Government's right to use any part of a VECP or the supporting data by marking the following legend on the affected parts:

"These data, furnished under the Value Engineering-- Construction clause of contract . . . . . , shall not be disclosed outside the Government or duplicated, used, or disclosed, in whole or in part, for any purpose other than to evaluate a value engineering change proposal submitted under the clause. This restriction does not limit the Government's right to use information contained in these data if it has been obtained or is otherwise available from the Contractor or from another source without limitations." If a VECP is accepted, the Contractor hereby grants the Government unlimited rights in the VECP and supporting data, except that, with respect to data qualifying and submitted as limited rights technical data, the Government shall have the rights specified in the contract modification implementing the VECP and shall appropriately mark the data. (The terms "unlimited rights" and "limited rights" are defined in Part 27 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation.)

(End of clause)

52.249-2 TERMINATION FOR CONVENIENCE OF THE GOVERNMENT (FIXED-PRICE) (MAY 2004)

(a) The Government may terminate performance of work under this contract in whole or, from time to time, in part if the Contracting Officer determines that a termination is in the Government's interest. The Contracting Officer shall terminate by delivering to the Contractor a Notice of Termination specifying the extent of termination and the effective date.

(b) After receipt of a Notice of Termination, and except as directed by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall immediately proceed with the following obligations, regardless of any delay in determining or adjusting any amounts due under this clause:

(1) Stop work as specified in the notice.

(2) Place no further subcontracts or orders (referred to as subcontracts in this clause) for materials, services, or facilities, except as necessary to complete the continued portion of the contract.

(3) Terminate all subcontracts to the extent they relate to the work terminated.

(4) Assign to the Government, as directed by the Contracting Officer, all right, title, and interest of the Contractor under the subcontracts terminated, in which case the Government shall have the right to settle or to pay any termination settlement proposal arising out of those terminations.

(5) With approval or ratification to the extent required by the Contracting Officer, settle all outstanding liabilities and termination settlement proposals arising from the termination of subcontracts; the approval or ratification will be final for purposes of this clause.

(6) As directed by the Contracting Officer, transfer title and deliver to the Government (i) the fabricated or unfabricated parts, work in process, completed work, supplies, and other material produced or acquired for the work terminated, and (ii) the completed or partially completed plans, drawings, information, and other property that, if the contract had been completed, would be required to be furnished to the Government.

(7) Complete performance of the work not terminated.

(8) Take any action that may be necessary, or that the Contracting Officer may direct, for the protection and preservation of the property related to this contract that is in the possession of the Contractor and in which the Government has or may acquire an interest.

(9) Use its best efforts to sell, as directed or authorized by the Contracting Officer, any property of the types referred to in subparagraph (b)(6) of this clause; provided, however, that the Contractor (i) is not required to extend credit to any purchaser and (ii) may acquire the property under the conditions prescribed by, and at prices approved by, the Contracting Officer. The proceeds of any transfer or disposition will be applied to reduce any payments to be made by the Government under this contract, credited to the price or cost of the work, or paid in any other manner directed by the Contracting Officer.

(c) The Contractor shall submit complete termination inventory schedules no later than 120 days from the effective date of termination, unless extended in writing by the Contracting Officer upon written request of the Contractor within this 120-day period.

(d) After expiration of the plant clearance period as defined in Subpart 49.001 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation, the Contractor may submit to the Contracting Officer a list, certified as to quantity and quality, of termination inventory not previously disposed of, excluding items authorized for disposition by the Contracting Officer. The Contractor may request the Government to remove those items or enter into an agreement for their storage. Within 15 days, the Government will accept title to those items and remove them or enter into a storage agreement. The Contracting Officer may verify the list upon removal of the items, or if stored, within 45 days from submission of the list, and shall correct the list, as necessary, before final settlement.

(e) After termination, the Contractor shall submit a final termination settlement proposal to the Contracting Officer in the form and with the certification prescribed by the Contracting Officer. The Contractor shall submit the proposal promptly, but no later than 1 year from the effective date of termination, unless extended in writing by the Contracting Officer upon written request of the Contractor within this 1-year period. However, if the Contracting Officer determines that the facts justify it, a termination settlement proposal may be received and acted on after 1 year or any extension. If the Contractor fails to submit the proposal within the time allowed, the Contracting Officer may determine, on the basis of information available, the amount, if any, due the Contractor because of the termination and shall pay the amount determined.

(f) Subject to paragraph (e) of this clause, the Contractor and the Contracting Officer may agree upon the whole or any part of the amount to be paid or remaining to be paid because of the termination. The amount may include a reasonable allowance for profit on work done. However, the agreed amount, whether under this paragraph (g) or paragraph (g) of this clause, exclusive of costs shown in subparagraph (g)(3) of this clause, may not exceed the total contract price as reduced by (1) the amount of payments previously made and (2) the contract price of work not terminated. The contract shall be modified, and the Contractor paid the agreed amount. Paragraph (g) of this clause shall not limit, restrict, or affect the amount that may be agreed upon to be paid under this paragraph.

(g) If the Contractor and the Contracting Officer fail to agree on the whole amount to be paid because of the termination of work, the Contracting Officer shall pay the Contractor the amounts determined by the Contracting Officer as follows, but without duplication of any amounts agreed on under paragraph (f) of this clause:

(1) The contract price for completed supplies or services accepted by the Government (or sold or acquired under subparagraph (b)(9) of this clause) not previously paid for, adjusted for any saving of freight and other charges.

(2) The total of--

(i) The costs incurred in the performance of the work terminated, including initial costs and preparatory expense allocable thereto, but excluding any costs attributable to supplies or services paid or to be paid under subparagraph (f)(1) of this clause;

(ii) The cost of settling and paying termination settlement proposals under terminated subcontracts that are properly chargeable to the terminated portion of the contract if not included in subdivision (g)(2)(i) of this clause; and

(iii) A sum, as profit on subdivision (g)(2)(i) of this clause, determined by the Contracting Officer under 49.202 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation, in effect on the date of this contract, to be fair and reasonable; however, if it appears that the Contractor would have sustained a loss on the entire contract had it been completed, the Contracting Officer shall allow no profit under this subdivision (iii) and shall reduce the settlement to reflect the indicated rate of loss.

(3) The reasonable costs of settlement of the work terminated, including--

(i) Accounting, legal, clerical, and other expenses reasonably necessary for the preparation of termination settlement proposals and supporting data;

(ii) The termination and settlement of subcontracts (excluding the amounts of such settlements); and

(iii) Storage, transportation, and other costs incurred, reasonably necessary for the preservation, protection, or disposition of the termination inventory.

(h) Except for normal spoilage, and except to the extent that the Government expressly assumed the risk of loss, the Contracting Officer shall exclude from the amounts payable to the Contractor under paragraph (g) of this clause, the fair value, as determined by the Contracting Officer, of property that is destroyed, lost, stolen, or damaged so as to become undeliverable to the Government or to a buyer.

(i) The cost principles and procedures of Part 31 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation, in effect on the date of this contract, shall govern all costs claimed, agreed to, or determined under this clause.

(j) The Contractor shall have the right of appeal, under the Disputes clause, from any determination made by the Contracting Officer under paragraph (e), (g), or (l) of this clause, except that if the Contractor failed to submit the termination settlement proposal or request for equitable adjustment within the time provided in paragraph (e) or (l), respectively, and failed to request a time extension, there is no right of appeal.

(k) In arriving at the amount due the Contractor under this clause, there shall be deducted--

(1) All unliquidated advance or other payments to the Contractor under the terminated portion of this contract;

(2) Any claim which the Government has against the Contractor under this contract; and

(3) The agreed price for, or the proceeds of sale of, materials, supplies, or other things acquired by the Contractor or sold under the provisions of this clause and not recovered by or credited to the Government.

(l) If the termination is partial, the Contractor may file a proposal with the Contracting Officer for an equitable adjustment of the price(s) of the continued portion of the contract. The Contracting Officer shall make any equitable adjustment agreed upon. Any proposal by the Contractor for an equitable adjustment under this clause shall be requested within 90 days from the effective date of termination unless extended in writing by the Contracting Officer.

(m)(1) The Government may, under the terms and conditions it prescribes, make partial payments and payments against costs incurred by the Contractor for the terminated portion of the contract, if the Contracting Officer believes the total of these payments will not exceed the amount to which the Contractor will be entitled.

(2) If the total payments exceed the amount finally determined to be due, the Contractor shall repay the excess to the Government upon demand, together with interest computed at the rate established by the Secretary of the Treasury under 50 U.S.C. App. 1215(b)(2). Interest shall be computed for the period from the date the excess payment is received by the Contractor to the date the excess is repaid. Interest shall not be charged on any excess payment due to a reduction in the Contractor's termination settlement proposal because of retention or other disposition of termination inventory until 10 days after the date of the retention or disposition, or a later date determined by the Contracting Officer because of the circumstances.

(n) Unless otherwise provided in this contract or by statute, the Contractor shall maintain all records and documents relating to the terminated portion of this contract for 3 years after final settlement. This includes all books and other evidence bearing on the Contractor's costs and expenses under this contract. The Contractor shall make these records and documents available to the Government, at the Contractor's office, at all reasonable times, without any direct charge. If approved by the Contracting Officer, photographs, microphotographs, or other authentic reproductions may be maintained instead of original records and documents.

(End of clause)

52.249-10 DEFAULT (FIXED-PRICE CONSTRUCTION) (APR 1984)

(a) If the Contractor refuses or fails to prosecute the work or any separable part, with the diligence that will insure its completion within the time specified in this contract including any extension, or fails to complete the work within this time, the Government may, by written notice to the Contractor, terminate the right to proceed with the work (or the separable part of the work) that has been delayed. In this event, the Government may take over the work and complete it by contract or otherwise, and may take possession of and use any materials, appliances, and plant on the work site necessary for completing the work. The Contractor and its sureties shall be liable for any damage to the Government resulting from the Contractor's refusal or failure to complete the work within the specified time, whether or not the Contractor's right to proceed with the work is terminated. This liability includes any increased costs incurred by the Government in completing the work.

(b) The Contractor's right to proceed shall not be terminated nor the Contractor charged with damages under this clause, if--

(1) The delay in completing the work arises from unforeseeable causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor. Examples of such causes include

(i) acts of God or of the public enemy,

(ii) acts of the Government in either its sovereign or contractual capacity,

(iii) acts of another Contractor in the performance of a contract with the Government,

(iv) fires,

(v) floods,

(vi) epidemics,

(vii) quarantine restrictions,

(viii) strikes,

(ix) freight embargoes,

(x) unusually severe weather, or delays of subcontractors or suppliers at any tier arising from unforeseeable causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of both the Contractor and the subcontractors or suppliers; and

(2) The Contractor, within 10 days from the beginning of any delay (unless extended by the Contracting Officer), notifies the Contracting Officer in writing of the causes of delay. The Contracting Officer shall ascertain the facts and the extent of delay. If, in the judgment of the Contracting Officer, the findings of fact warrant such action, the time for completing the work shall be extended. The findings of the Contracting Officer shall be final and conclusive on the parties, but subject to appeal under the Disputes clause.

(c) If, after termination of the Contractor's right to proceed, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, or that the delay was excusable, the rights and obligations of the parties will be the same as if the termination had been issued for the convenience of the Government.

The rights and remedies of the Government in this clause are in addition to any other rights and remedies provided by law or under this contract.

(End of clause)

52.252-4 ALTERATIONS IN CONTRACT (APR 1984)

Portions of this contract are altered as follows:

(End of clause)

52.253-1 COMPUTER GENERATED FORMS (JAN 1991)

(a) Any data required to be submitted on a Standard or Optional Form prescribed by the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) may be submitted on a computer generated version of the form, provided there is no change to the name, content, or sequence of the data elements on the form, and provided the form carries the Standard or Optional Form number and edition date.

(b) Unless prohibited by agency regulations, any data required to be submitted on an agency unique form prescribed by an agency supplement to the FAR may be submitted on a computer generated version of the form provided there is no change to the name, content, or sequence of the data elements on the form and provided the form carries the agency form number and edition date.

(4) If the Contractor submits a computer generated version of a form that is different than the required form, then the rights and obligations of the parties will be determined based on the content of the required form.

(End of clause)

252.203-7001 PROHIBITION ON PERSONS CONVICTED OF FRAUD OR OTHER DEFENSE-CONTRACT-RELATED FELONIES (DEC 2004)

(a) Definitions. As used in this clause—

(1) "Arising out of a contract with the DoD" means any act in connection with—

(i) Attempting to obtain;

(ii) Obtaining, or

(iii) Performing a contract or first-tier subcontract of any agency, department, or component of the Department of Defense (DoD).

(2) "Conviction of fraud or any other felony" means any conviction for fraud or a felony in violation of state or Federal criminal statutes, whether entered on a verdict or plea, including a plea of nolo contendere, for which sentence has been imposed.

(3) "Date of conviction" means the date judgment was entered against the individual.

(b) Any individual who is convicted after September 29, 1988, of fraud or any other felony arising out of a contract with the DoD is prohibited from serving--

(1) In a management or supervisory capacity on this contract;

(2) On the board of directors of the Contractor;

(3) As a consultant, agent, or representative for the Contractor; or

(4) In any other capacity with the authority to influence, advise, or control the decisions of the Contractor with regard to this contract.

(c) Unless waived, the prohibition in paragraph (b) of this clause applies for not less than 5 years from the date of conviction.

(d) 10 U.S.C. 2408 provides that the Contractor shall be subject to a criminal penalty of not more than $500,000 if convicted of knowingly--

(1) Employing a person under a prohibition specified in paragraph (b) of this clause; or

(2) Allowing such a person to serve on the board of directors of the contractor or first-tier subcontractor.

(e) In addition to the criminal penalties contained in 10 U.S.C. 2408, the Government may consider other available remedies, such as—

(1) Suspension or debarment;

(2) Cancellation of the contract at no cost to the Government; or

(3) Termination of the contract for default.

(f) The Contractor may submit written requests for waiver of the prohibition in paragraph (b) of this clause to the Contracting Officer. Requests shall clearly identify—

(1) The person involved;

(2) The nature of the conviction and resultant sentence or punishment imposed;

(3) The reasons for the requested waiver; and

(4) An explanation of why a waiver is in the interest of national security.

(g) The Contractor agrees to include the substance of this clause, appropriately modified to reflect the identity and relationship of the parties, in all first-tier subcontracts exceeding the simplified acquisition threshold in Part 2 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation, except those for commercial items or components.

(h) Pursuant to 10 U.S.C. 2408(c), defense contractors and subcontractors may obtain information as to whether a particular person has been convicted of fraud or any other felony arising out of a contract with the DoD by contacting The Office of Justice Programs, The Denial of Federal Benefits Office, U.S. Department of Justice, telephone (301) 809-4904.

(End of clause)

252.205-7000 PROVISION OF INFORMATION TO COOPERATIVE AGREEMENT HOLDERS (DEC 1991)

(a) Definition.

"Cooperative agreement holder" means a State or local government; a private, nonprofit organization; a tribal organization (as defined in section 4(c) of the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act (Pub. L. 93-268; 25 U.S.C. 450 (c))); or an economic enterprise (as defined in section 3(e) of the Indian Financing Act of 1974 (Pub. L. 93-362; 25 U.S.C. 1452(e))) whether such economic enterprise is organized for profit or nonprofit purposes; which has an agreement with the Defense Logistics Agency to furnish procurement technical assistance to business entities.

(b) The Contractor shall provide cooperative agreement holders, upon their request, with a list of those appropriate employees or offices responsible for entering into subcontracts under defense contracts. The list shall include the business address, telephone number, and area of responsibility of each employee or office.

(c) The Contractor need not provide the listing to a particular cooperative agreement holder more frequently than once a year.

(End of clause)

252.215-7000 PRICING ADJUSTMENTS (DEC 1991)

The term "pricing adjustment," as used in paragraph (a) of the clauses entitled "Price Reduction for Defective Cost or Pricing Data - Modifications," "Subcontractor Cost or Pricing Data," and "Subcontractor Cost or Pricing Data - Modifications," means the aggregate increases and/or decreases in cost plus applicable profits.

(End of clause)

252.219-7003 SMALL, SMALL DISADVANTAGED AND WOMEN-OWNED SMALL BUSINESS SUBCONTRACTING PLAN (DOD CONTRACTS) (APR. 1996)

This clause supplements the Federal Acquisition Regulation 52.219-9, Small, Small Disadvantaged and Women-Owned Small Business Subcontracting Plan, clause of this contract.

(a) *Definitions. Historically black colleges and universities,* as used in this clause, means institutions determined by the Secretary of Education to meet the requirements of 34 CFR 608.2. The term also means any nonprofit research institution that was an integral part of such a college or university before November 14, 1986.

Minority institutions, as used in this clause, means institutions meeting the requirements of section 1046(3) of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1135d-5(3)). The term also includes Hispanic-serving institutions as defined in section 316(b)(1) of such Act (20 U.S.C. 1059c(b)(1)).

(b) Except for company or division-wide commercial items subcontracting plans, the term *small disadvantaged business,* when used in the FAR 52.219-9 clause, includes historically black colleges and universities and minority institutions, in addition to small disadvantaged business concerns.

(c) Work under the contract or its subcontracts shall be credited toward meeting the small disadvantaged business concern goal required by paragraph (d) of the FAR 52.219-9 clause when:

(1) It is performed on Indian lands or in joint venture with an Indian tribe or a tribally-owned corporation, and

(2) It meets the requirements of 10 U.S.C. 2323a.

(d) Subcontracts awarded to workshops approved by the Committee for Purchase from People Who are Blind or Severely Disabled (41 U.S.C. 46-48), may be counted toward the Contractor's small business subcontracting goal.

(e) A mentor firm, under the Pilot Mentor-Protege Program established under Section 831 of Pub. L. 101-510, as amended, may count toward its small disadvantaged business goal, subcontracts awarded--

(f) The master plan approval referred to in paragraph (f) of the FAR 52.219-9 clause is approval by the Contractor's cognizant contract administration activity.

(g) In those subcontracting plans which specifically identify small, small disadvantaged, and women-owned small businesses, the Contractor shall notify the Administrative Contracting Officer of any substitutions of firms that are not small, small disadvantaged, or women-owned small businesses for the firms listed in the subcontracting plan. Notifications shall be in writing and shall occur within a reasonable period of time after award of the subcontract. Contractor-specified formats shall be acceptable.

(End of clause)

252.223-7001 HAZARD WARNING LABELS (DEC 1991)

(a) "Hazardous material," as used in this clause, is defined in the Hazardous Material Identification and Material Safety Data clause of this contract.

(b) The Contractor shall label the item package (unit container) of any hazardous material to be delivered under this contract in accordance with the Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200 et seq). The Standard requires that the hazard warning label conform to the requirements of the standard unless the material is otherwise subject to the labeling requirements of one of the following statutes:

(1) Federal Insecticide, Fungicide and Rodenticide Act;

(2) Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetics Act;

(3) Consumer Product Safety Act;

(4) Federal Hazardous Substances Act; or

(5) Federal Alcohol Administration Act.

(c) The Offeror shall list which hazardous material listed in the Hazardous Material Identification and Material Safety Data clause of this contract will be labeled in accordance with one of the Acts in paragraphs (b)(1) through (5) of this clause instead of the Hazard Communication Standard. Any hazardous material not listed will be interpreted to mean that a label is required in accordance with the Hazard Communication Standard.

MATERIAL (If None, Insert "None.")	ACT
_____	_____
_____	_____

(d) The apparently successful Offeror agrees to submit, before award, a copy of the hazard warning label for all hazardous materials not listed in paragraph (c) of this clause. The Offeror shall submit the label with the Material Safety Data Sheet being furnished under the Hazardous Material Identification and Material Safety Data clause of this contract.

(e) The Contractor shall also comply with MIL-STD-129, Marking for Shipment and Storage (including revisions adopted during the term of this contract).

(End of clause)

252.223-7004 DRUG-FREE WORK FORCE (SEP 1988)

(a) Definitions.

(1) "Employee in a sensitive position," as used in this clause, means an employee who has been granted access to classified information; or employees in other positions that the Contractor determines involve national security; health or safety, or functions other than the foregoing requiring a high degree of trust and confidence.

(2) "Illegal drugs," as used in this clause, means controlled substances included in Schedules I and II, as defined by section 802(6) of title 21 of the United States Code, the possession of which is unlawful under chapter 13 of that

Title. The term "illegal drugs" does not mean the use of a controlled substance pursuant to a valid prescription or other uses authorized by law.

(b) The Contractor agrees to institute and maintain a program for achieving the objective of a drug-free work force. While this clause defines criteria for such a program, contractors are encouraged to implement alternative approaches comparable to the criteria in paragraph (c) that are designed to achieve the objectives of this clause.

(c) Contractor programs shall include the following, or appropriate alternatives:

(1) Employee assistance programs emphasizing high level direction, education, counseling, rehabilitation, and coordination with available community resources;

(2) Supervisory training to assist in identifying and addressing illegal drug use by Contractor employees;

(3) Provision for self-referrals as well as supervisory referrals to treatment with maximum respect for individual confidentiality consistent with safety and security issues;

(4) Provision for identifying illegal drug users, including testing on a controlled and carefully monitored basis. Employee drug testing programs shall be established taking account of the following:

(i) The Contractor shall establish a program that provides for testing for the use of illegal drugs by employees in sensitive positions. The extent of and criteria for such testing shall be determined by the Contractor based on considerations that include the nature of the work being performed under the contract, the employee's duties, and efficient use of Contractor resources, and the risks to health, safety, or national security that could result from the failure of an employee adequately to discharge his or her position.

(ii) In addition, the Contractor may establish a program for employee drug testing--

(A) When there is a reasonable suspicion that an employee uses illegal drugs; or

(B) When an employees has been involved in an accident or unsafe practice;

(C) As part of or as a follow-up to counseling or rehabilitation for illegal drug use;

(D) As part of a voluntary employee drug testing program.

(iii) The Contractor may establish a program to test applicants for employment for illegal drug use.

(iv) For the purpose of administering this clause, testing for illegal drugs may be limited to those substances for which testing is prescribed by section 2..1 of subpart B of the "Mandatory Guidelines for Federal Workplace Drug Testing Programs" (53 FR 11980 (April 11, 1988), issued by the Department of Health and Human Services.

(d) Contractors shall adopt appropriate personnel procedures to deal with employees who are found to be using drugs illegally. Contractors shall not allow any employee to remain on duty or perform in a sensitive position who is found to use illegal drugs until such times as the Contractor, in accordance with procedures established by the Contractor, determines that the employee may perform in such a position.

(e) The provisions of this clause pertaining to drug testing program shall not apply to the extent that are inconsistent with state or local law, or with an existing collective bargaining agreement; provided that with respect to the latter, the Contractor agrees those issues that are in conflict will be a subject of negotiation at the next collective bargaining session.

(End of clause)

252.223-7006 PROHIBITION ON STORAGE AND DISPOSAL OF TOXIC AND HAZARDOUS MATERIALS (APR 1993)

(a) "Definitions".

As used in this clause --

(1) "Storage" means a non-transitory, semi-permanent or permanent holding, placement, or leaving of material. It does not include a temporary accumulation of a limited quantity of a material used in or a waste generated or resulting from authorized activities, such as servicing, maintenance, or repair of Department of Defense (DoD) items, equipment, or facilities.

(2) "Toxic or hazardous materials" means:

(i) Materials referred to in section 101(14) of the Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act (CERCLA) of 1980 (42 U.S.C. 9601(14)) and materials designated under section 102 of CERCLA (42 U.S.C. 9602) (40 CFR part 302);

(ii) Materials that are of an explosive, flammable, or pyrotechnic nature; or

(iii) Materials otherwise identified by the Secretary of Defense as specified in DoD regulations.

(b) In accordance with 10 U.S.C. 2692, the Contractor is prohibited from storing or disposing of non-DoD-owned toxic or hazardous materials on a DoD installation, except to the extent authorized by a statutory exception to 10 U.S.C. 2692 or as authorized by the Secretary of Defense or his designee.

(End of clause)

252.227-7033 RIGHTS IN SHOP DRAWINGS (APR 1966)

(a) Shop drawings for construction means drawings, submitted to the Government by the Construction Contractor, subcontractor or any lower-tier subcontractor pursuant to a construction contract, showing in detail (i) the proposed fabrication and assembly of structural elements and (ii) the installation (i.e., form, fit, and attachment details) of materials or equipment. The Government may duplicate, use, and disclose in any manner and for any purpose shop drawings delivered under this contract.

(b) This clause, including this paragraph (b), shall be included in all subcontracts hereunder at any tier.

252.231-7000 SUPPLEMENTAL COST PRINCIPLES (DEC 1991)

When the allowability of costs under this contract is determined in accordance with part 31 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR), allowability shall also be determined in accordance with part 231 of the Defense FAR Supplement, in effect on the date of this contract.

(End of clause)

252.236-7000 MODIFICATION PROPOSALS - PRICE BREAKDOWN. (DEC 1991)

(a) The Contractor shall furnish a price breakdown, itemized as required and within the time specified by the Contracting Officer, with any proposal for a contract modification.

(b) The price breakdown --

(1) Must include sufficient detail to permit an analysis of profit, and of all costs for --

(i) Material;

(ii) Labor;

(iii) Equipment;

(iv) Subcontracts; and

(v) Overhead; and

(2) Must cover all work involved in the modification, whether the work was deleted, added, or changed.

(c) The Contractor shall provide similar price breakdowns to support any amounts claimed for subcontracts.

(d) The Contractor's proposal shall include a justification for any time extension proposed.

252.236-7002 OBSTRUCTION OF NAVIGABLE WATERWAYS. (DEC 1991)

(a) The Contractor shall --

(1) Promptly recover and remove any material, plant, machinery, or appliance which the contractor loses, dumps, throws overboard, sinks, or misplaces, and which, in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, may be dangerous to or obstruct navigation;

(2) Give immediate notice, with description and locations of any such obstructions, to the Contracting Officer; and

(3) When required by the Contracting Officer, mark or buoy such obstructions until the same are removed.

(b) The Contracting Officer may --

(1) Remove the obstructions by contract or otherwise should the Contractor refuse, neglect, or delay compliance with paragraph (a) of this clause; and

(2) Deduct the cost of removal from any monies due or to become due to the Contractor; or

(3) Recover the cost of removal under the Contractor's bond.

(c) The Contractor's liability for the removal of a vessel wrecked or sunk without fault or negligence is limited to that provided in sections 15, 19, and 20 of the River and Harbor Act of March 3, 1899 (33 U.S.C. 410 et. seq.).

252.242-7000 POSTAWARD CONFERENCE (DEC 1991)

The Contractor agrees to attend any postaward conference convened by the contracting activity or contract administration office in accordance with Federal Acquisition Regulation subpart 42.5.

(End of clause)

252.243-7001 PRICING OF CONTRACT MODIFICATIONS (DEC 1991)

When costs are a factor in any price adjustment under this contract, the contract cost principles and procedures in FAR part 31 and DFARS part 231, in effect on the date of this contract, apply.

252.243-7002 REQUESTS FOR EQUITABLE ADJUSTMENT (MAR 1998)

(a) The amount of any request for equitable adjustment to contract terms shall accurately reflect the contract adjustment for which the Contractor believes the Government is liable. The request shall include only costs for performing the change, and shall not include any costs that already have been reimbursed or that have been separately claimed. All indirect costs included in the request shall be properly allocable to the change in accordance with applicable acquisition regulations.

(b) In accordance with 10 U.S.C. 2410(a), any request for equitable adjustment to contract terms that exceeds the simplified acquisition threshold shall bear, at the time of submission, the following certificate executed by an individual authorized to certify the request on behalf of the Contractor:

I certify that the request is made in good faith, and that the supporting data are accurate and complete to the best of my knowledge and belief.

(Official's Name)

(Title)

(c) The certification in paragraph (b) of this clause requires full disclosure of all relevant facts, including--

(1) Cost or pricing data if required in accordance with subsection 15.403-4 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR); and

(2) Information other than cost or pricing data, in accordance with subsection 15.403-3 of the FAR, including actual cost data and data to support any estimated costs, even if cost or pricing data are not required.

(d) The certification requirement in paragraph (b) of this clause does not apply to----

(1) Requests for routine contract payments; for example, requests for payment for accepted supplies and services, routine vouchers under a cost-reimbursement type contract, or progress payment invoices; or

(2) Final adjustment under an incentive provision of the contract.

CLAUSES INCORPORATED BY FULL TEXT

52.211-10 COMMENCEMENT, PROSECUTION, AND COMPLETION OF WORK (APR 1984)

The Contractor shall be required to (a) commence work under this contract within 15 calendar days after the date the Contractor receives the notice to proceed, (b) prosecute the work diligently, and (c) complete the entire work ready for use not later than 100 calendar days . * The time stated for completion shall include final cleanup of the premises.

*The Contracting Officer shall specify either a number of days after the date the contractor receives the notice to proceed, or a calendar date.
(End of clause)

Should the total quantity of material to be paid for and actually removed under this contract exceed the quantity from the Bidding Schedule, additional time will be allowed at the rate of one day for each 12,000 cubic yards in excess of the estimated quantity.

52.211-11 LIQUIDATED DAMAGES--SUPPLIES, SERVICES, OR RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT (SEP 2000)

(a) If the Contractor fails to deliver the supplies or perform the services within the time specified in this contract, the Contractor shall, in place of actual damages, pay to the Government liquidated damages of $400.00 per calendar day of delay.

(b) If the Government terminates this contract in whole or in part under the Default--Fixed-Price Supply and Service clause, the Contractor is liable for liquidated damages accruing until the Government reasonably obtains delivery or performance of similar supplies or services. These liquidated damages are in addition to excess costs of repurchase under the Termination clause.

(c) The Contractor will not be charged with liquidated damages when the delay in delivery or performance is beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor as defined in the Default--Fixed-Price Supply and Service clause in this contract.

(End of clause)

52.236-1 PERFORMANCE OF WORK BY THE CONTRACTOR (APR 1984)

The Contractor shall perform on the site, and with its own organization, work equivalent to at least twenty (20) percent of the total amount of work to be performed under the contract. This percentage may be reduced by a supplemental agreement to this contract if, during performing the work, the Contractor requests a reduction and the Contracting Officer determines that the reduction would be to the advantage of the Government.

(End of clause)

52.236-14 AVAILABILITY AND USE OF UTILITY SERVICES (APR 1984)

(a) The Government shall make all reasonably required amounts of utilities available to the Contractor from existing outlets and supplies, as specified in the contract. Unless otherwise provided in the contract, the amount of each utility service consumed shall be charged to or paid for by the Contractor at prevailing rates charged to the Government or, where the utility is produced by the Government, at reasonable rates determined by the Contracting Officer. The Contractor shall carefully conserve any utilities furnished without charge.

(b) The Contractor, at its expense and in a workmanlike manner satisfactory to the Contracting Officer, shall install and maintain all necessary temporary connections and distribution lines, and all meters required to measure the amount of each utility used for the purpose of determining charges. Before final acceptance of the work by the Government, the Contractor shall remove all the temporary connections, distribution lines, meters, and associated paraphernalia.

(End of clause)

252.201-7000 CONTRACTING OFFICER'S REPRESENTATIVE (DEC 1991)

(a) "Definition. Contracting officer's representative" means an individual designated in accordance with subsection 201.602-2 of the Defense Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement and authorized in writing by the contracting officer to perform specific technical or administrative functions.

(b) If the Contracting Officer designates a contracting officer's representative (COR), the Contractor will receive a copy of the written designation. It will specify the extent of the COR's authority to act on behalf of the contracting officer. The COR is not authorized to make any commitments or changes that will affect price, quality, quantity, delivery, or any other term or condition of the contract.

(End of clause)

252.236-7001 CONTRACT DRAWINGS, MAPS, AND SPECIFICATIONS (AUG 2000)

(a) The Government will provide to the Contractor, without charge, one set of contract drawings and specifications, except publications incorporated into the technical provisions by reference, in electronic or paper media as chosen by the Contracting Officer.

(b) The Contractor shall--

(1) Check all drawings furnished immediately upon receipt;

(2) Compare all drawings and verify the figures before laying out the work;

(3) Promptly notify the Contracting Officer of any discrepancies;

(4) Be responsible for any errors that might have been avoided by complying with this paragraph (b); and

(5) Reproduce and print contract drawings and specifications as needed.

(c) In general--

(1) Large-scale drawings shall govern small-scale drawings; and

(2) The Contractor shall follow figures marked on drawings in preference to scale measurements.

(d) Omissions from the drawings or specifications or the misdescription of details of work that are manifestly necessary to carry out the intent of the drawings and specifications, or that are customarily performed, shall not relieve the Contractor from performing such omitted or misdescribed details of the work. The Contractor shall perform such details as if fully and correctly set forth and described in the drawings and specifications.

(e) The work shall conform to the specifications and the contract drawings identified on the following index of drawings:

Title	File	Drawing No.

(End of clause)

252.236-7004 PAYMENT FOR MOBILIZATION AND DEMOBILIZATION (DEC 1991)

(a) The Government will pay all costs for the mobilization and demobilization of all of the Contractor's plant and equipment at the contract lump sum price for this item.

(1) Sixty (60) percent of the lump sum price upon completion of the contractor's mobilization at the work site.

(2) The remaining forty (40) percent upon completion of demobilization.

(b) The Contracting Officer may require the Contractor to furnish cost data to justify this portion of the bid if the Contracting Officer believes that the percentages in paragraphs (a) (1) and (2) of this clause do not bear a reasonable relation to the cost of the work in this contract.

(1) Failure to justify such price to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer will result in payment, as determined by the Contracting Officer, of --

(i) Actual mobilization costs at completion of mobilization;

(ii) Actual demobilization costs at completion of demobilization; and

(iii) The remainder of this item in the final payment under this contract.

(2) The Contracting Officer's determination of the actual costs in paragraph (b)(1) of this clause is not subject to appeal.

E4LC11 DEPARTMENT OF LABOR WAGE DECISION (CONSTRUCTION)

Any contract awarded as a result of this solicitation will be subject to the U.S. Department of Labor Wage Decision(s) provided following Section 00800, identified as

E4LC12 REQUIRED INSURANCE

The contractor shall procure and maintain during the entire period of performance under this contract, the following minimum insurance:

TYPE	AMOUNT
Workers Compensation	As required by State law
Employer's Liability	$100,000 per person
General Liability	$500,000 per occurrence
Motor Vehicle Liability (for each motor vehicle):	
Bodily injury or death	$200,000 per person $500,000 per occurrence
Property damage	$20,000 per occurrence

Prior to commencement of work hereunder, the contractor shall furnish to the Contracting Officer a certificate or written statement of the above required insurance. The policies evidencing required insurance shall contain an endorsement to the effect that cancellation or any material change in the policies adversely affecting the interests of the Government in such insurance shall not be effective for such period as may be prescribed by the laws of the State in which this contract is to be performed and in no event less than 30 days after written notice thereof to the Contracting Officer.

E4LC13 PERFORMANCE OF WORK BY CONTRACTOR

Offeror's attention is directed to FAR 52.236-1, "Performance of Work by Contractor." Contractor is required to furnish a description of the work which will be performed by his own organization, (e.g., earthwork, paving, etc.), the percentage of the total work this represents, and the estimated cost thereof. Such description of work to be performed by the contractor's own organization shall be provided to the Contracting Officer within 10 days of contract award.

E4LC 14 PERFORMANCE EVALUATION OF CONTRACTOR

As a minimum, the Contractor's performance will be evaluated upon final acceptance of the work. However, interim evaluations may be prepared at any time during contract performance when determined to be in the best interest of the Government. The format for the evaluation will be DD Form 2626, and the Contractor will be rated either "Outstanding," "Satisfactory," or "Unsatisfactory" in the areas of Contractor Quality Control, Timely Performance, Effectiveness of Management, Compliance with Labor Standards, and Compliance with Safety Standards. The Contractor will be advised on any unsatisfactory rating, either in an individual element or in the overall rating, prior to completing the evaluation; all contractor comments will be made a part of the official record. In compliance with DOD FAR Supplement 236.201, Performance Evaluation Reports will be available to all DOD Contracting Offices for their future use in determining contractor responsibility.

E4LC15 LOCATION OF SITE ON A GOVERNMENT RESERVATION

The site of the work is on a government reservation and all rules and regulations issued by the Commanding Officer covering general safety, security, and sanitary requirements, etc., shall be observed by the contractor.

E4LC16 ACCIDENT PREVENTION PLAN

In accordance with the clause entitled "Accident Prevention," the contractor will not be allowed to commence work on the job site until an acceptable accident prevention plan has been submitted. The contractor will receive official notification of the acceptance of his accident prevention plan.

E4LC28 IDENTIFICATION OF CORRESPONDENCE

All correspondence and data submitted by the contractor under this contract shall reference the contract number.

NEW WORK DREDGING
ATLANTIC OCEAN CHANNEL
NORFOLK HARBOR, VIRGINIA

PREPARED AND
ISSUED BY
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
NORFOLK DISTRICT, CORPS OF ENGINEERS
OPERATIONS BRANCH
WATERFIELD BUILDING
803 FRONT STREET
NORFOLK, VIRGINIA 23510-1096

PROJECT TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS
01006 POST AWARD MEETINGS
01055 SOIL BORING DATA
01056 TIDAL ZONING
01150 SPECIAL WORK REQUIREMENTS
01270 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT
01320 PROJECT SCHEDULE
01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
- STANDARD FORM 4025 (TRANSMITTAL FORM SAMPLE)
- STANDARD FORM 4288 (SUBMITTAL REGISTER SAMPLE)
01350 SPECIAL EQUIPMENT AND PROCEDURE REQUIREMENTS FOR PROTECTION OF ENDANGERED SPECIES
- NATIONAL MARINE FISHERIES SERVICE INCIDENTAL TAKE STATEMENT/ BIOLOGICAL OPINION
01355 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
01420 SOURCES FOR REFERENCE PUBLICATIONS
01451 CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL
- SAMPLE FORMS FOR:
PREPARATORY AND INITIAL PHASE INSPECTIONS
CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL REPORTS
REPORT OF OPERATIONS - DREDGES
01525 SAFETY AND OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH REQUIREMENTS
01850 DRAWING INDEX

DIVISION 02 - SITE CONSTRUCTION

02325 DREDGING

DIVISION 03 - Not Used

DIVISION 04 - Not Used

DIVISION 05 - Not Used

DIVISION 06 - Not Used

DIVISION 07 - Not Used

DIVISION 08 - Not Used

DIVISION 09 - Not Used

DIVISION 10 - Not Used

DIVISION 11 - Not Used

DIVISION 12 - Not Used

DIVISION 13 - Not Used

DIVISION 14 - Not Used

DIVISION 15 - Not Used

DIVISION 16 - Not Used

-- End of Project Table of Contents --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 01006

POST AWARD MEETINGS

07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTALS (NOT APPLICABLE)
1.2 PRECONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE
1.2.1 Scheduling
1.2.2 Purpose
1.2.3 Discussion Items
1.3 OTHER MEETINGS DURING THE CONTRACT
1.4 MINUTES OF MEETINGS

PART 2 PRODUCTS (THIS PART NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION (THIS PART NOT USED)

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 01006

POST AWARD MEETINGS
07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTALS (NOT APPLICABLE)

1.2 PRECONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE

1.2.1 Scheduling

After award of the construction contract and prior to the start of any construction work, the Contracting Officer (CO) will schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference. The Contractor's Project Manager, Superintendent and Quality Control System Manager shall attend this meeting. The Contractor is encouraged to have an officer of his company (Project Manager could be this person) and representation from each of his sub-contractors and major construction work divisions at the conference. This conference will be held at a location and time as specified by the CO.

1.2.2 Purpose

The purpose of this preconstruction conference is to enable the CO to outline the procedures that will be followed by the Government in its administration of this construction contract and to discuss the performance that will be expected from the Contractor. This conference will allow the Contractor an opportunity to ask questions about the Government's supervision and inspection of contract work, about security requirements, regulations, and other similar matters. The CO may invite other Government personnel involved in the work to attend this conference.

1.2.3 Discussion Items

The following is a sample list of items for discussion during the preconstruction conference; however, the Contracting Officer may modify this list or include additional items for discussion as conditions and the work require.

a. Authority of the Contracting Officer/Contracting Officer's Representative.

b. Contractor's Progress Schedule.

c. Correspondence Procedures.

d. Contractor Labor Standards Provisions.

e. Contract Modifications and Administrative Procedures.

f. Contractor's Administrative, Laydown and Storage Areas.

g. Procedures for Processing Submittals.

h. Payment Estimate Data and Procedures.

i. Contractor Utilities.

j. Security Requirements and Other Regulations, if applicable.

k. Government Furnished Equipment, if applicable.

l. Disposition of Salvage Property, if applicable.

m. Contractor Insurance Requirements.

n. Environmental Protection Plan.

o. Contractor Performance Evaluation.

p. Emergency and Safety Procedures.

q. Plant and Suitability to Perform the Work.

r. Turnover of Placement Areas After Dredging.

s. Contractor Required Notification Procedures.

t. Contractor's Submittal Register.

u. Contractor's Survey and Information Reporting Procedures.

1.3 OTHER MEETINGS DURING THE CONTRACT

Other meetings may be held after the Preconstruction Conference, for the purpose to discuss concerns and deficiencies that may include the following:

a. Contractor's Site Safety and Health Plan.

b. Quality Control Plan.

c. Environmental Protection Plan.

d. Progress Schedule updates.

1.4 MINUTES OF MEETINGS

The Government will prepare minutes of all meetings.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (THIS PART NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION (THIS PART NOT USED)

-- End of Section --

[GUIDE SPECIFICATION]
SECTION 01055
SOIL BORING DATA
[25 AUGUST 93]

1. GENERAL: The following pages are copies of boring logs representing the subsurface investigation at the site.

2. BORING LOCATIONS: Boring locations are shown on the drawings.

3. CHARACTER OF MATERIALS: This data is included for information only. Each log is believed to show the nature of the materials encountered at that specific location and to the depth on the log.

4. BORING NOTES:

4.1 Borings [xxDH-1 through x] were performed in accordance with ASTM D-1586, Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils [in overburden, and ASTM D-2113, Diamond Core Drilling for Site Investigation in rock.].

[4.1 Borings [xxHA-1 through x] were hand auger using a 2 in.(50 mm) Art bit.] [Estimated consistencies are based on an equivalent Field penetration test developed by the Norfolk District and described below:

Trust Effort	Estimated Blows	Consistency
1/4"(6mm) or less	11+	Dense,Stiff
1/4"(6mm) to 1/2"(13mm)	10	Medium
1/2"(13mm)to 3/4"(19mm)	9	Loose/Medium
3/4"(19mm)to 1"(25mm)	8	Loose/Medium
1"(25mm)to 1 1/2"(38mm)	7	Loose/Medium
1 1/2"(38mm)to 2"(51mm)	6	Loose/Medium
2"(51mm)to 3"(76mm)	5	Loose/Soft
3"(76mm)to 5"(127mm)	4	Soft
T4	3	Very Soft
T2	2	Very Soft]

4.2 The Standard Penetration Test (SPT) indicates depth of a sample and number of blows required to drive a 2 in. (50 mm) O.D. split spoon sampler 6 in. (150 mm), unless otherwise noted, into undisturbed soil with a 140 lb.(0.625 kN) hammer falling 30 inches (0.75 meters). The standard penetration "N" value is the sum of the [last two 6-inch drives, i.e., 6,4,5; N=9 [.] [or] [middle two 6-inch drives, i.e., 6, 4, 5, 3; N=9.]

4.3 Soils (ML, CL, GP, etc.) are classified in accordance with ASTM D-2487, Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes. Soils are described in accordance with Burmister's Method of Material Proportions as presented below.[Rock is classified in accordance with a geologist intrepretation and described in accordance with EM 1110-1-1804, Geotechnical Investigations.]

Descriptive or Qualifying Terms	Range of Proportions

"Sandy", "Gravelly", etc. or the term "and"	35% to 50%
"some"	20% to 35%
"little"	10% to 20%
"trace"	1% to 10%

[4.4 Soils consistencies are estimated and are based on the following tables.

Relative Density of Gravels/Sands According to Results of SPT

No. of Blows N	Relative Density
0-4	Very Loose
4-10	Loose
10-30	Medium
30-50	Dense
Over 50	Very Dense

Consistency of Clays/Silts, According to Results of SPT

No. of Blows N	Consistency
0-2	Very Soft
2-4	Soft
4-8	Medium
8-15	Stiff
15-30	Very Stiff
Over 30	Hard]

[4.5 Borings in rock were advanced using a [NWM] diamond core bit. The Rock Quality Designation (RQD) is the percentage ratio between the total length of core recovered and the length of core drilled on a given run. The ratio is determined by considering only pieces of core that are at least 4 in. long and are hard and sound. Breaks caused by drilling are ignored.The relation of RQD and in situ rock quality is provided below.

RQD %_	Rock Quality
90-100	Excellent
75-90	Good
50-75	Fair
25-50	Poor
0-25	Very Poor]

[4.1 Borings [xxCPT-1 through x] were performed in accordance with ASTM D-3441, Deep, Quasi-Static, Cone and Friction-Cone Penetration Tests of Soil.

4.2 Penetration was advanced using a standard electronic cone with a [60] degree apex angle and a diameter of [35.7] mm (10 cm^2 cross-sectional area).

4.3 Soils are classified in accordance with "Guidelines for Geotechnical Design using the Cone Penetration Test and CPT with Pore Pressure Measurement" by Robertson and Campanella, Hogentogler & Company, Inc., 4th Ed., Nov 1989.]

4.4 All elevation and locations are approximate.

4.5 Dates shown on logs are completion dates.

4.6 Samples are stored at the Norfolk District, Corps of Engineers and are available for inspection.

4.7 Abbreviations:

WOR = Water on Rod - the water level when it is first encountered during drilling.

WOC = Water on Completion - the water level in an uncased hole, unless otherwise noted, at completion.

W @ 24 hrs. = Water at 24 hours - the water level in an uncased hole, unless otherwise noted, 24 hours after completion.

NFWOC = No Free Water on Completion.

ang - angular (angle) x
bd - bedded (bedding) -
bld - boulders -
blk - black
blu - blue -
BOH - Bottom of Hole
bot - bottom
brk - broken x
brn - brown
calc - calcareous -
cav - cavity (cavern) -
CI - cave in
cly - clayey
cob - cobble x
const - consistency x
CPT - Cone Penetration Test
CPTU - CPT w/ pore pressure measurments
crs, c - coarse
dia - diameter
dk - dark
dns - dense
e - void ratio x
Eq-Dr - Equivalent Relative Density -
ev - evident -
fn, f - fine
frac - fracture (d) x
frag - fragments (fragmented)
Fs - Friction Sleeve Stress
G - specific gravity -
gra - grain (ed) -
grn - green -
gry - gray
gvy - gravelly
hi - high (ly)
horiz - horizon -
HP - high plasticity
hrd - hard -
hrs - hours
incl - included, included
intbd - interbedded -
jt - joint (s) -
lam - laminated -
len - lense -
lit - little
LL - liquid limit
LOI - loss on ignition
LP - low plasticity
lse - loose

lt - light
med,m - medium
mica - micaceous -
mod - moderate (ly)
moist - moisture
mot - mottled
MP - medium plasticity
mrb - marble -
mst - moist
NP - nonplastic
num - numerous
occ - occasional
OD - outside diameter
odr - odor
org - organic
PCFD-pound per cubic ft, dry
PCFW-pound per cubic ft, wet
PHI - Friction Angle -
PI - Plastic Index
Piez - Piezometer -
PL - Plastic Limit
plast - plastic, plasticity
pln - plane -
Qc - End Bearing Stress -
Rf - Friction Ratio -
rd - red -
rnd - rounded x
sam - sample -
sat - saturated
sbr - subrounded
sdy - sandy
sft - soft -
sh - shaley -
SIGV - not identified ?

SLP - slight plasticity ?
slt - slight (ly)
sly - silty
som - some -
SSS - Split Spoon Sampler
st - stain (ed) x
sta - station x
SPT - Standard Penetration Test
str - stringers -
Su - Undrained Shear Strength
SYM - symbol -
t - thin x
th - thick
tr - trace
TV - Torvane x
UND - undisturbed sample x
v - very
v.f. - very fine
vert - vertical
VS - vane shear x
w - moisture content
w.l. - water level
w/ - with
wd - weathered x
wht - white
WOH - weight of hammer
WOR - weight of rod -
xbd - cross bedded (ing) x
xln - crystalline x
yel - yellow
%200 - Minus No. 200 Sieve x
& - and

SECTION 01056

TIDAL ZONING
04/03

U. S. Army Corps of Engineers
Norfolk District
803 Front Street
Norfolk, Virginia 23510

THIMBLE SHOAL/ATLANTIC OCEAN
2003/04/22

Gauges based on data obtained from gauge station at C.B.B.T.

Station Range	Time	Ratio	Zone
630+71.13 – 675+00	36	.94	SCB19
675+00 – 709+00	24	.92	SCB18
709+00 – 802+00	24	.96	SCB17
802+00 – 912+00	18	.96	SCB16
912+00 – 1093+00	6	1.00	SCB15
1093+00 – 1200+00	-6	1.02	SCB9
1200+00 – 1229+00	-12	1.06	SCB8
1229+00 – 1327+00	-12	1.12	SCB7
1327+00 – 1411+00	-12	1.19	SCB1
1411+00 – 1501+00	-18	1.27	MAC604
1501+00 – 1542+00	-30	1.29	MAC605
Dam Neck Placement Site	-30	1.35	MAC606

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 01150

SPECIAL WORK REQUIREMENTS

07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTALS
1.2 CONTRACTOR'S NOTIFICATIONS
1.2.1 Dredging Intent Notification to the U.S. Coast Guard
1.3 REFERENCES
1.4 CONTRACTOR WORK REQUIREMENTS
1.4.1 Acceptance Sections
1.4.2 Special Requirements at Dam Neck Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site
1.4.3 Security and Public Safety of Work Areas
1.4.4 Noise Control and Abatement
1.4.5 Coordination with Other Contractors
1.4.6 Before Dredging Surveys
1.4.7 Final Examination and Acceptance
1.5 PHYSICAL DATA
1.5.1 Physical Conditions Information
1.5.1.1 Additional Information for Local Physical Conditions
1.5.2 Obstruction of Channel
1.5.3 Responsibility
1.5.4 Condition of Dredging Area
1.5.5 Channel Traffic
1.5.6 Oyster Grounds
1.6 PUMPING OF BILGES
1.7 FUEL OIL TRANSFER OPERATIONS
1.8 LAYOUT OF WORK AND SURVEYS
1.8.1 General
1.8.1.1 Dredge Electronic Survey and Positioning Systems
1.8.2 Datum and Bench Marks
1.9 TIDE LEVEL MEASUREMENT AND PREDICTION
1.9.1 Responsibility for Tide Measurements
1.9.2 Tidal Reference Station
1.9.3 Tidal Reference Station Malfunctions
1.10 INSPECTION
1.10.1 General Inspection Requirements
1.11 SHOALING
1.11.1 Shoaling Prior to Dredging
1.11.2 Shoaling Subsequent to Dredging
1.12 SIGNAL LIGHTS
1.13 EQUIPMENT OWNERSHIP AND OPERATING EXPENSE SCHEDULE
1.13.1 Costs
1.13.2 Rentals
1.13.3 Data
1.14 BRIDGE-TO-BRIDGE RADIO COMMUNICATION
1.14.1 Radio
1.15 SPECIAL COAST GUARD REQUIREMENTS

1.15.1 Local Notice To Mariners
1.15.2 Relocation of Navigation Aids
1.15.3 Use of Coast Guard Navigation Aid Structures
1.16 ENVIRONMENTAL LITIGATION
1.16.1 Litigation
1.17 HISTORICAL AND ARCHAEOLOGICAL FINDS
1.18 PROFIT
1.18.1 Weighted Guidelines
1.18.2 Values
1.18.2.1 Degree of Risk
1.18.2.2 Relative Difficulty of Work
1.18.2.3 Size of Job
1.18.2.4 Periods of Performance
1.18.2.5 Contractor's Investment
1.18.2.6 Assistance by Government
1.18.2.7 Subcontracting
1.19 PARTNERING
1.20 SUBCONTRACTS AND WORK COORDINATION
1.21 ACCOMMODATIONS ABOARD DREDGE FOR CONSTRUCTION REPRESENTATIVES
1.21.1 Accommodations
1.21.2 Costs
1.22 CONTINUITY OF WORK
1.23 CERF IMPLEMENTATION
1.24 SEAGOING BARGE ACT

PART 2 PRODUCTS (THIS PART NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION (THIS PART NOT USED)

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 01150

SPECIAL WORK REQUIREMENTS
07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall make submittals for the following listed reports and certificates as required by the specifications. The Contracting Officer may request submittals in addition to those specified when deemed necessary to adequately describe the work. Units of weights and measures used on all submittals shall be the same as those used in the contract drawings. Each submittal shall be complete and in sufficient detail to allow ready determination of compliance with contract requirements. Prior to submittal, all items shall be checked and approved by the Contractor's Quality Control (CQC) representative and each item shall be stamped, signed, and dated by the CQC representative indicating action taken in accordance with SECTION 01451. Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. The following shall be submitted in accordance with SECTION 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction and Postconstruction Submittals

* Dredging Intent Notifications to U.S. Coast Guard

Prior to commencement of dredging, submit a copy of Dredging Intent Notifications to U.S. Coast Guard and at the same time to the Contracting Officer.

* Designated Acceptance Section Plan; G

The Contractor's Plan for completing the scheduled work in suitable sections for timely acceptance by the Government.

* Acceptance Section Survey Reports

Contractor request for Acceptance Section Survey Reports that will constitute before dredging surveys.

* Advance Notice for Dredging

Contractor advance notice for dredging will constitute his request for Before Dredging Surveys.

* After Dredging Survey Requests

Contractor after dredging survey requests will constitute his request for After Dredging Surveys.

1.2 CONTRACTOR'S NOTIFICATIONS

1.2.1 Dredging Intent Notification to the U.S. Coast Guard

The Contractor shall notify the Commander, Fifth Coast Guard District of

his intended operations to dredge and request that it be published in the Local Notice to Mariners. This Dredging Intent Notification to U.S. Coast Guard must be given in sufficient time so that it appears in the Notice to Mariners at least 5 workdays prior to the commencement of this contract.

1.3 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

COAST GUARD, DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

CFR PART 156.120	OIL AND HAZARDOUS MATERIAL TRANSFER OPERATIONS - Requirements for Transfer

ENGINEERING MANUALS, U.S. ARMY

EM 1110-2-1003	(2002) Hydrographic Surveying Manual; Change 1 2004

1.4 CONTRACTOR WORK REQUIREMENTS

The work consists of dredging the Atlantic Ocean Channel to a depth of 53 feet MLLW (NOS) with 1 foot of allowable overdepth. The Contractor will encounter shoaling in areas previously dredged and new work material in other portions of the dredging area; however, for the purpose of bidding and payment, all material to be removed will be considered new work dredging. Sub-surface soil investigations of the Channel to determine the character of material have been made and results are included in SECTION 01055. Locations of the respective sub-surface investigation borings are indicated on the drawings. The Contractor shall perform the scheduled work with a hopper dredge and place the dredged material in the Government furnished Dam Neck Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site, Cell 1, as indicated and specified. The Contractor is advised the Government has consulted with the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) regarding the effects of dredging on threatened and endangered species in the dredging area for this contract. To protect these species, the NMFS has issued a Biological Opinion and Incidental Take Statement that is included in SECTION 01350. The contract plans and specifications have been prepared to comply with this Biological Opinion and Incidental Take Statement that was established during the planning and development of this project. Any non-compliance with or violation of the work conditions to be provided in accordance with the Biological Opinion and Incidental Take Statementnoted herein may result in criminal and civil penalties against the Contractor.

1.4.1 Acceptance Sections

Prior to the Contractor's submission of a request for a before dredging survey and any dredging, the Contractor shall submit as a part of his Progress Schedule a Designated Acceptance Section Plan. This Plan shall designate the order and timeliness to complete suitable acceptance sections for the type and number of plant to be used in the dredging work and shall be submitted to the Contracting Officer in accordance with SECTION 01451 for review and approval. Contractor designated acceptance sections shall be for contiguous areas, the full width of the channel, identified by station numbers, and shall not exceed four acceptance sections for the entire

dredging area. The Contractor shall accomplish the complete dredging of each Contractor designated acceptance section in accordance with the approved Designated Acceptance Section Plan and the paragraph entitled "CONTINUITY OF WORK" of this SECTION.

1.4.2 Special Requirements at Dam Neck Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site

All activities at Dam Neck Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site shall be conducted in accordance with the requirements of SECTION 01355 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION. The material excavated from the Atlantic Ocean Channel shall be transported and deposited within the sub-area Cell 1. The Contractor shall assure the dredged material is uniformly deposited within the sub-area in a manner such that the deposited material does not form mounds above a depth of 35-feet below mean lower low water.

1.4.3 Security and Public Safety of Work Areas

The dredging area and Dam Neck Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site are accessible to the general boating public; however, the Contractor is informed the Government will not undertake to exclude the public or restrict public access to the dredging or disposal site during the work. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for protection of the public at all times for the duration of the contract and fully comply with the provisions of OSHA safe working practices and the Safety and Accident Prevention requirements of these specifications. Upon receipt of his Notice to Proceed, the Contractor shall request the U.S. Coast Guard to provide lighted special-purpose, disposal site marker buoys in the scheduled work areas at Dam Neck Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site. The Contractor is informed the Coast Guard is under no obligation to honor this request and failure of the U.S. Coast Guard to provide and maintain such marker buoys shall have no bearing on the Contractor's responsibility to properly locate them at his own expense and use the disposal site as indicated. Unless directed otherwise, the Contractor may perform the scheduled dredging work 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. All lighting associated with the project shall be limited to the immediate area of active construction only. Such lighting shall be shielded, low-pressure sodium vapor lights directed to the maximum extent practical away from populated areas where applicable and to avoid excessive illumination of the water.

1.4.4 Noise Control and Abatement

The Contractor shall employ the use of properly installed and maintained mufflers, silencers, and manufacturer's recommended sound suppressors on all plant, machinery, and equipment used on this work. The use of sound signals such as whistles, horns, or bells shall not be used if two-way radio communication can accomplish the required function.

1.4.5 Coordination with Other Contractors

During the period of this contract, other contracts may be in force for the construction of other features of work on or adjacent to the site of work being accomplished under this contract. The Contractor shall arrange his plant, and shall schedule and perform this work, so as to effectively cooperate with all other contractors and Government agencies. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor on this contract to be fully informed of the extent of the limits of work to be performed by other contractors. Should there be any conflict between these limits, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Contracting Officer of the conflict, and the Contracting Officer's decision shall be final.

1.4.6 Before Dredging Surveys

For the purpose of requesting Before Dredging Surveys, the Contractor shall give the Contracting Officer a written Advance Notice for Dredging at least 14 calendar days prior to arrival of the dredge plant at the first work area, and shall furnish written notice at least 14 calendar days in advance of need for subsequent before dredging surveys. It is understood that the surveys made in response to the initial Advance Notice for Dredging by the Contractor will constitute the before dredging survey and that any subsequent surveys occasioned through Contractor delays will be charged against the Contractor at a rate of $5,000 per day. The Contracting Officer will not be responsible for any delays in the commencement of work caused by incomplete surveys if the Contractor fails to provide adequate advance written notice as specified.

1.4.7 Final Examination and Acceptance

As soon as practicable after the completion of the entire work or any portion of the work which in the opinion of the Contracting Officer will not be subject to damage by further operations under the contract, such work will be thoroughly examined at the cost and expense of the Government by sounding, as determined by the Contracting Officer. The Contractor shall submit a written After Dredging Survey Request to the Contracting Officer within adequate time of the completion of dredging to insure prompt performance of the after dredging acceptance surveys as required by U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Hydrographic Survey Manual EM 1110-2-1003. If the Contractor fails to provide this advance notice or is untimely in doing so, the Contracting Officer will not be responsible for any delays caused by incomplete surveys. Should any shoals, lumps, or other lack of contract depth be disclosed by this examination, the Contractor will be required to remove same by dredging at the contract rate for dredging; however, if the bottom is soft and the shoal areas are small and form no material obstruction to navigation, the removal of such shoal may be waived at the discretion of the Contracting Officer. The Contractor will be notified when soundings are to be made and may accompany the survey party. When the area is found to be in satisfactory condition, it will be accepted. Should more than two sounding operations by the Government over an area be necessary by reason of work for the removal of shoals disclosed at a prior sounding, the cost of such third and any subsequent sounding operations will be charged against the Contractor at the rate of $5,000 per day for each day in which the Government Plant is engaged in sounding or is en route to or from the site or held at or near the said site for such operations. Final acceptance of the whole or a part of the work and the deductions or corrections of deductions made thereon will not be reopened after having once been made, except on evidence of collusion, fraud, or obvious error, and the acceptance of a completed section shall not change the time of payment of the retained percentages of the whole or any part of the work.

1.5 PHYSICAL DATA

1.5.1 Physical Conditions Information

The physical conditions indicated on the drawings and in the specifications are the result of site investigations and surveys. Information and data furnished or referred to below is furnished for the Contractor's information; however, it shall be expressly understood that the Government will not be responsible for any interpretation or conclusion drawn from this information or data by the Contractor. The approximate mean range of

tide at the dredging area is noted on the respective drawings. The dredging and disposal areas are exposed and high winds and seas may at times cause suspension of work. The mean range of tide is 2.61-feet at the Chesapeake Bay Bridge-Tunnel Fishing Pier with greater ranges during storm events.

1.5.1.1 Additional Information for Local Physical Conditions

The Contractor shall consult the following publications for additional information on local conditions:

a. United States Coast Pilot 3, Atlantic Coast, Sandy Hook to Cape Henry, published annually by the National Ocean Service.

b. Tide Tables, High and Low Water Predictions, East Coast of North and South America, published annually by the National Ocean Service.

c. Tide Current Tables, Atlantic Coast of North America, published annually by the National Ocean Service.

d. Local Notice to Mariners, published by the 5th U.S. Coast Guard District and the broadcast local notice to mariners.

1.5.2 Obstruction of Channel

The Government will not undertake to keep the area of channels free from vessels or other obstructions, except to the extent of such regulations, if any, as may be prescribed by the Secretary of the Army, in accordance with the provisions of Section 7 of the River and Harbor Act, approved 3 August 1917. The Contractor will be required to conduct the work in such manner as to obstruct navigation as little as possible, and in case the Contractors' plant so obstructs the channel as to make difficult or endanger the passage of vessels, said plant shall be promptly moved on the approach of any vessel to such an extent as may be necessary to afford a practicable passage. Upon the completion of the work, the Contractor shall promptly remove his plant, including ranges, buoys, piles, and other marks placed by him under this contract in navigable water or on shore.

1.5.3 Responsibility

The Contractor shall hold and save harmless the United States, its officers, and employees from all claims that may arise as a result of the Contractor's negligence in connection with the work performed under the contract, from noncompliance by the Contractor with the provisions of the contract drawings and specifications, or from the instruction of the Contracting Officer.

1.5.4 Condition of Dredging Area

The plans for dredging show the condition of the dredging area at the time of the most recent survey; however, the condition of the dredging area will be verified by a survey made before dredging. The Government has no knowledge of cables, pipes, wrecks, or other artificial obstructions in the dredging area; however, the dredging area may contain trash, debris, and other obstructions not shown on the plans for dredging.

1.5.5 Channel Traffic

The channel traffic consists of a wide variety of types and sizes of vessels, including large deep-draft commercial bulk carriers, tankers,

container vessels, and Naval vessels. Hampton Roads is also the home base for shallow and medium draft commercial seafood vessels, barges, tugs, pleasure crafts, and various other crafts. The Contractor shall expect that the vessel traffic will cause periodic delays and interruptions of his operations.

1.5.6 Oyster Grounds

There are no known oyster grounds in the vicinity of the areas to be dredged.

1.6 PUMPING OF BILGES

Contractors are warned that pumping oil or bilge water containing oil into navigable waters, or into areas which would permit the oil to flow into such waters, is prohibited by Section 13 of the River and Harbor Act of 1899, approved 3 March 1899 (30 Stat. 1152; 33 U.S.C. 407). Violation of this prohibition is subject to the penalties under the referenced Acts.

1.7 FUEL OIL TRANSFER OPERATIONS

In accordance with U.S. Coast Guard regulations CFR PART 156.120, couplings used in fuel oil transfer operations on any vessel with a capacity of 250 or more barrels of oil shall be either a bolted or full-threaded connection; or a quick-connect coupling approved by the Commandant; or an automatic back-pressure shutoff nozzle used to fuel the vessel. An executed fuel oil transfer (Declaration) form signed by the tanker operator shall be submitted to the Contracting Officer for each refueling operation.

1.8 LAYOUT OF WORK AND SURVEYS

1.8.1 General

The Contractor is responsible for the expense and layout of all work and shall utilize a differential GPS electronic survey and dredge positioning system to perform all scheduled dredging operations with accuracies equal to contract payment surveys as specified in the Project Classification Requirements as outlined in U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Hydrographic Survey Manual EM 1110-2-1003.

1.8.1.1 Dredge Electronic Survey and Positioning Systems

The Contractor shall provide real time positioning on a computer screen during dredging, and have the capability of playback in 15 minute intervals. The position must be recorded on a disk every 15 minutes and submitted to the Contracting Officer on a weekly basis. All electronic survey and dredge positioning systems equipment, and the work accomplished with the use of the systems, must render results in the same coordinate system as indicated on the contract drawings. All completed work shall be reviewed and certified as accurate by the Contractor's Quality Control Manager. This signed certification shall be submitted as a part of the Daily Report of Operations in accordance with the requirements of SECTION 01451 to assure that all work performed with the use of the equipment and systems meets contract requirements.

1.8.2 Datum and Bench Marks

The plane of reference shall be Mean Lower Low Water (MLLW) as established by National Ocean Service (NOS), as used on the drawings and in these

specifications. The following listed benchmarks are referenced on the drawings and shall be used by the Contractor for the locations specified:

BENCH MARK: NOS Tidal Bench Mark NO 3 1975
ELEVATION: 27.35 Feet above Mean Lower Low Water (NOS)

The bench mark is located on the Chesapeake Bay Bridge-Tunnel, set flush in the concrete bulkhead at the extreme North end of the South island, 45.6 feet North of the North face of the air exchange building, 23.0 feet East-north-east of the center of a 2.3-foot diameter manhole cover, 15.2 feet West of the navigation light (green), and 2.0 feet South of the North edge of the bulkhead.

1.9 TIDE LEVEL MEASUREMENT AND PREDICTION

1.9.1 Responsibility for Tide Measurements

It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to obtain tide level measurements and predictions as required to conduct his dredging operations for the duration of the work. The Contractor is advised that the Government will not provide a tide staff gauge in the vicinity of the dredging or placement areas.

1.9.2 Tidal Reference Station

The Tidal Reference Station 8638863 on the fishing pier at the south island of the Chesapeake Bay Bridge Tunnel is used by the Government for obtaining accurate tide level measurements for Thimble Shoal Channel. The Contractor is informed there are Tide Correction Factors required to be factored into the readings and are provided for the Contractor's use as SECTION 01056 of these specifications. A tidal reference station has been installed and is operated at this station by National Ocean Service (NOS). The tide gauge is located in a steel room below the deck on the fishing pier and 295 feet west of the inshore end of the pier. The Contractor cannot have physical access to the tidal reference station; however, the Contractor can obtain tide information from the NOS website at:

http://www.opsd.nos.noaa.gov/data_res.html

1.9.3 Tidal Reference Station Malfunctions

In the event that the NOS tidal reference station is not in service, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Chief, Navigation Support and Survey Section, telephone (757) 441-7125, or FAX (757) 441-7664.

1.10 INSPECTION

1.10.1 General Inspection Requirements

The presence of the construction representative shall not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for the proper execution of the work in accordance with the specifications. The Contractor will be required:

a. To furnish, on the request of the Contracting Officer or any construction representative, the use of such boats, boatmen, laborers, and material forming a part of the ordinary and usual equipment and crew of the dredging plant as may be reasonably necessary in inspecting and supervising the dredging.

b. To furnish, on the request of the Contracting Officer or any construction representative, suitable transportation from all points within the placement area, to and from the various pieces of plant and the staging areas, and within the material placement area as may be reasonably necessary in inspecting and supervising the work. Should the Contractor refuse, neglect, or delay compliance with these requirements, the specific facilities may be furnished and maintained by the Contracting Officer, and any resultant cost incurred by the government will be deducted from any amounts due or to become due the Contractor.

1.11 SHOALING

1.11.1 Shoaling Prior to Dredging

The drawings and quantity estimates are based on the condition of the dredging area at the time of the most recent surveys; however, the actual quantities to be dredged will be computed from surveys made immediately before dredging. Any shoaling that has developed, subsequent to the surveys indicated on the drawings and contiguous to the areas indicated to be dredged under this contract, shall be removed by the Contractor at the contract unit price for dredging, including any applicable unit price adjustments if so directed by the Contracting Officer. Any such shoaling within contiguous areas will be included as part of the required dredging prism for the purposes of CONTRACT CLAUSE "VARIATION IN ESTIMATED QUANTITIES".

1.11.2 Shoaling Subsequent to Dredging

If, before the contract is completed, shoaling occurs in any section previously accepted because of the natural lowering of the side slopes, re-dredging at contract price, including any applicable unit price adjustments, within the limit of available funds, may be done if agreeable to both the Contractor and the Contracting Officer.

1.12 SIGNAL LIGHTS

The Contractor shall display signal lights and conduct his operations in accordance with the General Regulations of the Department of the Army and of the Coast Guard governing lights and day signals to be displayed by towing vessels with tows on which no signals can be displayed, vessels working on wrecks, dredges, and vessels engaged in laying cables or pipe or in submarine or bank protection operations, lights to be displayed on dredge pipe lines, and day signals to be displayed by vessels of more than 65-feet in length moored or anchored in a fairway or channel, and the passing by other vessels of floating plant working in navigable channels, as approved by the Secretary of the Army and the Commandant, U. S. Coast Guard.

1.13 EQUIPMENT OWNERSHIP AND OPERATING EXPENSE SCHEDULE

1.13.1 Costs

Allowable cost for construction and marine plant and equipment in sound workable condition owned or controlled and furnished by a Contractor or subcontractor at any tier shall be based on actual cost data when the Government can determine both ownership and operating costs for each piece of equipment or equipment groups of similar serial and series from the

Contractor's accounting records. When both ownership and operating costs cannot be determined from the Contractor's accounting records, equipment costs shall be based upon the applicable provisions of EP 1110-1-8, "Construction Equipment Ownership and Operating Expense Schedule", Region II. Working conditions shall be considered to be average for determining equipment rates using the schedule unless specified otherwise by the Contracting Officer. For equipment not included in the schedule, rates for comparable pieces of equipment may be used or a rate may be developed using the formula provided in the schedule. For forward pricing, the schedule in effect at the time of negotiations shall apply. For retrospective pricing, the schedule in effect at the time the work was performed shall apply.

1.13.2 Rentals

Equipment rental costs are allowable, subject to the provisions of FAR 31.105(d)(ii) and FAR 31.205-36 substantiated by certified copies of paid invoices. Rates for equipment rented from an organization under common control, lease-purchase or sale-leaseback arrangements will be determined using the schedule except that rental costs leased from an organization under common control that has an established practice of leasing the same or similar equipment to unaffiliated lessees are allowable. Costs for major repairs and overhaul are unallowable.

1.13.3 Data

When actual equipment costs are proposed and the total amount of the pricing action is over $25,000, cost or pricing data shall be submitted on the Standard Form 1411, "Contract Pricing Proposal Cover Sheet". By submitting cost or pricing data, the Contractor grants to the Contracting Officer or an authorizing representative the right to examine those books, records, documents and other supporting data that will permit evaluation of the proposed equipment costs. After price agreement the Contractor shall certify that the equipment costs or pricing data submitted are accurate, complete and current.

1.14 BRIDGE-TO-BRIDGE RADIO COMMUNICATION

In order that radio communication may be made with passing vessels, all dredges engaged in work under this contract shall be equipped with bridge-to-bridge radio telephone equipment in accordance with 33 USC CHAPTER 24 , as applicable. The radio telephone equipment shall operate on a single channel very high frequency (VHF), FM, on a frequency of 156.65 megahertz (Channel 13 and 16) with low power output having a communication range of approximately ten miles. The Federal Communications Commission has approved the frequency.

1.14.1 Radio

The Contractor shall provide the Government construction representative a portable radio capable of communicating with the dredge for the duration of work under this contract. The Contractor shall maintain the radio as required.

1.15 SPECIAL COAST GUARD REQUIREMENTS

1.15.1 Local Notice To Mariners

The Local Notice To Mariners (LNM) for the Fifth Coast Guard District is available by phone at (757) 398-6367. Additionally, LNM are on the Internet

at:

http://www.navcen.uscg.gov/lnm/d5/default.htm, and
e-mail address: D5Local@LANTD5.uscg.mil.

The LNM is the primary means for disseminating information concerning aids to navigation, hazards to navigation, and other items of marine information of interest to mariners on the waters of the United States, its territories, and possessions. These notices are essential to all navigators for the purpose of keeping their charts, light lists, Coast Pilots and other nautical publications up-to-date. These notices are published weekly. They may be obtained free of charge, by making application to the Fifth Coast Guard District, Federal Building, 431 Crawford Street, Portsmouth, Virginia 23704. If the Contractor encounters any objects on the channel bottom during dredging operations or transport of his plant that could be a hazard to navigation, he shall notify the Coast Guard immediately as to location and at the same time notify the Contracting Officer.

1.15.2 Relocation of Navigation Aids

The Contractor shall not relocate or move any aids to navigation that have been established by the U.S. Coast Guard. If it becomes necessary to have any aid to navigation moved in order to complete dredging operations under this contract, the Contractor shall notify the U.S. Coast Guard in writing at the address above with a copy to the Contracting Officer not less than 15 calendar days prior to such need for movement. The Contractor shall notify the U.S. Coast Guard of the approximate time the navigation aid may be relocated to its original position. All notifications to the U.S. Coast Guard shall at the same time be provided to the Contracting Officer and recorded in the Daily Report of Operations. In the event that the Contractor disturbs or damages any navigation aid during work operations, which includes during mobilization or demobilization of his plant, the Contractor shall immediately stop the activity which disturbed or damaged the navigation aid, take immediate corrective action to prevent further disturbances or damage, and shall notify the Coast Guard immediately as to location, and at the same time notify the Contracting Officer.

1.15.3 Use of Coast Guard Navigation Aid Structures

The Commander, Fifth Coast Guard District, has authorized the Norfolk District, Corps of Engineers, and its Contractors to use fixed Federal aids to navigation structures, established and maintained by the U. S. Coast Guard, for support of temporary dredging tide gauges when performing Federal dredging operations. If a Contractor chooses to use navigation aid structures for this purpose, he shall abide by the following requirements:

a. The Contractor shall advise the Commander, Fifth Coast Guard District, Aids to Navigation Branch, Federal Building, 431 Crawford Street, Portsmouth, Virginia 23704, in writing, of his intention to attach tide gauges to navigation aid and structures, prior to commencing a dredging project. This notice shall include the name of each aid to navigation to which tide gauges are to be attached, and the anticipated dates the gauges will be attached and removed. A copy of this notice shall be furnished at this time to the Contracting Officer.

b. The Contractor shall be required to remove any temporary tide gauges immediately upon completion of dredging operations and demobilization of dredging plant. The Contractor shall at his expense repair or

replace any aids that he has damaged or destroyed as a result of the Contractor's use of such aids.

c. This provision refers only to Federal aids to navigation structures and does not authorize the Contractor to utilize aids that are not established and maintained by the U. S. Coast Guard. This provision also does not authorize the Contractor to utilize Federal navigation aid structures for any purposes other than the support of temporary tide gauges.

1.16 ENVIRONMENTAL LITIGATION

1.16.1 Litigation

If the performance of all or any part of the work is suspended, delayed, or interrupted due to an order of a court of competent jurisdiction as a result of environmental litigation, as defined below, the Contracting Officer, at the request of the Contractor, shall determine whether the order is due in any part to the acts or omissions of the Contractor or a subcontractor at any tier not required by the terms of this contract. If it is determined that the order is not due in any part to acts or omissions of the Contractor or a subcontractor at any tier other than as required by the terms of this contract, such suspension, delay, or interruption shall be considered as if ordered by the Contracting Officer in the administration of this contract under the terms of the "Suspension of Work" clause of this contract. The period of such suspension, delay, or interruption shall be considered unreasonable, and an adjustment shall be made for any increase in the cost of performance of this contract (excluding profit) as provided in that clause, subject to all the provisions thereof. The term "environmental litigation" means, a lawsuit alleging that the work will have an adverse effect on the environment or that the Government has not duly considered, either substantively or procedurally, the effect of the work on the environment.

1.17 HISTORICAL AND ARCHAEOLOGICAL FINDS

Federal legislation provides for the protection, preservation, and collection of scientific, prehistoric, historic, and archaeological data, including relics and specimens that might otherwise be lost as a result of any Federal construction project. Should the Contractor, or any of the Contractor's employees, or parties operating or associated with the Contractor, in the performance of this contract discover evidence of possible scientific, prehistoric, historic, or archaeological data, the Contractor shall immediately cease work at that location, and notify the Contracting Officer, giving the location and nature of the findings. The Contractor shall forward written confirmation to the Contracting Officer as directed. The Contractor shall exercise care so as not to disturb or damage shipwrecks, artifacts or fossils uncovered during excavation, dredging and material placement operations, and shall provide such cooperation and assistance as may be necessary to preserve the findings for removal or other disposition. Any person who, without written permission, injures, destroys, excavates, appropriates, moves or removes any historic or prehistoric artifact, object of antiquity, or archaeological resource is subject to arrest and penalty of law. Where appropriate by reason of discovery, the Contracting Officer may order delays in the time of performance or changes in the work, or both. If such delays or changes are ordered, an equitable adjustment will be made in accordance with the applicable clauses of the contract.

1.18 PROFIT

1.18.1 Weighted Guidelines

Weighted guidelines method of determining profit shall be used on any equitable adjustment change order or modification issued under this contract. The profit factors, expressed as a percent, shall be as follows:

Factor	Rate	Weight	Value
Degree of Risk	20		
Relative difficulty of work	15		
Size of Job	15		
Period of performance	15		
Contractor's investment	5		
Assistance by Government	5		
Subcontracting	25		
	100		

1.18.2 Values

Based on the circumstances of each procurement action, each of the above factors shall be weighted from .03 to .12 as indicated below. The value shall be obtained by multiplying the rate by the weight. The value column when totaled indicates the fair and reasonable profit percentage under the circumstances of the particular procurement.

1.18.2.1 Degree of Risk

Where the work involves no risk or the degree of risk is very small, the weighting should be .03; as the degree of risk increases, the weighting should be increased up to a maximum of .12. Lump sum items will have, generally, a higher weighted value than the unit price items for which quantities are provided. Other things to consider: the portion of the work to be done by subcontractors, nature of work, where work is to be performed, reasonableness of negotiated costs, amount of labor included in costs, and whether the negotiation is before or after performance of work.

1.18.2.2 Relative Difficulty of Work

If the work is most difficult and complex, the weighting should be .12 and should be proportionately reduced to .03 on the simplest of jobs. This factor is tied in to some extent with the degree of risk. Some things to consider: the nature of the work, by whom it is to be done, where, and what is the time schedule.

1.18.2.3 Size of Job

All work not in excess of $100,000 shall be weighted at .12. Work estimated between $100,000 and $5,000,000 shall be proportionately weighted from .12 to .05.

1.18.2.4 Periods of Performance

Jobs in excess of 24 months are to be weighted at .12. Jobs of lesser duration are to be proportionately weighted to a minimum of .03 for jobs not to exceed 30 days. No weight where additional time not required.

1.18.2.5 Contractor's Investment

To be weighted from .03 to .12 on the basis of below average, average, and above average. Things to consider: amount of subcontracting, mobilization payment item, Government furnished property, equipment and facilities, and expediting assistance.

1.18.2.6 Assistance by Government

To be weighted from .12 to .03 on the basis of average to above average. Things to consider: use of Government owned property, equipment and facilities, and expediting assistance.

1.18.2.7 Subcontracting

Shall be weighted inversely proportional to the amount of subcontracting. Where 80 percent or more of the work is to be subcontracted, the weighting is to be .03 and such weighting proportionately increased to .12 where all the work is performed by the Contractor's own forces.

1.19 PARTNERING

In order to most effectively accomplish this contract, the Government is willing to form a cohesive partnership with the Contractor. This partnership would strive to draw on the strengths of each organization in an effort to achieve a quality project done correctly, within budget, and on time. This partnership would be bilateral in make-up and partnership will be totally voluntary. Any cost associated with effectuating this partnership will be agreed to by all parties and will be shared equally with no change in contract price.

1.20 SUBCONTRACTS AND WORK COORDINATION

Contract Clauses "SUBCONTRACTS", "PERMITS AND RESPONSIBILITIES", and "MATERIAL AND WORKMANSHIP" are supplemented as follows:

(a) Divisions or sections of specifications are not intended to control the Contractor in dividing the work among subcontractors, or to limit work performed by any trade.

(b) Contractor shall be responsible for coordination of the work of the trades, subcontractors, and materials.

(c) The Government or its representative will not undertake to settle any difference between the Contractor and Contractor's subcontractors, or between subcontractors.

(d) The Government reserves the right to refuse to permit employment on the work or require dismissal from the work of any subcontractor who, by reason of previous unsatisfactory work on Corps of Engineers projects, or for any other reason is considered by the Contracting Officer to be incompetent or otherwise objectionable.

1.21 ACCOMMODATIONS ABOARD DREDGE FOR CONSTRUCTION REPRESENTATIVES

1.21.1 Accommodations

(a) Work Space - The Contractor shall furnish regularly to Government

construction representatives on board the dredge a suitable working and storage space, equipped and maintained to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer or his representative. As a minimum the facilities shall include a desk with chair for plan study, and a file drawer, approximately 15" by 24", capable of being locked with a padlock. The working space need not be a separate room, but shall be properly lighted, ventilated, and heated.

1.21.2 Costs

The entire cost to the Contractor for furnishing, equipping, and maintaining the foregoing accommodations shall be included in the contract price. If the Contractor fails to meet these requirements, the Contracting Officer will secure the facilities referred to above, and their costs will be deducted from payments due to the Contractor.

1.22 CONTINUITY OF WORK

No payment will be made for work done in any area designated by the Contracting Officer until the full depth required under the contract is secured in the whole of such area, unless prevented by ledge rock, nor will payment be made for excavation in any area not adjacent to and in prolongation of areas where full depth has been secured, except by decision of the Contracting Officer. Should any such nonadjacent area be excavated to full depth during the operations carried on under the contract, payment for all work therein may be deferred until the required depth has been made in the area intervening. The Contractor may be required to suspend dredging at any time when, for any reason, the gauges or ranges cannot be seen or properly followed.

1.23 CERF IMPLEMENTATION

The owner of the hopper dredge must have an active Basic Ordering Agreement (BOA) for the hopper dredge(s) on file with the Corps. The Contractor shall be obligated to make the hopper dredge(s) available to serve in the Corps of Engineers Reserve Fleet (CERF) at any time that the hopper dredge(s) is performing work under this contract. When the Contracting Officer is notified of the decision to activate the dredge(s) into the CERF, he shall take appropriate action to release the dredge(s). He may then extend or terminate the contract to implement whichever action is in the best interest of the Government. The CERF Contractor shall also be subject to the following conditions:

a. The Director of Civil Works may require the Contractor to perform emergency dredging at another CONUS (48 contiguous states) site for a period of time equal to the remaining time under this contract at the date of notification plus up to ninety (90) days at the previously negotiated rate which appears on the schedule of prices in the BOA.

b. The Chief of Engineers may require the Contractor to perform emergency dredging at an OCONUS (Outside CONUS which includes Alaska, Hawaii, Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, or U.S. Trust Territories) site for a period of time equal to the time remaining under this contract at the date of notification plus up to one hundred eighty (180) days at the negotiated rate which appears on the schedule of prices in the BOA.

c. The CERF will be activated by the Chief of Engineers or the Director of Civil Works; then the Contracting Officer will notify the

Contractor. From the time of notification, the selected hopper dredge(s) must depart for the emergency assignment within seventy-two hours for CONUS or ten days for OCONUS assignments.

d. A confirming delivery order will be issued pursuant to the Basic Ordering Agreement (BOA) by the Ordering Contracting Officer. Such delivery order shall utilize the schedule of rates in the BOA for the specific hopper dredge(s).

e. If during the time period specified in a, b, or c, above, a CERF vessel(s) is still required, the contract performance may be continued for additional time by mutual agreement.

1.24 SEAGOING BARGE ACT

All dredges, barges, and vessels used for the transport of dredged material shall meet the applicable requirements of the Seagoing Barge Act (46 U.S.C. et seq). To document compliance with this act, the Contractor shall submit with his bid copies of U.S. Coast Guard Certificate of Inspection for each item of plant. Certification shall also be furnished to the Contracting Officer if additional plant is engaged during the course of the work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (THIS PART NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION (THIS PART NOT USED)

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 01270

MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTALS
1.2 BASE BID AND OPTIONAL BID LUMP SUM PAYMENT ITEMS
1.3 BASE BID AND OPTIONAL BID UNIT PRICE PAYMENT ITEMS
1.4 SCHEDULED PAYMENT ITEMS
1.4.1 Base Bid Payment Item No. 0001 Mobilization and Demobilization
1.4.1.1 Mobilization
1.4.1.2 Demobilization
1.4.2 Base Bid Payment Item No. 0002 Dredging
1.4.3 Optional Bid Payment Item No. 0003 Mobilization and Demobilization
1.4.3.1 Mobilization
1.4.3.2 Demobilization
1.4.4 Optional Bid Payment Item Nos. 0004 and 0005 Sea Turtle Trawling and Relocation of Sea Turtles
1.4.5 Optional Bid Payment Item No. 0006 Standby Time
1.4.6 Optional Bid Payment Item No. 0007 Diving Operations
1.5 MISPLACED MATERIAL
1.6 EXCESSIVE DREDGING
1.7 MONTHLY PARTIAL PAYMENTS

PART 2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 01270

MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT
07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTALS

Not Used.

1.2 BASE BID AND OPTIONAL BID LUMP SUM PAYMENT ITEMS

Payment items for the work of this contract for which contract lump sum payments will be made are listed in the PROPOSAL SCHEDULE and described below. All costs for items of work, which are not specifically mentioned to be included in a particular lump sum or unit price payment item, shall be included in the listed lump sum item most closely associated with the work involved. The lump sum price and payment made for each item listed shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all plant, labor, materials, and equipment, and performing any associated Contractor quality control, environmental protection, meeting safety requirements, tests and reports, and for performing all work required for which separate payment is not otherwise provided.

1.3 BASE BID AND OPTIONAL BID UNIT PRICE PAYMENT ITEMS

Payment items for the work of this contract on which the contract unit price payments will be made are listed in the PROPOSAL SCHEDULE and described below. The unit price and payment made for each item listed shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all plant, labor, materials, and equipment, and performing any associated Contractor quality control, environmental protection, meeting safety requirements, tests and reports, and for performing all work required for each of the unit price items.

1.4 SCHEDULED PAYMENT ITEMS

1.4.1 Base Bid Payment Item No. 0001 Mobilization and Demobilization

All costs connected with the mobilization and demobilization of all of the Contractor's dredging plant and equipment as defined below will be paid for at the contract lump sum price for this item. Sixty percent of the lump sum price will be paid to the Contractor upon completion of his mobilization at the work site. The remaining forty percent will be paid to the Contractor upon completion of demobilization. In the event the Contracting Officer considers that the amount in this item, sixty percent which represents mobilization and forty percent which represents demobilization, does not bear a reasonable relation to the cost of the work in this contract, the Contracting Officer may require the Contractor to produce cost data to justify this portion of the bid. Failure to justify such price to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer will result in payment of actual mobilization costs, as determined by the Contracting Officer, at the completion of mobilization, and actual demobilization costs, as determined by the Contracting Officer, at the completion of demobilization. The determination of the Contracting Officer is not subject

to appeal.

1.4.1.1 Mobilization

Mobilization shall include all costs for operations accomplished prior to commencement of actual dredging operations. This shall include transfer of dredge and attendant plant and other like equipment and machinery for site work, and any other associated work that is necessary in advance of the actual dredging operations.

1.4.1.2 Demobilization

Demobilization shall include general preparation for transfer of plant to its home base.

1.4.2 Base Bid Payment Item No. 0002 Dredging

Payment to be made for all costs associated with dredging shall include the cost of removal and placement of material as indicated and specified, exclusive of the mobilization and demobilization as defined above. The total amount of material removed and to be paid for under this payment item will be measured by the cubic yard in place by computing the volume between the bottom surface shown by soundings of the last surveys made before dredging, and the bottom surface shown by the soundings of surveys made as soon as practicable after the work has been completed. The volume for measurement and payment shall include the material within the limits of overdepth and side slopes described in paragraph "Required Dredging Prism, Overdepth, and Side Slopes" of SECTION 02325, less any deductions that may be required for misplaced material described in subparagraph "Misplaced Material", below. The drawings are believed to accurately represent conditions at the time of the surveys indicated. New soundings will be taken immediately before dredging as specified in paragraph "Before Dredging Surveys" of SECTION 01150. The Contractor's unit price for dredging, based on the above method of computation of the quantity for payment, shall include his evaluation of shoaling, other natural changes in the waterway, or changes caused by the Contractor's operations that might occur during the period between the surveys before dredging and the surveys for acceptance of the work. Computations for payment purposes will be made by the Government using, as defined in the USACE Hydrographic Survey Manual EM 1110-2-1003, the Average End Area (AEA) method, Triangulated Irregular Network (TIN) method, or a combination of these methods at the discretion of the Government, utilizing electronic data processing software and machines for the calculations. Determination of quantities removed and the deductions made to determine quantities in place to be paid for in the areas specified, after having once been made, will not be reopened except on evidence of collusion, fraud, or obvious error.

1.4.3 Optional Bid Payment Item No. 0003 Mobilization and Demobilization

All costs connected with the mobilization and demobilization of all of the Contractor's plant and equipment to provide for Sea Turtle Trawling and Turtle Relocation as defined below will be paid for at the contract lump sum price for this item. Sixty percent of the lump sum price will be paid to the Contractor upon completion of his mobilization at the work site. The remaining forty percent will be paid to the Contractor upon completion of demobilization. In the event the Contracting Officer considers that the amount in this item, sixty percent which represents mobilization and forty percent which represents demobilization, does not bear a reasonable relation to the cost of the work in this contract, the Contracting Officer

may require the Contractor to produce cost data to justify this portion of the bid. Failure to justify such price to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer will result in payment of actual mobilization costs, as determined by the Contracting Officer, at the completion of mobilization, and actual demobilization costs, as determined by the Contracting Officer, at the completion of demobilization. The determination of the Contracting Officer is not subject to appeal.

1.4.3.1 Mobilization

Mobilization shall include all costs for operations accomplished prior to commencement of actual sea turtle trawling operations. This shall include transfer of vessel, all sea turtle trawling attendant plant, ancillary equipment and machinery for performing the work, and any other associated work that is necessary in advance of the actual sea turtle trawling operations.

1.4.3.2 Demobilization

Demobilization shall include general preparation for transfer of plant to its home base, removal of ancillary equipment and machinery, and transfer of plant and all ancillary equipment to its home base.

1.4.4 Optional Bid Payment Item Nos. 0004 and 0005 Sea Turtle Trawling and Relocation of Sea Turtles

Payment to be made for sea turtle trawling, as specified in Appendix E of the National Marine Fisheries Service Biological Opinion issued as a part of this contract and in the other applicable portions of the contract documents governing this work, will be paid for at the contract unit price for these items and shall include all costs associated with sea turtle trawling and turtle relocation, complete, including all direct and indirect labor and other associated work as indicated and specified.

1.4.5 Optional Bid Payment Item No. 0006 Standby Time

The contract price per day for Contracting Officer directed standby time shall include the contractor's costs for holding his plant, equipment and crew on site until further direction is given by the Contracting Officer. Time will be measured and paid for by the day (24 hours) and calculated to the nearest (1/24) day for payment. If the Contracting Officer directs that plant be placed in a standby status, the Contractor shall cease dredging operations and preparation for dredging operations, and shall secure the total dredge plant in a mooring location acceptable to the Contracting Officer.

1.4.6 Optional Bid Payment Item No. 0007 Diving Operations

The contract price per day for Contracting Officer directed diving operations to identify obstructions encountered in the dredging area shall include the contractor's costs for all equipment and labor associated with the diving operations. Time will be measured and paid for by the day (24 hours) and calculated to the nearest (1/24) day for payment.

1.5 MISPLACED MATERIAL

Any material that is deposited elsewhere than in places designated or approved by the Contracting Officer will not be paid for, and the Contractor may be required to remove such misplaced material and deposit it

where directed by the Contracting Officer at the Contractor's expense.

1.6 EXCESSIVE DREDGING

Material taken from outside the specific areas to be dredged or beyond the limits as extended in paragraph "Required Dredging Prism, Overdepth, and Side Slopes" will be considered as excessive overdepth dredging, or excessive side slope dredging, for which payment will not be made. Nothing in these specifications shall be construed to prevent payment for the removal of shoals performed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Paragraphs SHOALING and FINAL EXAMINATION AND ACCEPTANCE of Section 01005.

1.7 MONTHLY PARTIAL PAYMENTS

Monthly partial payments will be based on estimated quantities determined by the Contracting Officer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 01320

PROJECT SCHEDULE

07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES
1.2 QUALIFICATIONS
1.3 SUBMITTALS

PART 2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS
3.2 PROGRESS SCHEDULE
3.3 PROGRESS SCHEDULE FORMAT
3.3.1 Level of Detail Required
3.3.2 Activity Durations
3.3.3 Government Activities
3.3.4 Responsibility
3.3.5 Work Areas
3.3.6 Constraint of Last Activity
3.3.7 Standard Activity Coding Dictionary
3.4 UPDATED SCHEDULES

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 01320

PROJECT SCHEDULE
07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of the specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by basic designation only.

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

ER 1-1-11	(1995) Progress, Schedules, and Network Analysis Systems

1.2 QUALIFICATIONS

The Contractor CQC representative shall be responsible for the preparation and certification as complete all required project Progress Schedule submittals and reports.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall make submittals for the following listed reports and certificates as required by the specifications. The Contracting Officer may request submittals in addition to those specified when deemed necessary to adequately describe the work. Units of weights and measures used on all submittals shall be the same as those used in the contract drawings. Each submittal shall be complete and in sufficient detail to allow ready determination of compliance with contract requirements. Prior to submittal, all items shall be checked and approved by the Contractor's Quality Control (CQC) representative and each item shall be stamped, signed, and dated by the CQC representative indicating action taken in accordance with SECTION 01451. Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction and Postconstruction Submittals

Progress Schedule; G

Prior to commencement of dredging, submit a copy of Progress Schedule to Contracting Officer indicating the measures and processes the Contractor will employ to produce an end product that complies with the contract requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Pursuant to the CONTRACT CLAUSE, SCHEDULE FOR CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS, a project Progress Schedule as described below and specified in the CONTRACT CLAUSES shall be prepared. The scheduling of construction shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. Contractor management personnel shall actively participate in its development. Subcontractors and suppliers working on the project shall also contribute in developing and maintaining an accurate Project Schedule. The approved Project Schedule shall be used to measure the progress of the work, to aid in evaluating time extensions, and to provide the basis of all progress payments as applicable.

3.2 PROGRESS SCHEDULE

The Contractor shall submit his Progress Schedule to the Contracting Officer for approval at the Pre-Construction Conference specified in SECTION 01006 POST AWARD MEETINGS. The Progress Schedule shall be prepared and certified as complete by the Contractor's Quality Control Representative in the form of a chart graphically indicating the sequence proposed to accomplish each work feature or operation. The chart shall be prepared to show the starting and completion dates of all work features on a linear horizontal time scale beginning with date of Notice to Proceed, arrival date of Contractor's plant to the job site, all activities scheduled prior to dredging, dredging start and completion dates, calendar days to completion of all work, and contract completion date. Each activity in the construction shall be represented by an arrow and shall have a beginning and ending node (event). The entire project shall have only one beginning node and one ending node. The arrangement of arrows shall be such that they flow from the left to right. Each arrow representing an activity shall be annotated to show the activity description, duration and cost. The Contractor shall indicate on the chart the important work activities that are critical to the timely overall completion of the project. Key dates for important features or portions of work features are milestone dates and shall be so indicated on the chart.

3.3 PROGRESS SCHEDULE FORMAT

The computer software system or manual method(s) used by the Contractor to produce his Progress Schedule and any required associated information shall require approval by the Contracting Officer prior to submittal by the Contractor. Any computer software utilized by the Contractor to produce the Project Schedule shall be capable of providing all requirements of this specification. Failure of the Contractor to meet the requirements of this specification shall result in the disapproval of the schedule.

3.3.1 Level of Detail Required

The Project Schedule shall include an appropriate level of detail. Failure to develop or update the Project Schedule or provide data to the Contracting Officer at the appropriate level of detail, as specified herein and directed by the Contracting Officer, shall result in the disapproval of the schedule. The Contracting Officer shall use as a minimum, but is not limited to, the following conditions to determine the appropriate level of detail to be used in the Project Schedule:

3.3.2 Activity Durations

Contractor submissions shall follow the direction of the Contracting Officer regarding reasonable activity durations. Reasonable durations are those that allow the progress of activities to be accurately determined between payment periods (usually less than 2 percent of all non-procurement activities' Original Durations are greater than 20 days).

3.3.3 Government Activities

Government and other agency activities that could impact progress shall be shown. These activities include, but are not limited to:

* required Contractor submittals for Government approval
* Government surveys for payment
* inspections required by the contract.

3.3.4 Responsibility

All activities shall be identified in the project schedule by the party responsible to perform the work. Responsibility includes, but is not limited to: subcontractors, contractor's work force, and government personnel or agency performing a given task. Activities shall not belong to more than one responsible party. The responsible party for each activity shall be identified by a designated Responsibility Code.

3.3.5 Work Areas

All activities shall be identified in the project schedule by the work area in which the activity occurs. Activities shall not be allowed to cover more than one work area. The work area of each activity shall be identified by a designated Work Area Code.

3.3.6 Constraint of Last Activity

Completion of the last activity in the schedule shall be constrained by the contract completion date. Calculation on project updates shall be such that if the early finish of the last activity falls after the contract completion date, then the float calculation shall reflect a negative float on the critical path. The Contractor shall include as the last activity in the project schedule an activity called "End Project". The "End Project" activity shall have an "LF" constraint date equal to the completion date for the project, and a zero day duration.

3.3.7 Standard Activity Coding Dictionary

The Contractor shall use the activity coding structure defined in the Standard Data Exchange Format (SDEF) in ER 1-1-11, Appendix A. This exact structure is mandatory, even if some fields are not used.

3.4 UPDATED SCHEDULES

Update of the Progress Schedule shall be at weekly intervals or when the construction schedule has been revised. Reflect any changes occurring since the last update and certify by signature of the Contractor's Quality Control Officer and submit to the Contracting Officer as specified.

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 01330

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTAL IDENTIFICATION AND CLASSIFICATION
1.1.1 Submittal Identification
1.1.2 Submittal Classification
1.2 APPROVAL OF SUBMITTALS
1.3 DISAPPROVED SUBMITTALS
1.4 WITHHOLDING OF PAYMENT

PART 2 PRODUCT

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL
3.2 SCHEDULING
3.2.1 Submittal and Report Identification
3.3 SUBMITTAL REGISTER (ENG FORM 4288)
3.4 TRANSMITTAL FORM (ENG FORM 4025)

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 01330

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTAL IDENTIFICATION AND CLASSIFICATION

The Contractor shall insure all submittals as required in the Contract are submitted to the government as identified and in accordance with the procedures specified in this Section. Submittals may be required for work features and procedures in the specifications that are not listed or classified as indicated below. The Contractor shall still be required to list these submittals in his Submittal Register as required by the respective specification, and designate the submittal and action required in the register.

1.1.1 Submittal Identification

Submittals required are identified by SD numbers and titles with typical items to be submitted under this classification as follows:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Certificates of Insurance
List of Proposed Subcontractors
List of Proposed Products
Construction Progress Schedule
Submittal Register
Schedule of Values
Health and Safety Plan
Activity Hazard Analysis
Quality Control Plan
Environmental Protection Plan

SD-02 Shop Drawings

As used in this section, drawings, schedules, diagrams, and other data prepared specifically for this contract, by Contractor or through Contractor by way of subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, distributor, or other lower tier contractor, to illustrate portion of work.

SD-03 Product Data

Preprinted material such as illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, manufacturer's descriptive literature, catalog data, and other data to illustrate portion of work, but not prepared exclusively for this contract.

SD-04 Samples

Physical examples of products, materials, equipment, assemblies, or workmanship that are physically identical to portion of work,

illustrating portion of work or establishing standards for evaluating appearance of finished work or both.

SD-05 Design Data

Placement plan with proposed equipment usage and datum used and benchmark locations.

SD-06 Test Reports

Report signed by authorized official of testing laboratory that a material, product or system identical to the material, product or system to be provided has been tested in accord with specified requirements.

Results of environmental testing.

Report which includes findings of a test required to be performed by the contractor on an actual portion of the work or prototype prepared for the project before shipment to job site.

Report which includes finding of a test made at the job site or on sample taken from the job site, on portion of work during or after installation.

Investigation reports.

Daily checklists.

Final acceptance test and operational test procedure.

SD-07 Certificates

Statements signed by responsible officials of manufacturer of product, system or material attesting that product, system or material meets specification requirements. Must be dated after award of project contract and clearly name the project.

Document required of Contractor, or of a supplier, installer or subcontractor through Contractor, the purpose of which is to further quality of orderly progression of a portion of the work by documenting procedures, acceptability of methods or personnel qualifications.

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Preprinted material describing installation of a product, system or material, including special notices and Material Safety Data sheets concerning impedances, hazards and safety precautions.

SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports

Documentation of the testing and verification actions taken by manufacturer's representative to confirm compliance with manufacturer's standards or instructions.

Factory test reports.

SD-10 Closeout Submittals

Placement area profiles and surveys.

1.1.2 Submittal Classification

Submittals are classified as follows:

a. Government Approved

Government approval is required for extensions of design, critical materials, deviations, equipment whose compatibility with the entire system must be checked, and other items as designated by the Contracting Officer. Within the terms of the Contract Clause entitled "Specifications and Drawings for Construction," they are considered to be "shop drawings."

b. Information Only

All submittals not requiring Government approval will be for information only. They are not considered to be "shop drawings" within the terms of the Contract Clause referred to above.

1.2 APPROVAL OF SUBMITTALS

The approval of submittals by the Contracting Officer's Representative (COR), shall not be construed as a complete check, but will indicate only that the general method of construction, work scheduling, and other information are satisfactory. Approval will not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for any error which may exist, as the Contractor under the Contractor Quality Control (CQC) requirements of this contract is responsible for the dimensions, layout, and satisfactory construction of all work as indicated and specified. After submittals have been approved by the COR, resubmittal for the purpose of changing the approved Work Plan, Progress Schedule, designated Acceptance Sections, or for any other reason, will not be given consideration unless accompanied by an explanation as to why a change is necessary.

1.3 DISAPPROVED SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall make all corrections required by the COR and promptly furnish a corrected submittal with the Daily CQC Report as specified for the initial submittal. If the Contractor considers any correction indicated on the submittal(s) to constitute a change to the contract, notice as required under the Contract Clause entitled "Changes" shall be given at the same time to the COR.

1.4 WITHHOLDING OF PAYMENT

Payment for any part of the scheduled work accomplished by the Contractor, including transportation of the Contractor's plant to or from the site of the work, will not be made if required approvals for all parts of the scheduled work have not been obtained.

PART 2 PRODUCT (Not Used)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

The Contractor shall submit all items required and specified in these specifications, and as may be required by other portions of the scheduled work. Proposed deviations from the contract requirements shall be clearly identified. The required submittals shall be listed in the Contractor's Work Plan and on the Contractor's Submittal Register Form 4288-R. All requirements of submittals shall be coordinated with SECTION 01451. Any questions regarding submittals required of the Contractor will be discussed at the Preconstruction Conference specified in SECTION 01006. At this Conference, and during the progress of the work, the COR may request submittals in addition to those listed when deemed necessary to adequately describe the work covered in the respective sections. Dimensions and units of weights and measures used on all submittals shall be the same as indicated and specified. Each submittal shall be complete and in sufficient detail to allow ready determination of compliance with contract requirements. Prior to submittal, all items shall be checked and approved as complete by the CQC representative as specified in SECTION 01451.

3.2 SCHEDULING

Submittals covering component items forming a system or items that are interrelated, such as access/egress to the work area, and delivery/storage of materials prior to construction of features shall be scheduled to be coordinated with the requirements specified and submitted concurrently.

3.2.1 Submittal and Report Identification

All submittals and reports shall be complete, properly marked, adequately detailed, and identified with location of occurrence in the respective specification section with paragraph number, drawing number and location, and respective Plan or Report requirement, as applicable. The Contractor's CQC representative shall sign and date each submittal and report as complete.

3.3 SUBMITTAL REGISTER (ENG FORM 4288)

At the end of this SECTION is a sample Submittal Register (ENG Form 4288-R) showing those plans, lists, and items of equipment and materials for which submittals are required by the specifications. The Contractor is informed this sample form may not list all submittals that may be required of the Contractor; however, the Contractor shall utilize this form as a guide to provide, with his CQC Plan for approval, a complete Submittal Register listing all submittals required for the duration of the contract. The Submittal Register shall consist of individual pages representing the respective Specification Sections as shown in the attached sample. Columns "d" through "q" of the sample form indicate the method the Contractor is to use in identification of his submittals. In the respective Specification Sections and when so directed by specified requirements in other parts of the contract for a particular type of submittal, the Classification status to be inserted in Columns "p" and "q" is indicated. The Contractor's Quality Control Representative shall certify in writing as part of the CQC Plan the appropriate designation for all submittals has been made. The remainder of columns and how they are to be utilized during administration of the contract will be addressed at the Pre-Construction Conference as noted in SECTION 01006.

3.4 TRANSMITTAL FORM (ENG FORM 4025)

At the end of this SECTION is a sample Transmittal Form (ENG Form 4025) which shall be used for transmittal coordination of all submittals. This form shall be completed by the Contractor identifying each item to be submitted. Special care shall be exercised to ensure proper listing of the date of the submittal transmittal, specification section and paragraph number pertinent to the data submitted for each item, and numerical sequence coordination with the Submittal Register Form 4288-R, Column "b".

-- End of Section --

Instructions For Completing ENG FORM 4025-R, Mar 95

A. Enter date the submittal is issued.

B. Enter the Transmittal Number under which the submittal was made.

The Transmittal Number shall have the following format:

A-B.C

Where: A is the specification section

B is a consecutive number where 1 would be the first transmittal under the given specification section, 2 would be the second transmittal, etc.

C is a consecutive number identifying resubmittals. Number 1 would be the first resubmittal, 2 the second, etc.

Examples of Transmittal Numbers under Specification Section 01451:

01451-1
01451-2
01451-1.1 (first resubmittal of 01451-1)
01451-3

C. Enter name and address of Corps of Engineers reviewing office.

D. Enter name and address of Contractor.

E. Enter contract number.

F. If this is the first submittal of information for this item number, check the box for "New Submittal". If not, check the box for "Resubmittal".

G. If the "Resubmittal" box is checked, enter the previous Transmittal No.

H. Enter the specification section that applies to this Transmittal Form. A separate Transmittal Form shall be used for submittals under separate sections of the specifications.

I. Enter name and location of project.

J. Indicate whether the submittal is "For Information Only (FIO)" or for "Government Approval (Gov't Approval)".

K. Enter the Item No. as identified on the Submittal Register.

L. Enter the Description of the item submitted as identified on the Submittal Register.

M. Enter information as necessary. When a sample of material or Manufacturer's Certificate of Compliance is transmitted, indicate "Sample" or "Certification.

N. Enter the number of copies of submittal data attached.

O. Enter the specification paragraph number as identified on the Submittal Register using the following format:

Spec. Section - Paragraph number

P. Enter information as necessary.

Q. Enter Contractor Action Code. See reverse side of ENG Form 4025 for applicable codes.

R. A check shall be placed in the "Variation" column when a submittal is not in accordance with the plans and specifications. Attach a written statement describing the variation.

S. Review code assigned by the Government reviewer.

T. Remarks from the Contractor or Government review comments. Government review comments may also be placed on a separate sheet of paper.

U. Signature of Contractor reviewer.

V. Number of enclosures being returned to the Contractor by the Government reviewer

W. Signature and title of Government approving authority.

X. Date of review by the Government.

Other: In submitting manufacturer's literature or similar information, the Contractor shall clearly identify the item proposed for use.

TRANSMITTAL OF SHOP DRAWINGS, EQUIPMENT DATA, MATERIAL SAMPLES, OR MANUFACTURER'S CERTIFICATES OF COMPLIANCE *(Read instructions on the reverse side prior to initiating this form)*	DATE 1 Jan 97	TRANSMITTAL NO.

SECTION I - REQUEST FOR APPROVAL OF THE FOLLOWING ITEMS *(This section will be initiated by the contractor)*

TO:	FROM:	CONTRACT NO.	CHECK ONE: ☐ THIS IS A NEW TRANSMITTAL ☐ THIS IS A RESUBMITTAL OF TRANSMITTAL _____
SPECIFICATION SEC. NO. *(Cover only one section with each transmittal)*	PROJECT TITLE AND LOCATION		

ITEM NO. a	DESCRIPTION OF ITEM SUBMITTED *(Type size, model number/etc.)* b	MFG OR CONTR. CAT., CURVE DRAWING OR BROCHURE NO. *(See instruction no. 8)* c	NO. OF COPIES d	CONTRACT REFERENCE DOCUMENT: SPEC. PARA. NO. e	CONTRACT REFERENCE DOCUMENT: DRAWING SHEET NO. f	FOR CONTRACTOR USE CODE g	VARIATION f	

REMARKS

I certify that the above submitted items have been reviewed in detail and are correct and in strict conformance with the contract drawings and specifications except as otherwise stated.

_____
NAME AND SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR

SECTION II - APPROVAL ACTION

ENCLOSURES RETURNED *(List by Item No.)*	NAME, TITLE AND SIGNATURE OF APPROVING AUTHORITY	DATE

SUBMITTAL REGISTER

CONTRACT NO.

TITLE AND LOCATION
Atlantic Ocean Channel

CONTRACTOR

ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	CLASSIFICATION	GOVT OR A/E REVWR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION			APPROVING AUTHORITY					MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
							SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)		(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		01150	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals															
			Dredging Intent Notifications to															
			U.S. Coast Guard															
			Designated Acceptance Section		G													
			Plan															
			Acceptance Section Survey															
			Reports															
			Advance Notice for Dredging	1.4.6														
			After Dredging Survey Requests															
		01320	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals															
			Progress Schedule		G													
		01350	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals															
			Operational Plan to Minimize		G													
			Turtle and Shortnose Sturgeon															
			Takes and Whale Encounters															
			Hopper Dredge Special		G													
			Recording Requirements Plan															
			Hopper Dredge Endangered		G													
			Species Special Equipment Plan															
		01355	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals															
			Environmental Protection Plan		G													
		01451	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals															
			Quality Control Plan	3.2.1	G													
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals															
			Daily Quality Control Reports	3.7														
		01525	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals															

SUBMITTAL REGISTER

CONTRACT NO.

TITLE AND LOCATION
Atlantic Ocean Channel

CONTRACTOR

ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	CLASSIFICATION	GOVT OR A/E REVWR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION			APPROVING AUTHORITY					REMARKS
							SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)		(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		01525	Accident Prevention Plan (APP)	1.8														
			Activity Hazard Analysis (AHA)	1.9														
			SD-06 Test Reports															
			Reports	1.13														
			Accident Reports	1.13.1														
			Monthly Exposure Reports															
			Regulatory Citations and	1.13.4														
			Violations															
		02325	SD-07 Certificates															
			Equipment and Machinery															
			Operator Authorization															

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 01350

SPECIAL EQUIPMENT AND PROCEDURE REQUIREMENTS FOR PROTECTION OF ENDANGERED SPECIES

07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL INFORMATION
1.2 SUBMITTALS

PART 2 PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 SPECIAL PRECAUTIONS FOR SEA TURTLES, STURGEON AND WHALES DURING DREDGING OPERATIONS
3.1.1 Endangered Species Observers on Bridge Watch
3.1.2 Endangered Species Observer Requirements
3.1.2.1 Protected Whales and Other Listed Species Observer Requirements
3.1.3 Endangered Species Observer Forms, Incident Reports, and Weekly/Final Reports
3.1.4 Endangered Species Disposition
3.1.5 Hopper Dredge Special Recording Requirements Submittals
3.1.6 Hopper Dredge Endangered Species Special Equipment Submittals
3.1.7 Hopper Dredge Special Operating Procedures

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 01350

SPECIAL EQUIPMENT AND PROCEDURE REQUIREMENTS FOR PROTECTION OF ENDANGERED SPECIES

07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL INFORMATION

The Atlantic Ocean Channel is a location where sea turtles, whales, shortnose sturgeon and other endangered and threatened species may be encountered during the work. The Contractor is advised the Government has consulted with the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) regarding the effects of dredging on threatened and endangered species in the dredging area for this contract. To protect these species, the NMFS has issued a Biological Opinion and Incidental Take Statement that is included as a part of this SECTION. The contract plans and specifications have been prepared to comply with this Biological Opinion and Incidental Take Statement that was established during the planning and development of this project. Any non-compliance with or violation of the work conditions to be provided in accordance with the Biological Opinion and Incidental Take Statement noted and other requirements specified herein may result in criminal and civil penalties against the Contractor.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only or as otherwise designated. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Operational Plan to Minimize Turtle and Shortnose Sturgeon Takes and Whale Encounters; G
Hopper Dredge Special Recording Requirements Plan; G
Hopper Dredge Endangered Species Special Equipment Plan; G

PART 2 PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 SPECIAL PRECAUTIONS FOR SEA TURTLES, STURGEON AND WHALES DURING DREDGING OPERATIONS

The Contractor shall develop a written Operational Plan to Minimize Turtle and Shortnose Sturgeon Takes and Whale Encounters. This Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) Northeast Regional Office, Protected Resources Division (attention: Mary Colligan), One Blackburn Drive, Gloucester, Massachusetts 01930 for obtaining the services of qualified Endangered Species Observers as required to be employed by the Contractor during dredging work that is performed from April 1 to November 30. The Contractor shall ensure the adequate instruction and training of all personnel associated with the

operation of the dredging vessel and other plant employed on the work regarding the possible presence of endangered sea turtles, sturgeon and whales and the need to avoid contact and collisions with these animals.

3.1.1 Endangered Species Observers on Bridge Watch

The Contractor shall be required to provide on all towed and self-propelled vessels and plant NMFS approved Endangered Species Observers on bridge watch to monitor the surface of the water for the presence of sea turtles from April 1 to November 30. In the event that Endangered Species Observers bridge watch personnel observe endangered species, they shall inform the master of the vessel and appropriate action shall be taken to avoid a vessel collision with these animals.

3.1.2 Endangered Species Observer Requirements

Endangered Species Observers shall be NMFS approved observers with demonstrated abilities to identify whale species, sturgeon species, sea turtle species, and turtle parts as identified in the NMFS Incidental Take Statement/Biological Opinion included as a part of this SECTION. Verification of current approval status with the NMFS shall be provided for all observers prior to performing any dredging. A minimum of one NMFS approved observer shall be onboard the dredge at all times from April 1 through November 30, or whenever the surface water temperatures reach or exceed 11 degrees centigrade, whichever comes first. While onboard, observers shall provide the required inspection coverage on a rotating basis of six hours on and six hours off each day, adjusting their duty times to maximize observance during periods of dredging. The Endangered Species Observer shall monitor vessel operations to ensure the Endangered Species Act 500-yard approach regulations for right whales and a minimum 100-yard approach for other listed species is complied with during vessel dredging and transit. When whales or other listed species are present vessels must, except when precluded by safety requirements, follow the advice of the onboard Endangered Species Observer to avoid collision with whales or other listed species. Sufficient time as approved by the Contracting Officer must be allotted between each loading cycle to allow the Endangered Species Observer to inspect and clean the drag head, thoroughly clean the screening devices, and document and record findings of inspections on Endangered Species Observer Forms and Incident Reports. The Endangered Species Observer shall be the only person allowed to remove biological material from the screening devices. If listed species are present during dredging, material transport or vessel transit, vessels transiting the area must post a watch, avoid intentional approaches closer than 100 yards (or 500 yards in the case of right whales) when in transit, and reduce vessel speeds to below 4 knots.

3.1.2.1 Protected Whales and Other Listed Species Observer Requirements

The dredging and placement areas are in the NMFS Northeast Region 6. All whales, dolphins and porpoises in the Northeast Region 6 are federally protected by the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) and most large whales in the Region are further protected under the Endangered Species Act (ESA). Additionally, the right whale is protected by separate State and Federal regulations that prohibit approach within 500 yards of this species. For the duration of this contract, the Contractor shall be required to provide a dedicated observer to monitor vessel operations to ensure the Endangered Species Act 500-yard approach regulations for right whales and a minimum 100-yard approach for other listed species is complied with during vessel dredging, transit, and ancillary vessel operations in the scheduled work

areas. When approved by the Contracting Officer, the Endangered Species Observer on-duty can serve as the dedicated observer to monitor for the whales and other species as specified; however, this monitoring function shall in no way interfere with their required Endangered Species Observer watch duties as specified. When whales or other listed species are present vessels must, except when precluded by safety requirements, follow the advice of the onboard Dedicated Observer to avoid collision with whales or other listed species. Additionally, regulations of the NMFS to avoid intentional approaches of whales and other listed species when in transit must be followed and shall be posted in a conspicuous place for all workers. An Internet Webpage where NMFS provides guidance for the general public to review certain requirements concerning whale-watching and other listed species, and the vessel operations to occur during encounters with these animals, is located at:

http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/prot_res/readingrm/MMView/nr051999.pdf

The information from this Webpage is provided solely for the Contractor's information. Compliance with the requirements of the Endangered Species Act, Marine Mammal Protection Act, and any Federal or State laws and regulations that supplement these Acts are the responsibility of the Contractor. Failure to comply with these regulations may result in fines or civil penalties of up to $10,000 or criminal penalties of up to $20,000 plus imprisonment and seizure of vessel and other personal property.

3.1.3 Endangered Species Observer Forms, Incident Reports, and Weekly/Final Reports

The Contractor shall prepare and submit a Weekly Report listing all Endangered Species Observer Forms and Incident Reports prepared by the Endangered Species Observer in the covered period to the National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Regional Office, Protected Resources Division (attention: Mary Colligan), One Blackburn Drive, Gloucester, Massachusetts 01930. The Contractor shall include copies of all load observation sheets, record of findings for inspections of drag head and screening devices, and any other data compiled by the Endangered Species Observer in preparing the Endangered Species Observer Forms and Incident Reports during the covered period. This Weekly Report shall be signed and dated by the Endangered Species Observer when complete, with a copy of the report and a documented postal receipt verifying report as sent within seven calendar days of the conclusion of the covered period provided to the Contracting Officer. The Endangered Species Observer Forms and Incident Reports shall be in the National Marine Fisheries Service format provided in the NMFS Incidental Take Statement/Biological Opinion attached to the end of this Section.

a. The Endangered Species Observer shall complete an Endangered Species Observer Form for each loading cycle, whether listed species are present or not, and when turtles are observed during vessel transit. All forms completed by an Endangered Species Observer during his tour of duty shall be listed on the Endangered Species Observer Form and submitted to the Contractor at the end of his tour of duty. At the same time, a copy shall be provided to the Contracting Officer. The Contractor shall record time of receipt of the Endangered Species Observer Form and all associated data in his Daily Report of Operations.

b. The Endangered Species Observer shall complete an Incident Report when turtles, or turtle parts are discovered in the dredging area; when live turtles, dead whole turtles, or turtle parts are taken incidental to the dredging work; or if any live turtle is struck or otherwise

contacted by any Contractor vessel or movement of his plant. The Contractor shall immediately stop movement of the plant or vessel upon discovery of contact and notify the Endangered Species Observer. The Contractor shall take all measures and actions as may be directed by the Endangered Species Observer to search for and verify condition of the turtle encountered, and when injured or killed, recover the encountered turtle. If dead turtles or turtle parts are taken incidental to the work and discovered on the drag head or in the screening devices by the Endangered Species Observer, the location of discovery and remains shall be photographed and nature of the findings fully described in an Incident Report. Disposal of remains shall be as specified below in paragraph "Endangered Species Disposition".

c. The Contractor shall complete and submit a Final Report for the entire work listing all Endangered Species Observer Forms and Incident Reports prepared by the Endangered Species Observer during the entire contract period to the National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Regional Office, Protected Resources Division, One Blackburn Drive, Gloucester, Massachusetts 01930. This Final Report shall be signed and dated by the Endangered Species Observer when complete, with a copy of the report and a documented postal receipt verifying report as sent within twenty calendar days of the conclusion of dredging provided to the Contracting Officer.

3.1.4 Endangered Species Disposition

After completing an Incident Report, the Endangered Species Observer shall notify Carrie Upite (978) 281-9388 or Mary Colligan (978) 281-9116 at NMFS within 24 hours of the take. An Incident Report for sea turtle and shortnose sturgeon take shall also be completed by the observer and sent to Carrie Upite via FAX (978) 281-9394 within 24 hours of the take. The Endangered Species Observer identifying any dead turtle to be a Kemp's Ridley Sea Turtle or any other dead sea turtle species, shortnose sturgeon, turtle parts, or shortnose sturgeon parts taken incidental to the work as identified in the National Marine Fisheries Service Incidental Take Statement shall photograph and place the remains in plastic bags, labeled to show the contract title and location, time, date, specific location taken, load number, and placed in cold storage until final disposition. In addition, the remains of these turtles, shortnose sturgeon, turtle parts, or shortnose sturgeon parts shall be labeled to indicate if the remains appear to be recent or old, based on fresh blood, odor, and length of time estimated to have been dead in water at the time of discovery. Final disposition of these turtles, shortnose sturgeon, turtle parts, or shortnose sturgeon parts will be as directed by the National Marine Fisheries Service; however, final disposition shall not be allowed until identified dead sea turtles, shortnose sturgeon, turtle parts, or shortnose sturgeon parts have been inspected by the Contracting Officer. The Endangered Species Observer identifying any dead turtle to be a Kemp's Ridley Sea Turtle shall determine the location of final disposition of these turtles. All other dead sea turtles, shortnose sturgeon, turtle parts, or shortnose sturgeon parts shall be attached to a weight and disposed overboard in the Dam Neck placement area where the remains will not re-enter the dredging area as directed by the NMFS. Turtles determined to be injured shall be maintained and attended on-board the vessel as directed by the Endangered Species Observer until transported to an approved rehabilitation facility (Virginia Marine Science Museum (757)437-4949 and Virginia Institute of Marine Science (804) 684-7313). All findings and determinations of live turtles by the Endangered Species Observer shall be recorded on the Incident Report and Endangered Species

Observer Form.

3.1.5 Hopper Dredge Special Recording Requirements Submittals

All hopper dredges shall be equipped with recording devices for each drag head that capture real time, drag head elevation, slurry density, and at least two of the following for each respective pump: pump slurry velocity measured at the output side, pump vacuum, or pump RPM. The Contractor shall record continuous real time positioning of the dredge, by plot or electronic means, during the entire dredging cycle including dredging area and disposal area. The recording system shall be capable of capturing data at variable intervals but with a frequency of not greater than every 60 seconds. All data shall be time correlated to a 24 hour clock and the recording system shall include a method of daily evaluation of the data collected. Data shall be furnished to the Contracting Officer for each day's operation on a daily basis. A written Hopper Dredge Special Recording Requirements Plan indicating those methods the Contractor intends to use in order to satisfy these requirements shall be included the Environmental Protection Plan and coordinated with the Contractor's Quality Control Plan.

3.1.6 Hopper Dredge Endangered Species Special Equipment Submittals

The Contractor shall submit drawings and operational specifications of all proposed endangered species drag head deflectors, special screening, and lighting equipment for the review and approval of the Contracting Officer. The Contractor shall submit calculations, drawings and operational specifications to ensure the turtle deflector operates properly for the proposed depths of the channel specified. A written Hopper Dredge Endangered Species Special Equipment Plan indicating those methods the Contractor intends to use in order to satisfy these requirements shall be included the Environmental Protection Plan and coordinated with the Contractor's Quality Control Plan. The Contractor's submittals shall be provided to reflect proper operations in accordance with dragtender instrument readings and the respective printouts verifying dredging activities are performed as specified. Scaled drawings demonstrating the complete geometry of drag arm, drag head, and turtle deflector shall be submitted in hard copy and electronic format (AutoCAD 2000). The following data and calculations shall be provided:

a. Length of drag arm from drag arm pivot point to gimbal.
b. Length of drag arm from gimbal to drag head.
c. Range of gimbal deflection angle (+/- degrees).
d. Expected drag head operating depths.
e. In determining the calculated depth of plowing for the leading edge of deflector using the intended drag arm, drag head, and turtle deflector configuration, the Contractor shall take into consideration the appropriate gimbal angles, approach angles, depths, nominal draft and similar related functions at the expected operating depth.
f. Turtle deflector dimensions.
g. Link lengths.
h. Angle between centerline of drag arm and turtle deflector.
i. Point on the drag head where the depth recording data is obtained.
j. Vertical dimension for drag arm pivot point to vessel draft.
k. Onboard instrumentation shall provide readouts verifying in real-time the proper operation of the turtle deflector. As a minimum, the instrumentation readouts shall verify the procedures employed by the Contractor meet all requirements for proper operation of the turtle deflector, such as the gimbal angle, approach angle, difference in

depth between two points on the drag arm, and multiple depth readings along the dragarm and draghead. Instrumentation readouts shall be approved by the Contracting Officer as acceptable for verification of proper turtle deflector operation in accordance with the Contractor's calculations for depth of plowing of the turtle deflector utilized by the Contractor.

In the event the Contractor brings additional dredging plant to the site or removes his dredge from the project area once approved for use, the same procedures for approval as specified shall apply for the plant prior to use on the work. The Contractor shall provide the following special equipment on all hopper dredges used on this work:

a. Drag Head Deflectors

All hopper dredge drag heads shall be equipped with rigid sea turtle deflectors that are rigidly attached. Dredging shall not be performed without a turtle deflector device that has been approved by the Contracting Officer. The turtle deflector device shall be maintained in operational condition for the entire dredging operation.

(1) Deflector Design

The leading vee-shaped portion of the deflector shall have an included angle of less than 90 degrees. Internal reinforcement shall be installed in the deflector to prevent structural failure of the device. The leading edge of the deflector shall be designed to have a plowing effect of at least 6 inch depth when the drag head is being operated. Appropriate instrumentation or indicator shall be used and kept in proper calibration to insure the critical "approach angle" is maintained at all times the pumps are active. If adjustable depth deflectors are installed, they shall be rigidly attached to the drag head using either a hinged aft attachment point or an aft trunnion attachment point in association with an adjustable pin front attachment point or cable front attachment point with a stop set to obtain the 6 inch plowing effect. This arrangement allows fine-tuning the 6 inch plowing effect for varying depths. After the deflector is properly adjusted there shall be no openings between the deflector and the drag head that are more than 4 inch by 4 inch.

(2) Screening Equipment

The Contractor shall install baskets or screening over each respective hopper inflow with no openings greater than 4 inch x 4 inch. The method selected shall depend on the construction of the dredge used and shall be approved by the Contracting Officer prior to commencement of dredging. The screening shall provide 100% screening of the hopper inflow. The screens and baskets shall be maintained in operational condition and shall remain in place throughout the performance of the work.

(3) Lighting Equipment

The areas where screens or gratings are installed shall be provided with suitable lighting to allow safe observations of the screen devices during periods of darkness or reduced visibility and shall be approved by the Contracting Officer. Safe access shall be provided to the inflow baskets or screens to allow the

observer to inspect for turtles, turtle parts or damage.

(4) Paint Test Inspection of Drag head

The Contractor shall perform paint tests to ensure turtle deflector equipment is operating properly. Testing shall be performed as a minimum on a weekly basis and immediately following a failed paint test, turtle take incident, or following equipment modifications (drag heads, turtle deflector, link modifications, and other parts of the dredging apparatus). Additionally, the Government reserves the right to direct paint tests at any time to verify compliance with specified requirements. Photographic documentation of deflector paint test results shall be provided when testing is performed in the absence of the Contracting Officer. General procedures for paint test are as follows:

Equipment Preparation:

a. Vertical markings shall be placed on the entire length of the abrasive resistant doubler plate.

b. Fluorescent orange paint shall be used to paint vertical strips the entire height of the abrasive resistant doubler plate with six inch spacing on center for the entire length of the deflector.

Test Procedure:

a. Deflector shall have a minimum plow depth of six inches measured vertically.

b. Deflector shall be in contact with channel bottom for a period of two to three minutes for coarse sediments and four to six minutes for fine sediments then promptly inspected.

Test Results:

a. A paint test shall receive a pass if paint strips indicate wear from sediment scour for a minimum height of six inches for the leading edge of the deflector.

Test Documentation:

a. The Contractor shall document the following paint test information and submit with CQC signature verifying results:

* Load number
* Time of paint test and date
* Duration of paint test
* Material type
* Observed plow depth of the leading edge of the deflector during the paint test
*Gimbal angle during paint test
*Test result: pass/fail
*Failed test: document corrective action taken for re-test.
*Photo documentation of deflector paint test results.

3.1.7 Hopper Dredge Special Operating Procedures

The Contractor shall operate the hopper dredge to minimize the possibility

of taking sea turtles. When initiating dredging, the drag head shall be placed on the bottom during priming of the suction pump. If the drag head or drag arm becomes clogged during dredging activity, the pump shall be shut down, the drag arm raised, and the drag head or drag arm flushed out by trailing the drag arm along side the ship. If plugging conditions persist, the drag head shall be placed on deck and sufficient numbers of water ports opened on the drag head to prevent future plugging. Upon completion of a dredge track line, the drag tender shall coordinate his work practice to:

1) throttle back on the RPMs of the suction pump engine to an idling speed (generally less than 100 RPMs) prior to raising the drag head off the bottom, so that no flow of material is coming through the pipe into the dredge hopper. Before the drag head is raised, the vacuum gauge on the pipe should read zero, so that no suction exists in the drag arm or drag head, and no suction force exists that can impinge a turtle on the drag head grate;

2) hold the drag head firmly on the bottom with no flow conditions for approximately 10 to 15 seconds before raising the drag head, then, raise the drag head quickly off the bottom and up to a mid-water column level in a manner to further reduce the potential for any adverse interaction with nearby turtles;

3) re-orient the dredge quickly to the next dredge line; and

4) re-position the drag head firmly on the bottom prior to bringing the dredge pump to normal pumping speed and re-starting dredging activity.

The Contractor shall not raise the drag head off the bottom to increase suction velocities. The primary adjustment for providing additional mixing water to the suction line shall be through water ports. To ensure that suction velocities do not drop below appropriate levels, the Contractor's personnel shall monitor production meters throughout the loading cycle and adjust primarily the number and opening sizes of water ports. Water port openings on top of the drag head, or on raised stand pipes above the drag head, shall be screened before they are utilized on the dredging project. If a dredge section includes sandy shoals on one end of a tract line and mud sediments on the other end of the tract line, the Contractor shall adjust the equipment to eliminate drag head pick-ups to clear the suction line.

-- End of Section --

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NATIONAL MARINE FISHERIES SERVICE
NORTHEAST REGION
One Blackburn Drive
Gloucester, MA 01930-2298

APR 25 2002

Colonel David L. Hansen
District Engineer
Department of the Army
Norfolk District, Corps of Engineers
Fort Norfolk, 803 Front Street
Norfolk, Virginia 23510-1096

Dear Colonel Hansen:

Enclosed is the National Marine Fisheries Service's (NMFS) biological opinion on the impacts of the Army Corps of Engineers (ACOE) Norfolk District's dredging in the Thimble Shoal Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel on threatened and endangered species under NMFS' jurisdiction. This biological opinion was prepared pursuant to the interagency consultation requirements of Section (7)(a)(2) of the Endangered Species Act.

The ACOE proposes to initiate the current deepening project as early as June, 2002 and construction of the entire project may take as long as four years to complete. Maintenance dredging of the Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels will occur approximately every two years. The existing biological opinion for Thimble Shoal Channel does not address deepening activities or dredging in the Atlantic Ocean Channel. However, an amendment was issued on March 30, 2001 which stated that the potential impacts of dredging in the Atlantic Ocean Channel on listed species are similar to those expected in Thimble Shoal Channel. The Virginia Beach Hurricane Protection Project biological opinion does not cover maintenance dredging, and the time frame for the completion of the project was one to two calendar years. Therefore, as a result of conversations between ACOE and NMFS, it was determined that a single biological opinion was needed to address all dredging activities (both deepening and maintenance) in the Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels.

This biological opinion is based on information provided in the NMFS February 7, 2001 biological opinion on maintenance dredging in the Thimble Shoal Federal Navigation Channel, the September 6, 2001 biological opinion that assessed dredging operations in the Thimble Shoal Channel and the Atlantic Ocean Channel as related to the Virginia Beach Hurricane Protection Project, correspondence with Mr. Craig Seltzer and Ms. Betty Grey Waring, ACOE, and other sources of information. It has been determined by NMFS that the dredging projects in the Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels may adversely affect, but are not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of listed species under NMFS' jurisdiction.

The enclosed biological opinion provides an Incidental Take Statement (ITS) for threatened and endangered sea turtles, as well as reasonable and prudent measures and terms and conditions necessary for ACOE to minimize impacts to these species. The anticipated level of take for dredging in Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels was determined based upon the greatest estimated amount of material to be dredged during deepening operations and the maximum and minimum amounts to be dredged in both channels during maintenance

operations:

- During any given year, if the amount of dredged material to be removed is less than or equal to 5 million cy, NMFS anticipates that dredging in the two channels may result in the observed take of 18 loggerhead and 4 Kemp's ridley sea turtles.

- During any given year, if the amount of dredged material to be removed is less than or equal to 3 million cy, NMFS anticipates that dredging operations in the two channels may result in the observed take of 10 loggerhead and 2 Kemp's ridley sea turtles.

- During any given year, if the amount of dredged material to be removed is less than or equal to 1 million cy, NMFS anticipates that dredging operations in the two channels may result in the observed take of 4 loggerhead and 1 Kemp's ridley sea turtle.

The incidental level of turtle take is anticipated to be fresh dead. No incidental take for hawksbill or leatherback sea turtles is anticipated as these species are relatively unlikely to be prevalent in the action area and interactions with the dredge are expected to be low.

NMFS also expects that the deepening operations and maintenance dredging may take an additional unquantifiable number of previously dead sea turtle parts. A sea turtle take may not be considered related to dredge operations and count towards the above referenced anticipated take level if the condition of the specimen is in a severely decomposed or advanced state of decay and if the specimen is a turtle part. Provided that NMFS concurs with the ACOE's determination regarding the stage of decomposition, condition of the specimen, and likely cause of mortality, the take will not be attributed to the incidental take level for this project.

Additionally, NMFS also expects that relocation trawling in either of the channels may take an additional unquantifiable number of live loggerhead and Kemp's ridley sea turtles. As stated in the reasonable and prudent measures and terms and conditions of the Incidental Take Statement, relocation trawling may occur under certain circumstances prior to dredging. This trawling will result in sea turtle takes, but these takes are not expected to be lethal due to the short duration of the tow times (15 to 30 minutes per tow). While relocating sea turtles may invoke a degree of stress on the animals, the level of stress should be minimized by an expedited and proper handling time. Additionally, the capture of a live turtle in a trawl is likely less harmful to the species as compared to a sea turtle being entrained in a dredge draghead. Thus, an unquantifiable number of live loggerhead and Kemp's ridley sea turtles are anticipated to be taken during any relocation trawling deemed necessary during dredging in both channels.

The distribution of shortnose sturgeon in Virginia waters is relatively unknown and the furthest recorded capture of shortnose sturgeon is in the mouth of the York River. While NMFS must employ a conservative approach to management and consider the species to be in the area, it is difficult to determine the abundance of this species in the action area and how the proposed project will impact shortnose sturgeon. Due to the lack of information about distribution in Virginia waters and the low likelihood that the dredge activities will interact with shortnose sturgeon, no incidental take will be designated for shortnose sturgeon at this time. No incidental take of any listed marine mammal is anticipated for this project.

The NMFS expects ACOE to implement the reasonable and prudent measures and terms and conditions as outlined in the ITS. The measures of the ITS are non-discretionary and must be undertaken by ACOE for the incidental take exemption to apply. For example, if hopper dredging is conducted from April 1 through November 30, dredges must have trained NMFS-approved observers on board, be equipped with rigid deflector dragheads, and follow designated equipment specifications.

This biological opinion concludes consultation for the dredging projects in the Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels. Reinitiation of this consultation is required if: (1) the amount or extent of taking specified in the ITS is exceeded; (2) new information reveals effects of these actions that may affect listed species or critical habitat in a manner or to an extent not previously considered; (3) project activities are subsequently modified in a manner that causes an effect to the listed species that was not considered in this biological opinion; or (4) a new species is listed or critical habitat designated that may be affected by the identified actions. As identified in the biological opinion, NMFS Northeast Regional staff should be contacted immediately should an interaction with a sea turtle occur.

For further information regarding any consultation requirements, please contact Mary Colligan, Assistant Regional Administrator for Protected Resources, NMFS Northeast Regional Office, at (978) 281-9116. I look forward to continued cooperation with ACOE during future Section 7 consultations.

Sincerely,

Patricia A. Kurkul
Regional Administrator

Enclosure

cc: ACOE - Seltzer, Waring
F/NER3 - Colligan
F/NER-OXF - Nichols
F/PR - Williams
GCNE - Williams

File Code: 1514-05 (A) ACOE - Thimble Shoal/Atlantic Ocean Channels

NATIONAL MARINE FISHERIES SERVICE
ENDANGERED SPECIES ACT SECTION 7 CONSULTATION
BIOLOGICAL OPINION

Agency: Army Corps of Engineers, Norfolk District

Activity: Consultation on Dredging in the Thimble Shoal Federal Navigation Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel

Conducted by: National Marine Fisheries Service
Northeast Regional Office

Date Issued: April 25, 2002

Approved by: Patricia A. Kurkul

This constitutes the National Marine Fisheries Service's (NMFS) biological opinion on the effects of the Army Corps of Engineers (ACOE) Norfolk District's dredging projects in Thimble Shoal Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel on threatened and endangered species in accordance with Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act (ESA) of 1973, as amended (16 U.S.C. 1531 et seq.). This biological opinion is based on information provided in the NMFS February 7, 2001 biological opinion on maintenance dredging in the Thimble Shoal Federal Navigation Channel, the September 6, 2001 biological opinion that assessed dredging operations in the Thimble Shoal Channel and the Atlantic Ocean Channel as related to the Virginia Beach Hurricane Protection Project, correspondence with Mr. Craig Seltzer and Ms. Betty Grey Waring, ACOE, and other sources of information. A complete administrative record of this consultation is on file at the NMFS Northeast Regional Office. Formal consultation was initiated on December 4, 2001.

CONSULTATION HISTORY

This biological opinion assesses the impacts of the dredging in the Thimble Shoal Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel. This dredging includes the proposed deepening of the Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels and the anticipated maintenance dredging in the Thimble Shoal Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel. The deepening of the Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels is proposed as part of the Norfolk Harbor and Channels 50-foot inbound channel project. The ACOE and NMFS have previously considered the impacts of Thimble Shoal maintenance dredging on threatened and endangered species, including marine mammals, sea turtles, and shortnose sturgeon. Previous consultations regarding maintenance dredging in the Thimble Shoal Channel (April 16, 1984; December 28, 1984; March 14, 1985; March 20, 1985; March 10, 1986) were concluded informally based on dredging schedules which were proposed during months when sea turtles were not likely to be present. Based on existing information, NMFS concluded that these dredging events were not likely to adversely affect listed species. Subsequently, the ACOE has conducted deepening and periodic maintenance dredging of the Thimble Shoal Channel during winter months

without incident. However, on December 15, 1998, the ACOE informed NMFS that the 1999 Thimble Shoal maintenance dredging was delayed due to funding and would be conducted from July to September, during a period when turtles may be migrating out of the Chesapeake Bay. On February 8, 1999, NMFS informed ACOE that this dredging was likely to adversely affect listed sea turtles in the lower Chesapeake Bay and formal consultation was necessary. The ACOE submitted the BA, Biological Assessment of Potential Impacts to Endangered and Threatened Species of Sea Turtles and Whales in the Vicinity of Thimble Shoal Channel, Chesapeake Bay, Virginia, to NMFS on April 14, 1999.

The 1999 maintenance dredging cycle actually began in December 1999. Again, due to funding constraints, dredging had to be curtailed in January 2000. Once the budget process was finalized, the ACOE resumed dredging in late July 2000 in order to remove all of the shoaled sediment for that dredging cycle.

After the effects of the action were analyzed but before the consultation process was complete, two loggerheads and one unidentified turtle were incidentally taken during maintenance dredging operations in Thimble Shoal Channel. One unidentified turtle was taken on July 24, 2000, one loggerhead was taken on August 22, 2000, and another loggerhead was recovered in three parts on August 25 and August 27, 2000. Since the final biological opinion had not yet been signed, it was imperative to re-assess the impacts of the dredging project in light of the take of these three turtles. On September 19, 2000, NMFS informed Betty Grey Waring of this situation in a phone conversation. NMFS issued the final biological opinion on maintenance dredging in the Thimble Shoal Federal Navigation Channel and associated ocean disposal on February 7, 2001. NMFS' biological opinion concluded that the maintenance dredging operations at Thimble Shoal Channel, in conjunction with ocean placement, may adversely affect, but are not likely to jeopardize, the continued existence of the right, humpback, or fin whale; loggerhead, leatherback, Kemp's ridley, green, or hawksbill sea turtle; or shortnose sturgeon.

On March 30, 2001, the ACOE informed NMFS that an upcoming hurricane protection project at Virginia Beach, Virginia would require dredging in the Thimble Shoal Channel, as well as in the Atlantic Ocean Channel. The borrow site was originally intended to be a portion of the Thimble Shoal Channel, but it was discovered that the Thimble Shoal Channel alone would not provide the required volume of sand. The ACOE stated that the required sand for the beach berm work would need to be supplemented by sand derived from several areas within the Atlantic Ocean Channel, lying approximately 3-4 miles east of the Thimble Shoal Channel. The project was to be conducted from the end of May through November 2001. It was determined that the proposed dredging in the Thimble Shoal Channel for the Virginia Beach project would fall within the scope of the February 7, 2001 biological opinion on maintenance dredging, as the location and impacts to the species could be considered the same. On May 30, 2001, NMFS informed the ACOE that the potential impacts of dredging in the Atlantic Ocean Channel

on listed species would be the same as those in Thimble Shoal Channel due to the nature of the dredging and location of the project. All of the reasonable and prudent measures and terms and conditions of the Incidental Take Statement in the February 2001 biological opinion applied equally to the dredging at the Atlantic Ocean Channel. The level of anticipated take authorized in the previous biological opinion did not change due to the additional dredging in the Atlantic Ocean Channel. A NMFS letter dated May 30, 2001, served as an amendment to the February 2001 biological opinion to cover dredging in the Atlantic Ocean channel for the 2001 Virginia Beach Hurricane Protection project.

On August 7 and 8, 2001, two loggerheads were taken during dredging in the Thimble Shoal Channel for the Virginia Beach project. After contacting NMFS, the ACOE coordinated with Glynn Banks of the ACOE Engineer Research and Development Center to ensure that Thimble Shoal dredging operations were employing appropriate sea turtle protection measures. Mr. Banks was able to observe the operations, ensure all reasonable and prudent measures were being implemented, and suggest additional measures to minimize potential sea turtle takes. On August 15, 2001, the ACOE sent NMFS a letter indicating as such and requesting reinitiation of consultation pursuant to Section 7 of the ESA. Due to the take of two loggerhead turtles in hopper dredging activities, the ACOE also requested that the incidental take limit for Thimble Shoal Channel be increased from four loggerhead sea turtles (as authorized in the Incidental Take Statement accompanying the February 7, 2001 biological opinion) to ten loggerhead sea turtles. In this letter, it was apparent that the dredging associated with the Virginia Beach project was much larger in scope than the Thimble Shoal Channel maintenance dredging on which NMFS previously consulted.

After receiving the ACOE's letter dated August 15, 2001, there were an additional seven incidents of sea turtles and/or turtle parts observed taken during Thimble Shoal Channel hopper dredging. Thus, from August 7 to August 28, there were a total of nine days in which turtles were taken. Five of the incidentally captured turtles were considered to be fresh dead turtles, and the remaining incidents involved decomposed turtle flippers and/or carapace parts. As the dredging associated with the Virginia Beach project was previously determined to fall within the scope of the February 2001 Thimble Shoal maintenance dredging biological opinion, and the anticipated incidental take level for this project was determined to be four loggerhead and one Kemp's ridley sea turtle, the incidental take level was exceeded.

In a letter dated August 30, 2001, NMFS concurred with ACOE's request to reinitiate consultation on dredging in Thimble Shoal Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel as related to the Virginia Beach project. The September 6, 2001 biological opinion assessed dredging in the Atlantic Ocean Channel and Thimble Shoal Channel (up to authorized depths of 55 feet) to acquire an additional 2.7 million cubic yards of sand for the Virginia Beach Hurricane Protection project. The NMFS' biological opinion again concluded that the dredging operations at Thimble Shoal Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel, as related to the Virginia Beach

Hurricane Protection project, may adversely affect, but are not likely to jeopardize, the continued existence of the threatened and endangered species mentioned previously. Relocation trawling was included in the biological opinion as a term and condition of the reasonable and prudent measures to minimize impacts of incidental take of sea turtles. Relocation trawling is performed prior to hopper dredging in order to minimize the number of turtles taken in hopper dredges by displacing sea turtles that may be in the dredging channel. As of October 4, 2001, 9 loggerhead turtles and 3 Kemp's ridleys were captured and relocated during trawling operations.

On September 26, 2001, a decomposed piece of an unknown turtle's plastron was found in the overflow screening basket, and on October 23, a carapace piece from an unknown species of turtle was found in the overflow screening basket. A piece of Kemp's ridley carapace was recovered from the inflow screening basket on November 4. On November 11, two separate incidents were documented at different times, including a portion of a flipper and two ribs without attached tissue from an unknown species of turtle, and a portion of the plastron (with no tissue) from an unknown species of turtle. On November 20, two carapace fragments and associated tissue from a fresh loggerhead were taken. These takes resulted in a total of 15 incidents when turtles and/or turtle parts were taken in association with dredging in Thimble Shoal Channel.

On December 4, 2001, the ACOE informed NMFS that deepening of the Norfolk Harbor and Channels 50-foot inbound channel is necessary. This proposed project will require the removal of a total of up to 7.5 million cubic yards of material. Dredging of approximately 2.5 million cubic yards from the inner harbor channels will likely be performed using a hydraulic pipeline dredge, placing the dredge material in a confined upland site. Dredging in the outer harbor channels will require the removal of up to 5 million cubic yards of material from the Thimble Shoal Channel and the Atlantic Ocean Channel to depths of approximately 50-55 feet with the dredged material placement in the Dam Neck Ocean Site. The Virginia Beach Hurricane Protection Project removed only beach quality sand from the two channels and did not remove all the shoaled areas. Therefore, there is an additional quantity of material that needs to be dredged in order to attain authorized project depths. The Norfolk Harbor and Channels project is authorized to 55 feet (65 feet in the Atlantic Ocean Channel). The project is proposed to begin in June 2002 and construction of the entire project is estimated to take as long as four years to complete. The existing biological opinion for Thimble Shoal Channel does not address deepening activities or dredging in the Atlantic Ocean Channel. However, an amendment was issued on March 30, 2001 which stated that the potential impacts of dredging in the Atlantic Ocean Channel on listed species are similar to those expected in Thimble Shoal Channel. The Virginia Beach Hurricane Protection Project biological opinion does not cover maintenance dredging, and the time frame for the completion of the project was one to two calendar years. Therefore, as a result of conversations between ACOE and NMFS, it was determined that a single biological opinion was needed to address all

dredging activities (both deepening and maintenance) in the Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels. In a letter dated January 4, 2001, NMFS responded to ACOE's request for reinitiation and advised the ACOE that no irreversible or irretrievable commitment of resources should be made that would prevent the NMFS from proposing or implementing any reasonable and prudent alternatives to avoid jeopardizing endangered or threatened species.

DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPOSED ACTION

The ACOE proposes to deepen the Norfolk Harbor and Channels 50-foot inbound Channel with the related removal of up to 7.5 million cubic yards from the Inner Harbor, Thimble Shoal, and Atlantic Ocean Channels; perform maintenance dredging of the Thimble Shoal Channel with up to two million cubic yards removed in any given year; and perform future maintenance dredging of the Atlantic Ocean Channel with up to one million cubic yards removed in any given year. Dredged material for both the maintenance and deepening projects will be placed at the Dam Neck Ocean Site. If warranted by ACOE, beach quality sand dredged from the Channels may be deposited as part of a beach renourishment activity.

Deepening of Norfolk Harbor and Channels
Dredging of the Norfolk Harbor and Channels 50-foot inbound project (inner harbor channels) will likely be performed using a hydraulic pipeline dredge. The dredged material will be placed at the Craney Island Dredged Material Management Area. The NMFS has previously determined that the use of mechanical and hydraulic dredging equipment other than hopper dredges is not expected to result in direct or indirect effects to sea turtles or marine mammals. Shortnose sturgeon are not likely to be present in the action area. While they have been previously taken in hydraulic dredging, due to the location of the proposed project, shortnose sturgeon are unlikely to be adversely affected by the deepening project. As such, the deepening of the inner harbor channels will not adversely affect any listed species in the action area, and this portion of the proposed project will not be further assessed.

The proposed deepening project for the Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels (outer harbor channels) is similar to the Virginia Beach Hurricane Protection project covered in the NMFS September 2001 biological opinion in that dredging will take place within the boundaries of the authorized Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels to similar depths (50-55 feet) previously used to obtain sand for Virginia Beach. However, the Virginia Beach project only removed beach quality sand from these channels and did not remove all of the shoaled areas. Therefore, an additional 5 million cubic yards will need to be removed to deepen these inbound channels to an interim depth of 50 plus feet.

Maintenance Dredging
Maintenance dredging of the Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels will occur approximately every two years. Whenever possible, dredging

will be conducted during winter months to avoid interactions with sea turtles. However, due to unforeseen circumstances and the potential delays in the federal budget process, dredging may need to be conducted during the warmer months when sea turtles are present in Virginia waters. This biological opinion addresses the impacts of dredging during this April 1 to November 30 period on listed species. Dredging during the remainder of the year is not likely to adversely affect turtles.

As engineered, the Thimble Shoal channel is 55 feet deep, 1,000 feet wide, and 13.4 miles long. During maintenance dredging, material will only be removed from discrete areas that have shoaled within the channel. Therefore, the amount of material to be removed from the channel varies for each dredging cycle.

The Atlantic Ocean Channel is an authorized Federal navigation channel as part of the Norfolk Harbor and Channels, Virginia and is located 3-4 miles east of the Thimble Shoal Channel. This channel is maintained at a depth of 55 feet, is 1,300 feet wide, and 11 miles long. It has not required dredging to date because the depths are adequate for current navigation purposes.

The type of dredge that will be used for both the deepening operations and the maintenance of the Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels is a hopper dredge. The ACOE has indicated that this type of dredge was chosen due to its ability to operate in strong currents and for maneuvering in rough seas. Speed during dredging will range from 1-7 knots.

The ACOE will require its contractor to comply with the Endangered Species Protection protocol, which has been developed in consultation with NMFS for use during dredging. This protocol is attached in Appendix B and summarized below:

- Whenever possible, dredging will be confined to the winter months.
- Contractor will develop a written operational plan to minimize turtle takes and whale collisions.
- Contractor will inform all dredge personnel of the possible presence of endangered species. A bridge watch will be conducted for whales at all times and for sea turtles from April 1 - November 30. Action will be taken to avoid collisions.
- NMFS-approved observers will be on board when dredging occurs during the April 1 - November 30 period. Observers will work a total of 12 hours per day in shifts of 6 hours on, 6 hours off, resulting in 50% observer coverage during the project period. Observer findings will be recorded after each shift and reported weekly. Takes of endangered species will be reported immediately. A final report on the project will be submitted within 20 days of the end of dredging.
- Hopper dredge dragheads will be equipped with a rigid sea turtle deflector approved by the ACOE.

- Screening baskets with openings of 4 inches or less will be installed over each hopper inflow. Screens and lighting will be approved by the ACOE Contracting officer for use on hopper dredges during endangered species watches.
- Control of suction in the various phases of hopper dredge operations will be conducted in a manner designed to minimize potential for entrainment of listed species at all times.

Disposal of Dredged Material
The dredge spoils will typically be deposited at the Dam Neck site, which was designated by the EPA on March 31, 1988 (53 FR 10382). This disposal site covers 9 square miles and has an average depth of 40 feet. The EPA has determined that the dredged material from the channels is suitable for ocean disposal at the Dam Neck site. If warranted by the ACOE, beach quality sand from the dredging operations in Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels may be used for beach renourishment.

A 300-foot hopper dredge will typically transport dredged material to the Dam Neck site. During transport, this dredge will be traveling at approximately 8 knots. The amount of material removed during maintenance dredging in the Thimble Shoal Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel will be up to 2,000,000 cubic yards and 1,000,000 cubic yards, respectively. During the deepening project, the amount of material removed from the outer harbor channels will be up to 5,000,000 cubic yards. The dredge will make approximately 1650 round trips to the disposal site for this project. This number is contingent upon the size of the dredge and the total amount of material dredged. Future maintenance dredging may involve between 300 and 800 round trips, depending on the amount of shoaled sediment and the dredging in a particular maintenance cycle. Trips will cover approximately 4-25 miles each way from the channels to the disposal site.

Action Area
The action area for this consultation includes several areas near the mouth of the Chesapeake Bay. Specific project actions will take place in the Thimble Shoal Federal Navigation Channel (Appendix A), the Atlantic Ocean Channel, the Dam Neck Disposal Site, and the waters between and immediately adjacent to these areas.

STATUS OF AFFECTED SPECIES

NMFS has determined that the action being considered in this biological opinion may affect the following species provided protection under the ESA.

Cetaceans

Right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*)	Endangered
Humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*)	Endangered
Fin whale (*Balaenoptera physalus*)	Endangered

Sea Turtles

Loggerhead sea turtle (*Caretta caretta*)	Threatened

Leatherback sea turtle (*Dermochelys coriacea*)	Endangered
Kemp's ridley sea turtle (*Lepidochelys kempi*)	Endangered
Green sea turtle (*Chelonia mydas*[1])	Endangered/Threatened
Hawksbill sea turtle (*Eretmochelys imbricata*)	Endangered

Fish

Shortnose sturgeon (*Acipenser brevirostrum*)	Endangered

This section will focus on the status of the various species within the action area, summarizing information necessary to establish the environmental baseline and to assess the effects of the proposed action. Background information on the range-wide status of these species and a description of critical habitat can be found in a number of published documents including recent shortnose sturgeon (NMFS 1996) and sea turtle (NMFS and USFWS 1995, USFWS 1997) status reviews, Recovery Plans for the humpback whale (NMFS 1991a), right whale (NMFS 1991b), fin and sei whale (NMFS 1998a), shortnose sturgeon (NMFS 1998b), loggerhead sea turtle (NMFS and USFWS 1991) and leatherback sea turtle (NMFS and USFWS 1992), and the 2000 Marine Mammal Stock Assessment Report (Waring et al. 2001).

Right Whale

Right whales are present in the Northeast Shelf Ecosystem throughout most months of the year, but are most abundant in nearshore waters between February and June, with concentrations observed in the critical habitat areas. On June 3, 1994, NMFS designated three areas off the East Coast as right whale critical habitat (59 FR 28793); none of these areas overlap the action area for this consultation. However, the species uses mid-Atlantic waters as a migratory pathway from the winter calving grounds off the coast of Florida to spring and summer nursery/feeding areas in the Gulf of Maine.

In the last several years, significant efforts have been made to determine the current status and trends of this very small population and to make valid recommendations on recovery requirements. Based on data from 1987 through 1992, Knowlton et al. (1994) concluded that the right whale population was growing at a net annual rate of 2.5 percent (CV=0.12). However, new information and modeling suggests that the population is not growing and may be declining. Using data on reproduction and survival through 1996, Caswell et al. (1999) determined that the right whale population was declining at a rate of 2.4 percent per year. One model suggested that the right whale population has undergone a five-fold increase in mortality rate in less than one generation. According to Caswell et al. (1999), if the mortality rate as of 1996 does not decrease and the population performance does not improve, extinction could occur within 100 years

---

1 Pursuant to NMFS regulations at 50 CFR 227.71, the prohibitions of Section 9 of the Endangered Species Act apply to all green turtles, whether endangered or threatened.

and would be certain within 400 years. The mean time to extinction was calculated to be 191 years.

Recognizing the precarious status of the right whale, the continued threats in its coastal habitat throughout its range, and the uncertainty surrounding the attempts to characterize population trends, the International Whaling Commission (IWC) held a special meeting of its Scientific Committee in March 1998 to conduct a comprehensive assessment of right whales worldwide. At the 1998 IWC workshop, an inter-sessional Steering Group was established to review an early draft of Caswell et al. (1999) and several on-going assessment efforts to identify the best and most current scientific information on population status and trends. The IWC Scientific Committee met in May 1999 to discuss the Steering Group's report. Committee members noted that there were several potential negative biases in Caswell et al. (1999) but agreed that the results of the study should be considered in management actions. For the purposes of this biological opinion, NMFS will continue to adopt the risk averse assumption that the northern right whale population is declining.

Anthropogenic impacts
The major known sources of anthropogenic mortality and injury of right whales include entanglement in commercial fishing gear and ship strikes. Right whales may also be adversely affected by habitat degradation, habitat exclusion, acoustic trauma, harassment, or reduction in prey resources due to trophic effects resulting from a variety of activities.

Based on photographs of catalogued animals from 1959 and 1989, Kraus (1990) estimated that 57% of right whales exhibited scars from entanglement and 7% from ship strikes (propeller injuries). Using data from 1935 through 1995, Hamilton et al. (1998) found that an estimated 61.6% of right whales exhibit injuries caused by entanglement, and 6.4% exhibit signs of injury from vessel strikes. In addition, several animals have apparently been entangled on more than one occasion. Some right whales that have been entangled were subsequently involved in ship strikes. These scarring percentages are primarily based on sightings of free-swimming animals that initially survive the impact, which resulted in the scar. Because some animals may drown or be killed immediately, the actual number of interactions may be slightly higher.

Many of the reports of mortality cannot be attributed to a particular source. The following injury/mortality events are those reported from 1996 to the present for which source was determined. These numbers should be viewed as absolute minimum numbers. The total number of mortalities and injuries cannot be estimated but is believed to be higher since it is unlikely that all carcasses will be observed. One right whale mortality resulting from a ship strike was recorded in 1996, and another whale that had become entangled in late 1995 was killed by a ship in 1996. In 1997, one ship strike mortality was reported from the Bay of Fundy, and eight entanglements were reported. Two adult female right whales were discovered in a weir off Grand

Manan Island in the Bay of Fundy in July 1998, and were released two days later. Also in July 1998, gear was removed from around the tail stock of a right whale, which was originally seen entangled in the Bay of Fundy in August 1997. This same whale, apparently debilitated from the earlier entanglement, became entangled in lobster pot gear twice in one week in Cape Cod Bay in September 1998. On August 15, 1998, a right whale was observed entangled in the Gulf of St. Lawrence; the animal apparently freed itself of most of the gear, but some gear may remain. Two right whale mortalities were documented for 1999; one attributed to a ship strike, and the second to a fishing gear entanglement. The first animal was found floating near Truro, Massachusetts, and was towed to the beach for necropsy. Evidence of pre-mortem ship strike injuries and disease were found, and scientists have determined that the whale died from complications of these injuries. In addition to these known mortalities, there were at least five new right whale entanglements in 1999. In 2000, a total of five confirmed North Atlantic right whale entanglements were sighted in the Gulf of Maine (both in US and Canada). One whale was completely disentangled, one whale was not a candidate for rescue due to its minor entanglement and one whale remained entangled and required further assessment. The disentanglement team was unable to respond to two entangled North Atlantic right whales. One was an unidentified North Atlantic right whale, sighted and lost by aerial survey in the Bay of Fundy, Canada. The other was sighted by aerial survey too far offshore on two occasions. It was determined that this whale had a minor entanglement.

A right whale calf is known to have died in late-January 2001, though the reasons for its death are unclear, as stranding personnel were unable to recover the carcass. A second confirmed right whale death in 2001 was a young male found washed up on the beach near Assateague Island, VA. A final report of the subsequent examination has not yet been released but several deep cuts consistent with injuries resulting from a boat's propeller were on the carcass. According to field reports, there was no indication that entanglement in fishing gear contributed to the death. On June 8, 2001, aircraft survey observers sighted a northern right whale (#1102) severely entangled in fishing gear about 80 miles off Massachusetts. The entangled whale, an adult male, had a single polypropylene line, estimated at ¾ inch, wrapped over its upper jaw. The line was cinched tight and was cutting into the tissue causing an infected wound. Several attempts were made to disentangle the whale. However, due to the challenging conditions, rescue efforts were unsuccessful, and on September 20, 2001, the satellite telemetry signal was lost. Despite the fact that the rescue efforts proved unsuccessful, significant information on right whales and procedures for safely sedating a large whale was obtained and can be used in future disentanglement endeavors.

Humpback Whale

Humpback whales calve and mate in the Caribbean and migrate to feeding areas in the northwestern Atlantic during the summer months. Six separate feeding areas are utilized in northern waters after their return (Waring et al. 1999). They feed on a number of species of

small schooling fishes, particularly sand lance and Atlantic herring, by targeting fish schools and filtering large amounts of water for the associated prey. Humpback whales have also been observed feeding on krill (Wynne and Schwartz 1999).

Humpback whales use the mid-Atlantic as a migratory pathway, but it may also be an important feeding area for juveniles. Since 1989, observations of juvenile humpbacks in the mid-Atlantic have been increasing during the winter months, peaking from January through March (Swingle et al. 1993). Biologists theorize that non-reproductive animals may be establishing a winter feeding range in the mid-Atlantic since they are not participating in reproductive behavior in the Caribbean. .

New information has become available on the status and trends of the humpback whale population in the North Atlantic. Although current and maximum net productivity rates are unknown at this time, the population is apparently increasing. It has not yet been determined whether this increase is uniform across all six feeding stocks (Waring et al. 1999). The rate of increase has been estimated at 9.0% (CV=0.25) by Katona and Beard (1990), while a 6.5% rate was reported for the Gulf of Maine by Barlow and Clapham (1997) using data through 1991. The rate reported by Barlow and Clapham (1997) may roughly approximate the rate of increase for the portion of the population within the action area. The best estimate of abundance for the North Atlantic humpback whale population is 10,600 animals (CV=0.067; Smith et al. 1999) while the minimum population estimate used for NMFS management purposes is 10,019 animals (CV=0.067, Waring et al. 1999).

Anthropogenic impacts

The major known sources of anthropogenic mortality and injury of humpback whales include entanglement in commercial fishing gear and ship strikes. Humpback whales may also be adversely affected by habitat degradation, habitat exclusion, acoustic trauma, harassment, or reduction in prey resources due to trophic effects resulting from a variety of activities including the operation of commercial fisheries. Based on photographs of the caudal peduncle of humpback whales, Robbins and Mattila (1999) estimated that at least 48% -- and possibly as many as 78% -- of animals in the Gulf of Maine exhibit scarring caused by entanglement. Several animals have apparently been entangled on more than one occasion. These estimates are based on sightings of free-swimming animals that initially survive the scarring encounter. Because some animals may drown immediately, the actual number of interactions may be slightly higher.

Many of the reports of mortality cannot be attributed to a particular impact source. The following injury/mortality events are those reported from 1996 to the present for which impact source was determined. These numbers should be viewed as absolute minimum numbers. The total number of mortalities and injuries cannot be estimated but it is believed to be higher since it is unlikely that all carcasses will be observed. In 1996, three humpback whales were killed in collisions with vessels and at least five were seriously

injured by entanglement. Three confirmed humpback whale entanglements were reported in 1997. For 1998, 14 confirmed humpback whale entanglements resulting in injury (n=13) or mortality (n=1) were reported. One injury from a vessel interaction was reported in 1998; the whale was seen several times after the injury, and exhibited some healing. A total of eight whales were observed entangled in 1999. In 2000, a total of eleven confirmed reports of entangled humpback whales were reported. Three were not located as no one was available to respond. Two were too far from shore for response. Two were at large and not assessed. One was at large and was assessed as a not life threatening entanglement. Two were found and, although disentanglement was not possible, the animals were later seen free of gear. One was successfully disentangled by the Network.

Preliminary data for 2001, indicate that there were a total of six reports of entangled humpback whales - four in the Mid-Atlantic and two in the Northeast. On February 12, a juvenile humpback was sighted entangled in gillnet gear near Cape Hatteras, NC. However, after being caught in the gear for about an hour, the whale was able to free itself. On April 8, two humpbacks were reported stranded in South Carolina, both had evidence of previous entanglements with gear. On April 9, a dead juvenile humpback was found floating in coastal gillnet gear off Virginia Beach, VA. A humpback whale was reported in Southwest Stellwagen Bank on July 25, 2001, with a minor entanglement, which the team assessed was not life threatening and, therefore, disentanglement was not attempted, but the team will continue to monitor the whale. Finally, on August 15, 2001, another entangled humpback was sighted in Southwest Stellwagen Bank, which the disentanglement team responded to and completely freed.

Fin Whale

The fin whale is ubiquitous in the North Atlantic and occurs from the Gulf of Mexico and Mediterranean Sea northward to the edges of the arctic ice pack (NMFS 1998a). Fin whales are found throughout the action area for this consultation in most months of the year. The overall pattern of fin whale movement is complex, consisting of a less obvious north-south pattern of migration than that of right and humpback whales. Based on acoustic recordings from hydrophone arrays, however, Clark (1995) reported a general southward flow pattern of fin whales in the fall from the Labrador/Newfoundland region, south past Bermuda, and into the West Indies. The overall distribution may be based on prey availability and this species preys opportunistically on both invertebrates and fish (Watkins et al. 1984). As with humpback whales, they feed by filtering large volumes of water for the associated prey. Fin whales are larger and faster than humpback and right whales and are less concentrated in near-shore environments.

Insufficient data are available to determine status and trends of the Western North Atlantic stock of the fin whale population (Waring et al. 1999). Hain et al. (1992) estimated that about 5,000 fin whales inhabit the northeastern United States continental shelf waters. Shipboard surveys of the northern Gulf of Maine and lower Bay of Fundy provided an estimate of 2,200 (CV=0.24) fin whales, from which the

current minimum population estimate of 1,803 animals was derived (Waring et al. 1999).

Anthropogenic impacts
The major known sources of anthropogenic mortality and injury of fin whales include entanglement in commercial fishing gear and ship strikes. Fin whales may also be adversely affected by habitat degradation, habitat exclusion, acoustic trauma, harassment, or reduction in prey resources due to trophic effects resulting from a variety of activities.

Many of the reports of mortality cannot be attributed to a particular source. The following injury/mortality events are those reported from 1996 to the present for which source was determined. These numbers should be viewed as absolute minimum numbers; the total number of mortalities and injuries cannot be estimated but is believed to be higher. One mortality due to a ship strike and one entanglement report were received in 1996. Five confirmed reports of entangled fin whales were received by NMFS in 1997. In 1998, one ship strike mortality and one entanglement mortality were reported. A total of three fin whales were observed entangled in 1999. Data for 2000 indicate two fin whale mortalities, one of which was an apparent ship strike. There were no reports of entangled fin whales in 2000. Two dead fin whales were reported in 2001, both of which were possibly involved in ship strikes (one had a broken jaw and the other displayed bruising and broken bones). Also in 2001, one fin whale was reported with a minor entanglement, which was not serious, and the whale was expected to free itself.

Loggerhead Sea Turtle
Loggerhead sea turtles occur throughout the temperate and tropical regions of the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian Oceans in a wide range of habitats. These include open ocean, continental shelves, bays, lagoons, and estuaries (NMFS and USFWS, 1995). It is the most abundant species of sea turtle in U.S. waters, commonly occurring throughout the inner continental shelf from Florida through Cape Cod, Massachusetts. NMFS Northeast Fisheries Science Center survey data (1999) has found that loggerheads may occur as far north as Nova Scotia when oceanographic and prey conditions are favorable. The loggerhead sea turtle was listed as threatened under the ESA on July 28, 1978, but is considered endangered by the World Conservation Union (IUCN).

Loggerhead sea turtles are generally grouped by their nesting locations. Nesting is concentrated in the north and south temperate zones and subtropics. Loggerheads generally avoid nesting in tropical areas of Central America, northern South America, and the Old World (Magnuson et al. 1990). The largest known nesting aggregations of loggerhead sea turtles occurs on Masirah and Kuria Muria Islands in Oman (Ross and Barwani 1982). However, the status of the Oman nesting beaches has not been evaluated recently, and their location in a part of the world that is vulnerable to extremely disruptive events (e.g. political upheavals, wars, and catastrophic oil spills) is cause for

considerable concern (Meylan et al. 1995). The southeastern U.S. nesting aggregation is the second largest and represents about 35 percent of the nests of this species. From a global perspective, this U.S. nesting aggregations is, therefore, critical to the survival of this species.

In the western Atlantic, most loggerhead sea turtles nest from North Carolina to Florida and along the gulf coast of Florida. In 1996, the Turtle Expert Working Group (TEWG) met on several occasions and produced a report assessing the status of the loggerhead sea turtle population in the western North Atlantic. Based on analysis of mitochondrial DNA, which the turtle inherits from its mother, the TEWG theorized that nesting assemblages represent distinct genetic entities, and that there are at least four loggerhead subpopulations in the western North Atlantic separated at the nesting beach (TEWG 1998, 2000). A fifth subpopulation was identified in NMFS SEFSC 2001. The subpopulations are divided geographically as follows: (1) a northern nesting subpopulation, occurring from North Carolina to northeast Florida, about 29° N (approximately 7,500 nests in 1998); (2) a south Florida nesting subpopulation, occurring from 29° N on the east coast to Sarasota on the west coast (approximately 83,400 nests in 1998); (3) a Florida panhandle nesting subpopulation, occurring at Eglin Air Force Base and the beaches near Panama City, Florida (approximately 1,200 nests in 1998); (4) a Yucatán nesting subpopulation, occurring on the eastern Yucatán Peninsula, Mexico (Márquez 1990; approximately 1,000 nests in 1998); and (5) a Dry Tortugas nesting subpopulation, occurring in the islands of the Dry Tortugas, near Key West, Florida (approximately 200 nests per year). Natal homing to the nesting beach is believed to provide the genetic barrier between these nesting aggregations, preventing recolonization from turtles from other nesting beaches. In addition, recent fine-scale analysis of mtDNA work from Florida rookeries indicate that population separations begin to appear between nesting beaches separated by more than 50-100 km of coastline that does not host nesting (Francisco et al. 1999) and tagging studies are consistent with this result (Richardson 1982, Ehrhart 1979, LeBuff 1990, CMTTP: in NMFS SEFSC 2001). Nest site relocations greater than 100 km occur, but are rare (Ehrhart 1979; LeBuff 1974, 1990; CMTTP; Bjorndal et at. 1983: in NMFS SEFSC 2001).

Although NMFS has not formally recognized subpopulations of loggerhead sea turtles under the ESA, based on the most recent reviews of the best scientific and commercial data on the population genetics of loggerhead sea turtles and analyses of their population trends (TEWG, 1998; TEWG 2000), NMFS treats the loggerhead turtle nesting aggregations as nesting subpopulations whose survival and recovery is critical to the survival and recovery of the species. Any action that appreciably reduced the likelihood that one or more of these nesting aggregations would survive and recover would appreciably reduce the species' likelihood of survival and recovery in the wild. Consequently, this biological opinion will treat the five nesting aggregations of loggerhead sea turtles as subpopulations (which occur in the action area) for the purposes of this analysis.

The loggerhead sea turtles in the action area of this consultation likely represent turtles that have hatched from any of the five western Atlantic nesting sites, but are probably composed primarily of turtles that hatched from the northern nesting group and the south Florida nesting group. Although genetic studies of benthic immature loggerheads on the foraging grounds have shown the foraging areas to be comprised of a mix of individuals from different nesting areas, there appears to be a preponderance of individuals from a particular nesting area in some foraging locations. For example, although the northern nesting group (North Carolina to northeast Florida) produces only about 9 percent of the loggerhead nests, loggerheads from this nesting area comprise between 25 and 59 percent of the loggerhead sea turtles found in foraging areas from the northeastern U.S. to Georgia (NMFS SEFSC 2001; Bass et al., 1998; Norrgard, 1995; Rankin-Baransky, 1997; Sears 1994, Sears et al., 1995). Loggerheads that forage from Chesapeake Bay southward to Georgia are nearly equally divided in origin between south Florida and the northern nesting group (TEWG, 1998). In the Carolinas, the northern subpopulation is estimated to make up from 25 to 28 percent of the loggerheads (NMFS SEFSC 2001; Bass *et al.* 1998). About 10 percent of the loggerhead sea turtles in foraging areas off the Atlantic coast of central Florida are from the northern subpopulation (Witzell, in prep). In the Gulf of Mexico, most of the loggerhead sea turtles in foraging areas will be from the South Florida subpopulation, although the northern subpopulation may represent about 10 percent of the loggerhead sea turtles in the Gulf (Bass, pers. comm.).

Similar mixing trends have been found for loggerheads in pelagic waters. In the Mediterranean Sea, about 45 - 47 percent of the pelagic loggerheads can be traced to the South Florida subpopulation and about 2 percent are from the northern subpopulation, while only about 51 percent originated from Mediterranean nesting beaches (Laurent et al., 1998). In the vicinity of the Azores and Madiera Archipelagoes, about 19 percent of the pelagic loggerheads are from the northern subpopulation, about 71 percent are from the South Florida subpopulation, and about 11 percent are from the Yucatán subpopulation (Bolten et al., 1998).

Loggerhead sea turtles originating from the western Atlantic nesting aggregations are believed to lead a pelagic existence in the North Atlantic Gyre for as long as 7-12 years before settling into benthic environments. Turtles in this life history stage are called "pelagic immatures" and are best known from the eastern Atlantic near the Azores and Madeira and have been reported from the Mediterranean as well as the eastern Caribbean (Bjorndal et al., in press). Stranding records indicate that when pelagic immature loggerheads reach 40-60 cm straight-line carapace length (SCL) they move to coastal inshore and nearshore waters of the continental shelf throughout the U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico. However, recent studies have suggested that not all loggerhead sea turtles follow the model of circumnavigating the North Atlantic Gyre as pelagic immatures, followed by permanent settlement into benthic environments. Some may not totally

circumnavigate the north Atlantic before moving to benthic habitats, while others may either remain in the pelagic habitat longer than hypothesized or move back and forth between pelagic and coastal habitats (Witzell in prep.).

Benthic immatures have been found from Cape Cod, Massachusetts, to southern Texas, and occasionally strand on beaches in northeastern Mexico (R. Márquez-M., pers. comm.). Large benthic immature loggerheads (70-91 cm) represent a larger proportion of the strandings and in-water captures (Schroeder et al., 1998) along the south and western coasts of Florida as compared with the rest of the coast, but it is not known whether the larger animals are actually more abundant in these areas or just more abundant within the area relative to the smaller turtles. Given an estimated age at maturity of 17-35 years (Frazer and Ehrhart 1985; B. Schroeder, pers. comm.), the benthic immature stage must be at least 10-25 years long. As discussed in the beginning of this section, adult loggerheads nest primarily from North Carolina southward to Florida with additional nesting assemblages in the Florida Panhandle and on the Yucatán Peninsula. Non-nesting, adult female loggerheads are reported throughout the U.S. and Caribbean Sea; however, little is known about the distribution of adult males who are seasonally abundant near nesting beaches during the nesting season. NMFS SEFSC (2001) analyses conclude that juvenile stages have the highest elasticity and maintaining or decreasing current sources of mortality in those stages will have the greatest impact on maintaining or increasing population growth rates.

Aerial surveys suggest that loggerheads (benthic immatures and adults) in U.S. waters are distributed in the following proportions: 54% in the southeast U.S. Atlantic, 29% in the northeast U.S. Atlantic, 12% in the eastern Gulf of Mexico, and 5% in the western Gulf of Mexico (TEWG 1998). Like other sea turtles, the movements of loggerheads are influenced by water temperature. Since they are limited by water temperatures, loggerhead sea turtles do not usually appear on the northern summer foraging grounds (e.g., in the action area) until June, but can be found in Virginia as early as April. The large majority leave the Gulf of Maine by mid-September but may remain in the Northeast and mid-Atlantic waters until as late as November or December (Epperly et al., 1995; Keinath 1993; Morreale 1999; Shoop and Kenney 1992). Aerial surveys of loggerhead turtles north of Cape Hatteras indicate that they are most common in waters from 22 to 49 m deep, although they range from the beach to waters beyond the continental shelf (Shoop and Kenney 1992). There is limited information regarding the activity of these offshore turtles. Loggerhead sea turtles are primarily benthic feeders, opportunistically foraging on crustaceans and mollusks (Wynne and Schwartz, 1999). Under certain conditions they may also scavenge fish, particularly if they are easy to catch (e.g., caught in nets; NMFS and USFWS, 1991).

Based on the data available, it is difficult to estimate the size of the loggerhead sea turtle population in the U.S. or its territorial waters. There is, however, general agreement that the number of

nesting females provides a useful index of the species' population size and stability at this life stage. Nesting data collected on index nesting beaches in the U.S. from 1989-1998 represent the best dataset available to index the population size of loggerhead sea turtles. However, an important caveat for population trends analysis based on nesting beach data is that this may reflect trends in adult nesting females, but it may not reflect overall population growth rates. Given this, between 1989 and 1998, the total number of nests laid along the U.S. Atlantic and Gulf coasts ranged from 53,014 to 92,182 annually, with a mean of 73,751. Since a female often lays multiple nests in any one season, the average adult female population of 44,780 was calculated using the equation [(nests/4.1) * 2.5]. These data provide an annual estimate of the number of nests laid per year while indirectly estimating both the number of females nesting in a particular year (based on an average of 4.1 nests per nesting female, Murphy and Hopkins (1984)) and of the number of adult females in the entire population (based on an average remigration interval of 2.5 years; Richardson et al., 1978)). On average, 90.7% of these nests were of the south Florida subpopulation, 8.5% were from the northern subpopulation, and 0.8% were from the Florida Panhandle nest sites. There is limited nesting throughout the Gulf of Mexico west of Florida, but it is not known to what subpopulation the turtles making these nests belong. Based on the above, there are only an estimated approximately 3,800 nesting females in the northern loggerhead subpopulation. The status of this northern population based on number of loggerhead nests, has been classified as stable or declining (TEWG 2000). Another consideration adding to the vulnerability of the northern subpopulation is that NMFS scientists estimate, using genetics data from Texas, South Carolina, and North Carolina in combination with juvenile sex ratios from those states, that the northern subpopulation produces 65% males, while the south Florida subpopulation is estimated to produce 80% females (NMFS SEFSC 2001, Part I).

Several published reports have presented the problems facing long-lived species that delay sexual maturity (Crouse et al., 1987, Crowder et al., 1994, Crouse 1999). In general, these reports concluded that animals that delay sexual maturity and reproduction must have high annual survival as juveniles through adults to ensure that enough juveniles survive to reproductive maturity and then reproduce enough times to maintain stable population sizes. This general rule applies to sea turtles, particularly loggerhead sea turtles, as the rule originated in studies of sea turtles (Crouse et al., 1987, Crowder et al., 1994, Crouse 1999). Crouse (1999) concluded that relatively small decreases in annual survival rates of both juvenile and adult loggerhead sea turtles will adversely affect large segments of the total loggerhead sea turtle population. The survival of hatchlings seems to have the least amount of influence on the survivorship of the species, but historically, the focus of sea turtle conservation has been involved with protecting the nesting beaches. While nesting beach protection and hatchling survival are important, recovery efforts and limited resources might be more effective by focusing on the protection of juvenile and adult sea turtles.

Anthropogenic impacts
The five major subpopulations of loggerhead sea turtles in the northwest Atlantic – northern, south Florida, Florida panhandle, Yucatán, and Dry Tortugas – are all subject to fluctuations in the number of young produced annually because of human-related activities as well as natural phenomena. Loggerhead sea turtles face numerous threats from natural causes. For example, there is a significant overlap between hurricane seasons in the Caribbean Sea and northwest Atlantic Ocean (June to November), and the loggerhead sea turtle nesting season (March to November). Sand accretion and rainfall that result from these storms as well as wave action can appreciably reduce hatchling success. In 1992, Hurricane Andrew affected turtle nests over a 90-mile length of coastal Florida; all of the eggs were destroyed by storm surges on beaches that were closest to the eye of this hurricane (Milton et al., 1992). On Fisher Island near Miami, Florida, 69 percent of the eggs did not hatch after Hurricane Andrew, probably because they were drowned by the storm surge. Nests from the northern nesting group were destroyed by hurricanes which made landfall in North Carolina in the mid to late 1990's. Other sources of natural mortality include cold stunning and biotoxin exposure.

The diversity of the sea turtle's life history leaves them susceptible to many human impacts, including impacts while they are on land, in the benthic environment, and in the pelagic environment. On their nesting beaches in the U.S., adult female loggerheads as well as hatchlings are threatened with beach erosion, armoring, and nourishment; artificial lighting; beach cleaning; increased human presence; recreational beach equipment; beach driving; coastal construction and fishing piers; exotic dune and beach vegetation; predation by species such as exotic fire ants, raccoons (*Procyon lotor*), armadillos (*Dasypus novemcinctus*), opossums (*Didelphus virginiana*); and poaching. Although sea turtle nesting beaches are protected along large expanses of the northwest Atlantic coast (in areas like Merrit Island, Archie Carr, and Hobe Sound National Wildlife Refuges), other areas along these coasts have limited or no protection and probably cause fluctuations in sea turtle nesting success. For example, Volusia County, Florida, allows motor vehicles to drive on sea turtle nesting beaches (the County has filed suit against the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service to retain this right). Sea turtle nesting and hatching success on unprotected high density east Florida nesting beaches from Indian River to Broward County are affected by all of the above threats.

Loggerhead sea turtles are impacted by a completely different set of threats from human activities once they migrate to the ocean. Pelagic immature loggerhead sea turtles from these four subpopulations circumnavigate the North Atlantic over several years (Carr 1987, Bjorndal et al. 1994). During that period, they are exposed to a series of long-line fisheries that include the U.S. Atlantic tuna and swordfish longline fisheries, an Azorean long-line fleet, a Spanish long-line fleet, and various fleets in the Mediterranean Sea (Aguilar et al., 1995, Bolten et al., 1994, Crouse 1999). Observer records

indicate that an estimated 6,544 loggerheads were captured by the U.S. Atlantic tuna and swordfish longline fleet between 1992-1998, of which an estimated 43 were dead (Yeung et al. in prep.). Logbooks and observer records indicated that loggerheads readily ingest hooks (Witzell 1999).

In waters off the coastal U.S., loggerhead sea turtles are exposed to a suite of fisheries in Federal and State waters including trawl, purse seine, hook and line, gillnet, pound net, longline, and trap fisheries. For example, loggerhead sea turtles have been captured in fixed pound net gear in the Long Island Sound, in pound net gear and trawls in summer flounder and other finfish fisheries in the mid-Atlantic and Chesapeake Bay, and in gillnet fisheries (e.g., monkfish, spiny dogfish) in the mid-Atlantic and elsewhere. The take of sea turtles, including loggerheads, in shrimp fisheries off the Atlantic coast have been well documented. It has previously been observed that loggerhead turtle populations along the southeastern Atlantic coast declined where shrimp fishing was intense off the nesting beaches but, conversely, did not appear to be declining where nearshore shrimping effort was low or absent (Magnuson et al. 1990).

In addition to fishery interactions, loggerhead sea turtles also face other threats in the marine environment, including the following: oil and gas exploration, development, and transportation; marine pollution; underwater explosions; hopper dredging, offshore artificial lighting; power plant entrainment and/or impingement; entanglement in debris; ingestion of marine debris; marina and dock construction and operation; boat collisions; and poaching.

Leatherback Sea Turtle

The leatherback is the largest living turtle and ranges farther than any other sea turtle species, exhibiting broad thermal tolerances (NMFS and USFWS 1995). Leatherback turtles feed primarily on cnidarians (medusae, siphonophores) and tunicates (salps, pyrosomas) and are often found in association with jellyfish. These turtles are found throughout the action area of this consultation and, while predominantly pelagic, they occur annually in places such as Cape Cod Bay and Narragansett Bay during certain times of the year, particularly the fall.

Nest counts are the only reliable population information available for leatherback turtles. Recent declines have been seen in the number of leatherbacks nesting worldwide (NMFS and USFWS 1995). The 1995 status review notes that it is unclear whether this observation is due to natural fluctuations or whether the population is at serious risk. Globally, leatherback populations have been decimated worldwide. The population was estimated to number approximately 115,000 adult females in 1980 and only 34,500 by 1995 (Spotila et al. 1996). The decline can be attributed to many factors including fisheries as well as intense exploitation of the eggs (Ross, 1979). Spotila et al. (1996) record that adult mortality has also increased significantly, particularly as a result of driftnet and longline fisheries. The Pacific population appears to be in a critical state of decline, now

estimated to number less than 3,000 total adult and subadult animals (Spotila 2000). The status of the Atlantic population is less clear. In 1996, it was reported to be stable, at best (Spotila 1996), but numbers in the Western Atlantic at that writing were reported to be on the order of 18,800 nesting females. According to Spotila (pers. comm.), the Western Atlantic population currently numbers about 15,000 nesting females, whereas current estimates for the Caribbean (4,000) and the Eastern Atlantic (i.e., off Africa, numbering ~ 4,700) have remained consistent with numbers reported by Spotila et al. in 1996. With regard to repercussions of these observations for the U.S. leatherback populations in general, it is unknown whether they are stable, increasing, or declining, but it is certain that some nesting populations (e.g., St. John and St. Thomas, U.S. Virgin Islands) have been extirpated.

Anthropogenic impacts
Anthropogenic impacts to the leatherback population are similar to those discussed above for the loggerhead sea turtle. At a workshop held in the Northeast in 1998 to develop a management plan for leatherbacks, experts expressed the opinion that incidental takes in fisheries were likely higher than is being reported. Two to three leatherbacks are reported entangled in the buoy lines of lobster pot gear every year. Anecdotal accounts by fishermen suggest that they have many more encounters than are reported. Entanglement in other pot gear set for other species of shellfish and finfish in the action area has also been documented. Prescott (1988) reviewed stranding data for Cape Cod Bay and concluded that for those turtles where cause of death could be determined (the minority), entanglement is the leading cause of death followed by capture by trawl, cold stunning, or collision with boats. More leatherback-fishery interactions seem to be indicative of entanglement in buoy lines and longline gear than are documented for gillnets and trawl gear. However, this may be an artifact of the lesser likelihood of finding marks from gillnets or trawl gear on stranded animals.

Leatherbacks are taken as bycatch in several fisheries including the pelagic longline, anchored gillnet, and pelagic gillnet. From 1992 to 1998, the pelagic longline fishery captured/entangled/hooked an estimated 5,003 leatherbacks, of which an estimated 39 were moribund or dead prior to release (NMFS 2000). Additional turtles may have been seriously injured or died following release. Leatherbacks were also taken in the temporary experimental pelagic pair trawl fishery for tunas, which is no longer authorized. Sea sampling coverage in the southeast shrimp fishery and shark bottom longline fishery has also recorded takes of leatherback turtles. Shrimp trawlers in the southeastern U.S. are required to use TEDs, which reduce a trawler's turtle capture rate by 97%. Even so, NMFS estimated that 4,100 turtles may be captured annually by shrimp trawling, including 650 leatherbacks that cannot be released through TEDs.

Kemp's Ridley Sea Turtle
The Kemp's ridley is the most endangered of the world's sea turtle species. The only major nesting site for ridleys is a single stretch

of beach near Rancho Nuevo, Tamaulipas, Mexico (Carr 1963). From 1985 to 1999, the number of nests observed at Rancho Nuevo and nearby beaches has increased at a mean rate of 11.3% per year, allowing cautious optimism that the population is on its way to recovery (TEWG 2000). For example, nesting data indicated that the number of adults declined from a population that produced 6,000 nests in 1966 to a population that produced 924 nests in 1978 and 702 nests in 1985 then increased to produce 1,940 nests in 1995. Estimates of adult abundance followed a similar trend from an estimate of 9,600 in 1966 to 1,050 in 1985 and 3,000 in 1995. First-time nesting adults increased from 6 to 28% from 1981 to 1989, and from 23 percent to 41 percent from 1990 to 1994, indicating that the Kemp's ridley population may be in the early stages of exponential growth (TEWG 1998).

Juvenile Kemp's ridleys use northeastern and mid-Atlantic coastal waters of the U.S. Atlantic coastline as primary developmental habitat during summer months, with shallow coastal embayments serving as important foraging grounds. Post-pelagic ridleys feed primarily on crabs, consuming a variety of species, including *Callinectes* sp., *Ovalipes* sp., *Libinia* sp., and *Cancer* sp. Mollusks, shrimp, and fish are consumed less frequently (Bjorndal 1997). Juvenile ridleys migrate south as water temperatures cool in fall, and are predominantly found in shallow coastal embayments along the Gulf Coast during fall and winter months.

Kemp's ridleys found in mid-Atlantic waters are primarily post-pelagic juveniles averaging 40 centimeters in carapace length, and weighing less than 20 kilograms (Terwilliger and Musick 1995). Next to loggerheads, they are the second most abundant sea turtle in Virginia and Maryland waters, arriving in the Chesapeake Bay during May and June, and migrating to more southerly waters in September to November (Keinath et al. 1987; Musick and Limpus 1997). In the Chesapeake Bay, ridleys frequently forage in shallow embayments, particularly in areas supporting submerged aquatic vegetation (Lutcavage and Musick 1985; Bellmund et al. 1987; Keinath et al. 1987; Musick and Limpus 1997). The juvenile population in Chesapeake Bay is estimated to be 211 to 1,083 turtles (Musick and Limpus 1997).

Juvenile ridleys follow regular coastal routes during spring and fall migrations to and from developmental foraging grounds along the mid-Atlantic and northeastern coastlines. Consequently, many ridleys occurring in coastal waters off Virginia and Maryland are transients involved in seasonal migrations. However, Maryland and Virginia coastal embayments - which contain an abundance of crabs, shrimp, and other prey as well as preferred foraging habitat such as shallow subtidal flats and submerged aquatic vegetation beds - are likely used as a foraging ground by Kemp's ridley sea turtles (John Musick, Virginia Institute of Marine Science, 1998 personal communication; Sherry Epperly, National Marine Fisheries Service, 1998 personal communication; Molly Lutcavage, New England Aquarium, 1998 personal communication). No known established nesting sites occur on Virginia or Maryland beaches.

Anthropogenic impacts
Anthropogenic impacts to the Kemp's ridley population are similar to those discussed above for the loggerhead sea turtle. Mortality in the large juvenile and adult life stages would have the greatest impact to the Kemp's ridley population (TEWG 1998). The vast majority of ridleys identified along the Atlantic Coast have been juveniles and subadults. Loss of individuals, particularly large juveniles, in the Atlantic resulting from human activities may therefore impede recovery of the Kemp's ridley sea turtle population.

Sea sampling coverage in the northeast otter trawl fishery, pelagic longline fishery, and southeast shrimp and summer flounder bottom trawl fisheries have recorded takes of Kemp's ridley turtles. As with loggerheads, a large number of Kemp's ridleys are taken in the southeast shrimp fishery each year. This species may also be taken in the Northeast shrimp fishery and bottom longline fisheries. An estimate of the number of Kemp's ridley turtles that can be removed by fishery mortality without compromising recovery cannot be provided at this time due to data deficiencies (TEWG 1998).

Green Sea Turtle
Green turtles are distributed circumglobally, mainly in waters between the northern and southern 20° C isotherms (Hirth 1971). In the western Atlantic, several major nesting assemblages have been identified and studied (Peters 1954; Carr and Ogren 1960; Duellman 1961; Carr et al. 1978). However, most green turtle nesting in the continental United States occurs on the Atlantic Coast of Florida (Ehrhart 1979). Occasional nesting has been documented along the Gulf coast of Florida, at Southwest Florida beaches, as well as the beaches on the Florida Panhandle (Meylan et al. 1995). Most green turtle nesting activity occurs on Florida index beaches. These index beaches were established to standardize data collection methods and effort on key nesting beaches. The pattern of green turtle nesting shows biennial peaks in abundance, with a generally positive trend during the six years of regular monitoring since establishment of the index beaches in 1989. There is evidence that green turtle nesting has been on the increase during the past decade. For example, increased nesting has been observed along the Atlantic coast of Florida, on beaches where only loggerhead nesting was observed in the past (Pritchard 1997). Recent population estimates for the western Atlantic area are not available.

Juvenile green sea turtles occupy pelagic habitats after leaving the nesting beach. Pelagic juveniles are assumed to be omnivorous, but with a strong tendency toward carnivory during early life stages. At approximately 20 to 25 cm carapace length, juveniles leave pelagic habitats, and enter benthic foraging areas, shifting to a chiefly herbivorous diet (Bjorndal 1997). Post-pelagic green turtles feed primarily on sea grasses and benthic algae, but also consume jellyfish, salps, and sponges. Known feeding habitats along U.S. coasts of the western Atlantic include shallow lagoons and embayments in Florida, and similar shallow inshore areas elsewhere. Some of the principal feeding pastures in the western Atlantic Ocean include the

upper west coast of Florida, the northwestern coast of the Yucatan Peninsula, the south coast of Cuba, the Mosquito Coast of Nicaragua, the Caribbean Coast of Panama, and scattered areas along Colombia and Brazil (Hirth 1971). The preferred food sources in these areas are *Cymodocea, Thalassia, Zostera, Sagittaria,* and *Vallisneria* (Carr 1952).

Although no green turtle foraging areas or major nesting beaches have been identified on the Atlantic Coast, evidence provided by Mendonca and Ehrhart (1982) indicates that immature green turtles may utilize lagoonal systems for foraging. These authors identified a population of young green turtles (carapace length 29.5-75.4 cm) believed to be resident in Mosquito Lagoon, Florida. The Indian River system, of which Mosquito Lagoon is a part, supported a green turtle fishery during the late 1800s (Ehrhart 1983), and these turtles may be remnants of this historical colony. The summer developmental habitat for green turtles encompasses estuarine and coastal waters as far north as Long Island Sound, Chesapeake Bay, and the North Carolina sounds, and south throughout the tropics (Musick and Limpus 1997). Most of the individuals reported in U.S. waters are immature (Thompson 1988). Individuals that use waters north of Florida during the summer must return to southern waters in autumn, or face the risk of cold stunning. In North Carolina, green turtles are known to occur in estuarine and oceanic waters and to nest in low numbers along the entire coast. No information is available regarding the occurrence of green turtles in the Chesapeake Bay, although they are presumably present in very low numbers.

Anthropogenic impacts
In 1978, the green turtle was listed as threatened under the ESA, except for the breeding populations in Florida and on the Pacific coast of Mexico, which were listed as endangered (NMFS and USFWS 1991a). Green turtles were traditionally highly prized for their flesh, fat, eggs, and shell, and fisheries in the United States and throughout the Caribbean are largely responsible for the decline of the species. Green turtles continue to be heavily exploited by man, with the degradation of nesting and feeding habitats, incidental capture in fisheries, and marine pollution acknowledged as serious hindrances to species recovery.

Sea sampling coverage in the pelagic driftnet, pelagic longline, scallop dredge, southeast shrimp trawl, and summer flounder bottom trawl fisheries has recorded takes of green turtles. The shrimp fishery has been estimated as taking as many as 300 turtles a year. Stranding reports indicate that between 200-300 green turtles strand annually from a variety of causes (Sea Turtle Stranding and Salvage Network, unpublished data). Green turtle takes have been documented in gillnet, trawl and longline gear. A preliminary sea sampling data summary (1994-1998) shows the following takes of green turtles in the Atlantic: 1 (anchored gillnet), 2 (pelagic driftnet), 2 (pelagic longline).

Hawksbill Sea Turtle
The hawksbill turtle is relatively uncommon in the waters of the continental United States. Hawksbills prefer coral reefs, such as those found in the Caribbean and Central America. However, there are accounts of hawksbills in south Florida and a surprising number are encountered in Texas. Most of the Texas records report small turtles, probably in the 1-2 year class range. Many captures or strandings are of individuals in an unhealthy or injured condition (Hildebrand 1982). The lack of sponge-covered reefs and the cold winters in the northern Gulf of Mexico probably prevent hawksbills from establishing a viable population in this area. In the North Atlantic, small hawksbills have stranded as far north as Cape Cod, Massachusetts (STSSN database). Many of these strandings were observed after hurricanes or offshore storms. Although there have been no reports of hawksbills in the Chesapeake Bay, one has been observed taken incidentally in a fishery just south of the Bay (Anonymous 1992).

Hawksbills feed primarily on a wide variety of sponges but also consume bryozoans, coelenterates, and mollusks. The Culebra Archipelago of Puerto Rico contains especially important foraging habitat for hawksbills. Nesting areas in the western North Atlantic include Puerto Rico and the Virgin Islands.

No takes of hawksbill sea turtles have been recorded in northeast or mid-Atlantic fisheries covered by the NEFSC observer program.

Shortnose Sturgeon
Shortnose sturgeon occur in large rivers along the western Atlantic coast from the St. Johns River, Florida (possibly extirpated from this system), to the Saint John River in New Brunswick, Canada. The species is anadromous in the southern portion of its range (i.e., south of Chesapeake Bay), while northern populations are amphidromous (NMFS 1998b). Population sizes vary across the species' range. From available estimates, smallest populations occur in the Cape Fear (~8 adults; Moser and Ross 1995) and Merrimack Rivers (~100 adults; M. Kieffer, United States Geological Survey, personal communication), while the largest populations are found in the Saint John (~100,000; Dadswell 1979) and Hudson Rivers (~61,000; Bain et al. 1998). Welsh et al. (1999) summarizes historical and recent evidence of shortnose sturgeon presence in the Chesapeake Bay. Fish have been found as far north as the Susquehanna River and as far south as the York River.

Total instantaneous mortality rates (Z) are available for the Saint John River (0.12 - 0.15; ages 14-55; Dadswell 1979), Upper Connecticut River (0.12; Taubert 1980), and Pee Dee-Winyah River (0.08-0.12; Dadswell et al. 1984). Total instantaneous natural mortality (M) for shortnose sturgeon in the lower Connecticut River was estimated to be 0.13 (T. Savoy, Connecticut Department of Environmental Protection, personal communication). There is no recruitment information available for shortnose sturgeon because there are no commercial fisheries for the species. Estimates of annual egg production for this species are difficult to calculate because females do not spawn every year (Dadswell et al. 1984). Further, females may abort

spawning attempts, possibly due to interrupted migrations or unsuitable environmental conditions (NMFS 1998b). Thus, annual egg production is likely to vary greatly in this species.

Shortnose sturgeon are benthic fish that mainly occupy the deep channel sections of large rivers. They feed on a variety of benthic and epibenthic invertebrates including molluscs, crustaceans (amphipods, chironomids, isopods), and oligochaete worms (Vladykov and Greeley 1963; Dadswell 1979). Shortnose sturgeon are long-lived (30 years) and, particularly in the northern extent of their range, mature at late ages. In the north, males reach maturity at 5 to 10 years, while females mature between 7 and 13 years.

In the northern extent of their range, shortnose sturgeon exhibit three distinct movement patterns that are associated with spawning, feeding, and overwintering periods. In spring, as water temperatures rise above 8° C, pre-spawning shortnose sturgeon move from overwintering grounds to spawning areas. Spawning occurs from mid/late April to mid/late May. Post-spawned sturgeon migrate downstream to feed throughout the summer. As water temperatures drop below 8° C again in the fall, shortnose sturgeon move to overwintering concentration areas and exhibit little movement until water temperatures rise again in spring (Dadswell et al. 1984; NMFS 1998b). Young-of-the-year shortnose sturgeon are believed to move downstream after hatching (Dovel 1981) but remain within freshwater habitats. Older juveniles tend to move downstream in fall and winter as water temperatures decline and the salt wedge recedes. Juveniles move upstream in spring and feed mostly in freshwater reaches during summer.

Shortnose sturgeon spawn in freshwater sections of rivers, typically below the first impassable barrier on the river (e.g., dam). Spawning occurs over channel habitats containing gravel, rubble, or rock-cobble substrates (Dadswell et al. 1984; NMFS 1998b). Additional environmental conditions associated with spawning activity include decreasing river discharge following the peak spring freshet, water temperatures ranging from 9 - 12° C, and bottom water velocities of 0.4 to 0.7 m/sec (Dadswell et al. 1984; NMFS 1998b).

The NMFS recovery plan indicates reports of shortnose sturgeon occurrence in the Chesapeake system as early as 1876. Other historical records include the Potomac River (Smith and Bean 1899), the upper Bay near the mouth of the Susquehanna River in the early 1980's, and the lower Bay near the mouths of the James and Rappahannock rivers in the late 1970's (Dadswell et al. 1984). According to the United States Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS), as of March, 2002, 49 shortnose sturgeon were captured via the reward program, which began in 1996, in the Chesapeake Bay and its tributaries - three from the lower Susquehanna River, two in the Bohemia River, two south of the Bay Bridge near Kent Island, six in the Potomac River and one just north of Hoopers Island. In addition, one was captured in the Elk River and two in Fishing Bay. The remaining sturgeon were captured in the upper

Bay north of Hart-Miller Island. Nevertheless, distribution and movements of shortnose sturgeon in the Bay are poorly understood, in part because this species is often confused with Atlantic sturgeon. No population estimates for shortnose sturgeon in the Chesapeake Bay area are available at this time.

Anthropogenic impacts
The major known sources of anthropogenic mortality and injury of shortnose sturgeon include entrainment in dredges and entanglement in fishing gear. Injury and mortality can also occur at power plant cooling water intakes and structures associated with dams in rivers inhabited by this species. Shortnose sturgeon may also be adversely affected by habitat degradation or exclusion associated with riverine maintenance and construction activities and operation of power plants. Entanglement could include incidental catch in commercial or recreational gear as well as directed poaching activities. Shortnose sturgeon are most likely to interact with fisheries in and around the mouths of rivers where they are found. Thus, interactions are more likely to occur in state fisheries or unregulated fisheries than in the EEZ. Interactions are also most likely to occur during the spring migration (NMFS 1998b). According to information summarized by NMFS (1998b), operation of gillnet fisheries for shad may result in lethal takes of as many as 20 shortnose sturgeon per year in northern rivers. Shortnose sturgeon may be taken in ocean fisheries near rivers inhabited by this species. No comprehensive analysis of entanglement patterns is available at this time, in part due to the difficulty of distinguishing between shortnose and Atlantic sturgeon with the similarity in appearance of these two species. For example, several thousand pounds of "sturgeon" were reported taken in the squid/mackerel/butterfish fishery in 1992. However, this information is not broken down by species. NMFS sea sampling coverage has recorded takes of shortnose sturgeon in the monkfish sink gillnet fishery.

ENVIRONMENTAL BASELINE

Environmental baselines for biological opinions include the past and present impacts of all state, federal or private actions and other human activities in the action area, the anticipated impacts of all proposed federal projects in the action area that have already undergone formal or early Section 7 consultation, and the impact of state or private actions that are contemporaneous with the consultation in process (50 CFR 402.02). The environmental baseline for this biological opinion includes the effects of several activities that may affect the survival and recovery of threatened and endangered species in the action area. The activities that shape the environmental baseline in the action area of this consultation generally fall into the following three categories: vessel operations, fisheries, and recovery activities associated with reducing those impacts. Other environmental impacts include effects of discharges, dredging, ocean dumping, and sonic activity.

Due to logistical difficulties associated with most marine activities

and the significant amount of resources necessary to design effective monitoring programs, monitoring the effects of the various federal actions on threatened and endangered species has not been consistent for all species groups and all projects. For example, the most reliable method for monitoring fishery interactions is the sea sampling program, which provides random sampling of commercial fishing activities. However, due to the size, power, and mobility of whales, sea sampling is only effective for sea turtles and sturgeon. Although takes of whales are occasionally observed by the sea sampling program, levels of interaction between whales and fishing vessels and their gear is derived from data collected opportunistically. It is often impossible to assign gear found on stranded or free-swimming animals to a specific fishery. Consequently, the total level of interaction between fisheries and whales is unknown.

A. Federal actions that have undergone formal or early Section 7 Consultation

NMFS has undertaken several ESA Section 7 consultations to address the effects of vessel operations and gear associated with federally-permitted fisheries on threatened and endangered species in the action area. Each of those consultations sought to develop ways of reducing the probability of adverse impacts of the action on large whales and sea turtles. Similarly, recovery actions NMFS has undertaken under both the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) and the ESA are addressing the problem of take of whales in the fishing and shipping industries.

Vessel Operations
Potential adverse effects from federal vessel operations in the action area of this consultation include operations of the U.S. Navy (USN) and the U.S. Coast Guard (USCG), which maintain the largest federal vessel fleets, the EPA, the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), and the ACOE. NMFS has conducted formal consultations with the USCG, the USN (described below), and is currently in early phases of consultation with the other federal agencies on their vessel operations. In addition to operation of ACOE vessels, NMFS has consulted with the ACOE to provide recommended permit restrictions for operations of contract or private vessels around whales. Through the Section 7 process, where applicable, NMFS has and will continue to establish conservation measures for all these agency vessel operations to avoid adverse effects to listed species. At the present time, however, they represent potential for some level of interaction. Refer to the biological opinions for the USCG (September 15, 1995; July 22, 1996; and June 8, 1998) and the USN (May 15, 1997) for detail on the scope of vessel operations for these agencies and conservation measures being implemented as standard operating procedures.

Since the USN consultation only covered operations out of Mayport, Florida, potential remains for USN vessels to adversely affect large whales when they are operating in other areas within the range of these species. Similarly, operations of vessels by other federal

agencies within the action area (NOAA, EPA, ACOE) may adversely affect whales. However, the in-water activities of those agencies are limited in scope, as they operate a small number of vessels or are engaged in research/operational activities that are unlikely to contribute a large amount of risk. Through the consultation process, conservation recommendations will be provided to further reduce the potential for adverse impacts.

Federal Fishery Operations
Several commercial fisheries operating in the action area use gear that is known to take listed species. Efforts to reduce the adverse effects of commercial fisheries are addressed through both the MMPA take reduction planning process and the ESA Section 7 process. Federally regulated gillnet, longline, trawl, seine, dredge, and pot fisheries have all been documented as interacting with either whales or sea turtles or both. Other gear types are known to impact whales as well. For all fisheries for which there is a federal fishery management plan (FMP) or for which any federal action is taken to manage that fishery, impacts have been evaluated through the Section 7 process.

Formal ESA Section 7 consultation has been conducted on the following fisheries which may adversely affect threatened and endangered species in the action area: Multispecies, Monkfish, Summer Flounder/Scup/Black Sea Bass, Atlantic Bluefish, Spiny Dogfish, Tilefish, Scallop and Red Crab fisheries. These consultations are summarized below; for more detailed information, refer to the respective Biological Opinions.

The *Multispecies sink gillnet fishery* occurs in the action area and is known to entangle whales and sea turtles. This fishery has historically occurred along the northern portion of the Northeast Shelf Ecosystem from the periphery of the Gulf of Maine to Rhode Island in water depths to 60 fathoms. In recent years, more of the effort in this fishery has occurred in offshore waters and into the Mid-Atlantic. Participation in this fishery declined from 399 to 341 permit holders in 1993 and has declined further since extensive groundfish conservation measures have been implemented. Based on 1996 data, NMFS estimated that there were 273 participants in the northeast sink gillnet fishery as defined under the MMPA, which includes not only multispecies vessels, but also those using sink gillnet gear to target other species such as monkfish and dogfish. The fishery operates throughout the year with peaks in the spring and from October through February. Data indicate that gear used in this fishery has seriously injured or killed northern right whales, humpback whales, fin whales, and/or loggerhead and leatherback sea turtles.

The 1997 formal consultation on the Multispecies FMP concluded that the fishery, with modification under the ALWTRP, was not likely to jeopardize listed species or adversely modify critical habitat. However, serious injuries and at least one mortality of a right whale have occurred as a result of entanglements in gillnet gear since the 1997 Opinion. The gillnet gear entanglements may or may not be attributable to the multispecies gillnet fishery. In most cases, NMFS

is unable to assign responsibility for a gillnet gear entanglement to a particular fishery since entangling gear is not often retrieved or, when retrieved, lacks adequate identifiers to determine the fishery from which it originated. Since NMFS has been unable to determine the origin of the gillnet gear involved in the whale entanglements, including the gear involved in the 1999 right whale mortality, NMFS could not assume that these entanglements were not the result of the multispecies gillnet fishery.

As a result of gillnet entanglements in 1999, including one mortality of a right whale, NMFS reinitiated consultation on the Multispecies FMP on May 4, 2000, in order to reevaluate the ability of the RPA to avoid the likelihood of jeopardy to right whales. The Opinion also considered new information on the status of the northern right whale and new ALWTRP measures. The Opinion, signed on June 14, 2001, concluded that continued implementation of the Multispecies FMP is likely to jeopardize the existence of the northern right whale. A new RPA has been provided that is expected to remove the threat of jeopardy to northern right whales as a result of the gillnet sector of the multispecies fishery.

The *Monkfish Fishery Management Plan* was recently completed by the New England and Mid-Atlantic Fishery Management Councils. This fishery uses several gear types that may entangle protected species, and takes of shortnose sturgeon and sea turtles have been recorded from monkfish trips. The monkfish gillnet sector is included in either the northeast sink gillnet or mid-Atlantic coastal gillnet fisheries and is therefore regulated by the Atlantic Large Whale and Harbor Porpoise Take Reduction Plans. NMFS completed a formal consultation on the Monkfish FMP on December 21, 1998, which concluded that the fishery, with modification under the take reduction plans, is not likely to jeopardize listed species or adversely modify critical habitat.

However, as a result of gillnet entanglements in 1999, including one mortality of a right whale, NMFS reinitiated consultation on the Monkfish FMP on May 4, 2000, in order to reevaluate the ability of the RPA to avoid the likelihood of jeopardy to right whales. The Opinion also considered new information on the status of the northern right whale and new ALWTRP measures. The Opinion, signed on June 14, 2001, concluded that continued implementation of the Monkfish FMP is likely to jeopardize the existence of the northern right whale. A new RPA has been provided that is expected to remove the threat of jeopardy to northern right whales as a result of the gillnet sector of the monkfish fishery.

The *Summer Flounder, Scup and Black Sea Bass fisheries* are also known to interact with sea turtles. Based on occurrence of gillnet entanglements in other fisheries, the gillnet portion of this fishery could also entangle endangered whales, particularly humpback whales. The pot gear and staked trap sectors could entangle whales and sea turtles as well. Significant measures have been developed to reduce the take of sea turtles in summer flounder trawls and trawls that meet the definition of a summer flounder trawl (which would include

fisheries for other species like scup and black sea bass) by requiring TEDs in nets in the area of greatest bycatch off the North Carolina coast. NMFS is considering a more geographically inclusive regulation to require TEDs in trawl fisheries that overlap with sea turtle distribution to reduce the impact from this fishery. Developmental work is also ongoing for a TED that will work in the flynets used in the weakfish fisheries. The gillnet sector of this fishery is subject to the requirements of the ALWTRP and Harbor Porpoise Take Reduction Plan as appropriate through restrictions on the MMPA listings for the northeast sink gillnet fishery and/or mid-Atlantic coastal gillnet fishery. The most recent (February 29, 1996) formal consultation on this fishery concluded that the operation of the fishery may adversely affect but is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of listed species. Expected annual incidental take for this fishery includes 15 threatened loggerhead sea turtles and no more than 3 cumulative endangered Kemp's ridley, hawksbill, leatherback, or green sea turtles.

Formal consultation on the *Atlantic Bluefish fishery* was completed on July 2, 1999. NMFS concluded that operation of the fishery under the FMP, as amended, is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of listed species and not likely to adversely modify critical habitat. Of listed species under NMFS jurisdiction, the fishery is most likely to interact with loggerhead and Kemp's ridley sea turtles and shortnose sturgeon. Although there is a high degree of overlap between the bluefish fishery and other regulated fisheries, observer data suggests that takes of sea turtles may be occurring in unregulated fisheries that also harvest bluefish. Takes by vessels harvesting bluefish while fishing for unregulated species have not been previously addressed under the Section 7 process. A small number of takes of sea turtles and shortnose sturgeon was authorized in the Incidental Take Statement issued with the July 1999 Biological Opinion.

Formal consultation on the *Spiny dogfish fishery* was completed on August 13, 1999. NMFS concluded that the operation of the fishery under the FMP may adversely affect but is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of listed species and not likely to adversely modify critical habitat, provided operation of the gillnet portion of the fishery was conducted in accordance with ALWTRP measures to reduce entanglements with right whales. However, serious injuries and at least one mortality of a right whale have occurred as a result of entanglements in gillnet gear since the 1999 Opinion. The gillnet gear entanglements may or may not be attributable to the spiny dogfish gillnet fishery. In most cases, NMFS is unable to assign responsibility for a gillnet gear entanglement to a particular fishery since entangling gear is not often retrieved or, when retrieved, lacks adequate identifiers to determine the fishery from which it originated. Since NMFS has been unable to determine the origin of the gillnet gear involved in the whale entanglements, including the gear involved in the 1999 right whale mortality, NMFS could not assume that these entanglements were not the result of the spiny dogfish

The dogfish fishery may also interact with sea turtles (all species) given the time and locations where the fishery occurs. The primary spiny dogfish gear types are sink gillnets, otter trawls, bottom longline, and driftnet gear; the capture of sea turtles could occur in all gear sectors of the fishery. Turtle takes in 2000 included one dead and one live Kemp's ridley. Since the ITS issued with the August 13, 1999 opinion only allows for the take of one lethal or non-lethal take of a Kemp's ridley, the incidental take level for the dogfish FMP was exceeded.

As a result of continuing gillnet entanglements, including one mortality of a right whale, and turtle takes in excess of the spiny dogfish ITS, NMFS reinitiated consultation on the Spiny Dogfish FMP on May 4, 2000, in order to reevaluate the ability of the RPA to avoid the likelihood of jeopardy to right whales, and the effect of the spiny dogfish gillnet fishery on sea turtles. The Opinion also considered new information on the status of the northern right whale and new ALWTRP measures. The Opinion, signed on June 14, 2001, concluded that continued implementation of the Spiny Dogfish FMP is likely to jeopardize the existence of the northern right whale. A new RPA has been provided that is expected to remove the threat of jeopardy to northern right whales as a result of the gillnet sector of the spiny dogfish fishery. In addition, a new ITS has been provided for the take of sea turtles in the fishery.

The FMP for spiny dogfish calls for a 30% reduction in quota allocation levels for 2000 and a 90% reduction beginning in 2001. Although there have been delays in implementing the plan, quota allocations are expected to be substantially reduced over the 4 ½ year rebuilding schedule which should result in a substantial decrease in effort directed at spiny dogfish. For the last four years of the rebuilding period, dogfish landings are likely to be limited to incidental catch in other fisheries. The reduction in effort should be of benefit to protected species by reducing the number of gear interactions that occur.

The management unit for the *Tilefish* FMP is all golden tilefish under U.S. jurisdiction in the Atlantic Ocean north of the Virginia/North Carolina border. Tilefish have some unique habitat characteristics, and are found in a warm water band (47-651 F) at approximately 250 to 1200 feet deep on the outer continental shelf and upper slope of the U.S. Atlantic coast. Because of their restricted habitat and low biomass, the tilefish fishery in recent years has occurred in a relatively small area in the mid-Atlantic Bight, south of New England and west of New Jersey. Nevertheless, the take of sea turtles in this fishery is possible.

It was previously believed that the *Scallop dredge fishery* was unlikely to take sea turtles given the slow speed at which the gear operates. However, the NMFS Northeast Fisheries Science Center has documented the take of thirteen sea turtles in this fishery from 1996 through October 2001. Therefore, the take of sea turtles in the scallop fishery (in both dredge and net gear) is possible when turtles

are present at the times and in the areas where the sea scallop fishery operates. Due to the potential for takes, NMFS is currently conducting section 7 consultation for the scallop fishery.

The *Red crab fishery* is a pot/trap fishery that occurs in deep waters along the continental slope. An FMP for the fishery is in development. There have been no recorded takes of ESA-listed species in the red crab fishery. However, given the type of gear used in the fishery, takes may be possible where gear overlaps with the distribution of ESA-listed species.

Fishing vessel effects
Other than entanglement in fishing gear, effects of fishing vessels on listed species may involve disturbance or injury/mortality due to collisions or entanglement in anchor lines. Listed species or critical habitat may also be affected by fuel oil spills resulting from fishing vessel accidents. No collisions between commercial fishing vessels and listed species or adverse effects resulting from disturbance have been documented. However, the commercial fishing fleet represents a significant portion of marine vessel activity. For example, more than 280 commercial fishing vessels fish on Stellwagen Bank in the Gulf of Maine. In addition, commercial fishing vessels may be the only vessels active in some areas, particularly in cooler seasons. Therefore, the potential for collisions exists. Due to differences in vessel speed, collisions during fishing activities are less likely than collisions during transit to and from fishing grounds. Because most fishing vessels are smaller than large commercial tankers and container ships, collisions are less likely to result in mortality. Although entanglement in fishing vessel anchor lines has been documented historically, no information is available on the prevalence of such events. Fuel oil spills could affect animals directly or indirectly through the food chain. Fuel spills involving fishing vessels are common events. However, these spills typically involve small amounts of material that are unlikely to adversely affect listed species. Larger spills may result from accidents, although these events would be rare and involve small areas. No direct adverse effects on listed species or critical habitat resulting from fishing vessel fuel spills have been documented. Given the current lack of information on prevalence or impacts of interactions, there is no basis to conclude that the level of interaction represented by any of the various fishing vessel activities discussed in this section would be detrimental to the recovery of listed species.

B. State or private actions

Private and Commercial Vessels
Private and commercial vessels operate in the action area of this consultation and also have the potential to interact with whales and sea turtles. Ship strikes have been identified as a significant source of mortality to the northern right whale population (Kraus 1990) and are also known to impact all other endangered whales. Small vessel traffic is also known to take sea turtles. A whale watch

enterprise focusing on humpback whales has developed in the Virginia Capes area in the winter months. In addition, an unknown number of private recreational boaters frequent coastal waters; some of these are engaged in whale watching or sportfishing activities. These activities have the potential to result in lethal (through entanglement or boat strike) or non-lethal (through harassment) takes of listed species that could prevent or slow a species' recovery. Effects of harassment or disturbance, which may be caused by whale watch operations, are currently unknown. Shipping traffic in Massachusetts Bay is estimated at 1,200 ship crossings per year with an average of 3 per day. Sportfishing contributes more than 20 vessels per day from May to September on Stellwagen Bank in the Gulf of Maine. Information is not currently available on how comparable these figures are to the level of vessel activity in the action area. The advent of new technology resulting in high-speed catamarans for ferry services and whale watch vessels operating in congested coastal areas contributes to the potential for impacts from privately operated vessels in the environmental baseline. Recent federal efforts regarding mitigating impacts of the whale watch and shipping industries on endangered whales are discussed in Section C below.

In addition to commercial traffic and recreational pursuits, private vessels participate in high-speed marine events concentrated in the southeastern U.S. that are a particular threat to sea turtles. The magnitude of these marine events is not currently known. NMFS and the USCG are in early consultation on these events, but a thorough analysis has not been completed. The Sea Turtle Stranding and Salvage Network also reports regular incidents of vessel interaction (propeller injury) with sea turtles off the New Jersey coast.

Other than injuries and mortalities resulting from collisions, the effects of disturbance caused by vessel activity on listed species is largely unknown. Although the difficulty in interpreting animal behavior makes studying the effects of vessel activities problematic, attempts have been made to evaluate the impacts of vessel activities such as whale watch operations on whales in the Gulf of Maine. However, no conclusive detrimental effects have been demonstrated.

State fishery operations

Very little is known about the level of take in fisheries that operate strictly in state waters. However, depending on the fishery in question, many state permit holders also hold federal licenses; therefore, Section 7 consultations on federal actions in those fisheries address some state-water activity. Impacts on sea turtles and shortnose sturgeon from state fisheries may be greater than those from federal activities in certain areas due to the distribution of these species. Impacts of state fisheries on endangered whales are addressed as appropriate through the MMPA take reduction planning process. NMFS is actively participating in a cooperative effort with the Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission (ASMFC) and member states to standardize and/or implement programs to collect information on level of effort and bycatch of protected species in state fisheries. When this information becomes available, it can be used to

refine take reduction plan measures in state waters. With regard to whale entanglements, vessel identification is occasionally recovered from gear removed from entangled animals. With this information, it is possible to determine whether the gear was deployed by a federal or state permit holder and whether the vessel was fishing in federal or state waters. In 1998, 3 entanglements of humpback whales in state-water fisheries were documented. Nearshore entanglements of turtles have been documented; however, information is not available on whether the vessels involved were permitted by the state or by NMFS.

In 1998, East Coast states from Maine through North Carolina began implementing regulations pursuant to the Year 1 requirements of *Amendment 3 to the Coastal Fishery Management Plan for American Lobster* (ASMFC 1997). The federal ACFCMA plan is designed to be parallel and complementary to the ASMFC plan. Regulations are geared toward reducing lobster fishing effort by 2005 to reverse the overfished status of the resource. Amendment 3 contained the outline of a long-term plan with annual targets during the rebuilding period and initial effort reduction measures for some areas. However, the development of most of the specific effort reduction measures necessary to meet the annual targets was left to the deliberations of the Lobster Conservation Management Teams (LCMT) established for each of the 7 lobster management areas. States in the 6 coastal areas must implement regulations according to a compliance schedule established in Amendment 3. Effort reduction measures will be similar to those discussed in the federal ACFCMA plan. Several states implemented trap caps in 1998. Further trap limits, which the compliance schedule requires for Area 1 and the Outer Cape Lobster Management Area in 1999, will generate some localized risk reduction for protected species in those areas. If all states elect to implement a significant trap reduction program, the overall entanglement risk from lobster pot gear could be substantially reduced. For the Amendment 3 measures not yet implemented, the ASMFC has recently conducted public hearings on the first half of the area-based effort reduction measures developed by LCMTs. The ASMFC will conduct public hearings and develop the second part of the remaining measures in the fall of 1999. As the definition of the fishery in the MMPA includes state water effort, vessels fishing in state waters will be required to comply with MMPA take reduction plan regulations designed to reduce entanglement risk to whales.

Pulses of greatly elevated sea turtle strandings occur with regularity in the Mid-Atlantic area, particularly along North Carolina through southern Virginia in the early spring/late fall, coincident with turtle migrations. For example, in the last weeks of April through early May 2000, approximately 300 turtles, mostly loggerheads, stranded north of Oregon Inlet, NC. Gillnets were found with four of the carcasses. These strandings are likely caused by state fisheries as well as federal fisheries, although not any one fishery has been identified as the major cause. Fishing effort data indicate that fisheries targeting monkfish, dogfish, and bluefish were operating in the area of the strandings. Strandings in this area represent at best, 7-13% of the actual nearshore mortality (Epperly et al. 1996).

Strandings in Virginia are also high in May and June, with an average of 157 turtles stranding in 1997-2000. Specifically, from May 19 to June 11, 2001, an estimated 160 sea turtles washed ashore dead in Virginia. Loggerhead turtles comprised the majority of the strandings (137), but 16 Kemp's ridley, 1 green, and 6 unidentified sea turtles also stranded during this time. Based upon the available observer information, the nature and location of the turtle strandings, the type of fishing gear in the vicinity of the greatest number of strandings, and the known interactions between sea turtles and large mesh and stringer pound net leaders, pound nets were considered to be a likely cause of these high sea turtle strandings. On June 18, 2001, NMFS issued a temporary rule that restricted the use of all pound net leaders of 8 inches or greater stretched mesh and all pound net leaders with stringers in Virginia waters of the mainstem Chesapeake Bay and tributaries for a period of 30 days.

Studies by Bass et al. (1998), Norrgard (1995) and Rankin-Baransky (1997) indicate that the percentage of northern loggerheads in this area is highly over-represented in the strandings when compared to the ~9% representation from this subpopulation in the overall U.S. sea turtle nesting populations. Specifically, the genetic composition of sea turtles in the action area is 25-54% from the northern subpopulation, 46-64% from the South Florida sub-population, and 3-16% from the Yucatan subpopulation. The cumulative removal of these turtles on an annual basis would severely impact the recovery of this species.

C. Conservation and recovery actions shaping the environmental baseline

A number of activities are in progress that ameliorate some of the adverse effects on listed species posed by activities summarized in the Environmental Baseline. Education and outreach activities are considered one of the primary tools to reduce the risk of collision represented by the operation of private and commercial vessels. The USCG educates mariners on whale protection measures and uses its programs -- such as radio broadcasts and notice to mariner publications -- to alert the public to potential whale concentration areas. The USCG also participates in international activities (discussed below) to decrease the potential for commercial ships to strike a whale. Recently, an educational video on the ship strike problem was produced and is being distributed to mariners. In addition, outreach efforts under the ALWTRP for fishermen are also increasing awareness among fishermen that is expected in the long run to help reduce the adverse effects of vessel operations on threatened and endangered species in the action area.

In addition to the ESA measures for federal activities mentioned in the previous section, numerous recovery activities are being implemented to decrease the adverse effects of private and commercial vessel operations on the species in the action area and during the time period of this consultation. These include the Sighting Advisory

System (SAS), other activities recommended by the Northeast Recovery Plan Implementation Team for the Right and Humpback Whale Recovery Plans (NEIT) and Southeast Recovery Plan Implementation Team for the Right Whale Recovery Plan (SEIT), and NMFS regulations.

Whales

In 1994, NMFS established the NEIT for the northern right whale and humpback whale recovery plans. Membership of the NEIT consists of representatives from federal and state regulatory agencies and is advised by a panel of scientists with expertise in right and humpback whale biology. The Recovery Plans describe steps to reduce impacts to levels that will allow the two species to recover and rank the various recovery actions in order of importance. The NEIT provides advice to the various federal and state agencies or private entities on achieving these national goals within the Northeast Region. The NEIT agreed to focus on habitat and vessel related issues and rely on the take reduction planning process under the MMPA for reducing takes in commercial fisheries. Through the deliberations of the NEIT, NMFS has implemented a number of activities that reduce the potential for adverse effects to endangered whales from the aforementioned state, federal, and private activities. For example, the NEIT was the driving force behind the outreach activities described above which promote awareness of the right whale ship strike problem among commercial ship operators.

The Northeast Sighting Advisory System (SAS), originally called the "Early Warning System", was designed to document the presence of right whales in and around critical habitat and nearby shipping/traffic separation lanes in order to avert ship strikes. Through a fax-on-demand system, fishermen and other vessel operators can obtain SAS sighting reports and, in some cases, make necessary adjustments in operations to decrease the potential for interactions with right whales. The SAS activity has also served as the only form of active entanglement monitoring in the critical habitat areas, and several entanglements in both the Cape Cod Bay and Great South Channel areas have been reported by SAS flights. Some of these sighting efforts have resulted in successful disentanglement of right whales. SAS flights have also contributed to sightings of dead floating animals that can occasionally be retrieved to increase our knowledge of the biology of the species and effects of human impacts. The Commonwealth of Massachusetts was a key collaborator in the SAS pilot effort and has continued the partnership. The USCG has also played a vital role in this effort, providing both air and sea support as well as a commitment of resources to the NMFS operations. The State of Maine and Canada Department of Fisheries and Oceans have expressed interest in conducting this type of program in their coastal waters. It is expected that other potential sources of sightings such as the U.S. Navy may contribute regularly to this effort following NMFS' commitment to support the program over the long term. Due to increased awareness, U.S. Navy vessels have begun to contribute sightings of entangled and dead floating animals in recent years. NMFS' Maine ALWTRP Coordinator is also working with local aquaria to collect information on whale sightings from fishing vessels in the Gulf of

Maine. All this cooperation will increase the chance of success of this program in diverting potential impacts in the environmental baseline.

In one recovery action aimed at reducing vessel-related impacts, including disturbance, NMFS published a proposed rule in August 1996 restricting vessel approach to right whales (61 FR 41116) to a distance of 500 yards. The Recovery Plan for the Northern Right Whale identified anthropogenic disturbance as one of many factors that had some potential to impede right whale recovery (NMFS 1991b). Following public comment, NMFS published an interim final rule in February 1997 codifying the regulations. With certain exceptions, the rule prohibits both boats and aircraft from approaching any right whale closer than 500 yds. Exceptions for closer approach are provided for the following situations, when: (a) compliance would create an imminent and serious threat to a person, vessel, or aircraft; (b) a vessel is restricted in its ability to maneuver around the 500-yard perimeter of a whale; (c) a vessel is investigating or involved in the rescue of an entangled or injured right whale; or (d) the vessel is participating in a permitted activity, such as a research project. If a vessel operator finds that he or she has unknowingly approached closer than 500 yds, the rule requires that a course be steered away from the whale at slow, safe speed. Exceptions are made for emergency situations and where certain authorizations are provided. In addition, all aircraft, except those involved in whale watching activities, are excepted from these approach regulations. The regulations are consistent with the Commonwealth of Massachusetts' approach regulations for right whales. This rule is expected to reduce the potential for vessel collisions and other adverse vessel-related effects in the environmental baseline.

As part of NEIT activities, a Ship Strike Workshop was held in December 1996 to inform the shipping community of the need to participate in efforts to reduce the impacts of commercial vessel traffic on northern right whales. The workshop summarized current research efforts using new shipboard and moored technologies as deterrents, and a report was given on ship design studies currently being conducted by the New England Aquarium and Massachusetts Institute of Technology. This workshop increased awareness in the shipping community, which is expected to further contribute to reducing the threat of ship strikes of right whales. In addition, a Cape Cod Canal Tide Chart that included information on critical habitat areas and the need for close watch during peak right whale activity was distributed widely to professional mariners and ships passing through the canal. A radio warning transmission was also transmitted by Canal traffic managers to vessels transiting the Canal during peak Northern right whale activity periods. Follow-up meetings were held with New England Port Authority and pilots to notify commercial ship traffic to keep a close watch during peak right whale movement periods.

In April 1998, the USCG submitted, on behalf of the United States, a proposal to the International Maritime Organization (IMO) requesting

approval of a mandatory ship reporting system (MSR) in two areas off the east coast of the United States. The USCG worked closely with NMFS and other agencies on technical aspects of the proposal. The package was submitted to the IMO's Subcommittee on Safety and Navigation for consideration and submission to the Marine Safety Committee at IMO and approved in December 1998. The USCG and NOAA will play important roles in helping to operate the MSR system, which was implemented on July 1, 1999.

Through deliberations of the NEIT and its Ship Strike Committee, NMFS and the National Ocean Service (NOS) recently revised the whale watch guidelines for the Northeast, including the Studds-Stellwagen National Marine Sanctuary. Additional NEIT recommendations regarding whale watching activities are under discussion.

The NEIT also has a Habitat Committee, which deals with issues of habitat quality. The Committee was actively involved in commenting on several activities such as a new sewage outfall system. In addition, planning is underway for a food web study to provide better understanding of whale prey resource requirements and how activities such as the sewage outfall might affect the availability of plankton resources to feeding right whales.

Sea Turtles

NMFS has implemented a series of regulations aimed at reducing the potential for incidental mortality of sea turtles in commercial fisheries. In particular, NMFS has required the use of TEDs in southeast U.S. shrimp trawls since 1989 and in summer flounder trawls in the Mid-Atlantic area (south of Cape Henry, Virginia) since 1992. It has been estimated that TEDs exclude 97% of the turtles caught in such trawls. These regulations have been refined over the years to ensure that TED effectiveness is maximized through proper placement and installation, configuration (e.g., width of bar spacing), floatation, and more widespread use. However, with the expansion of fisheries to previously underutilized species of fish, trawl effort directed at species other than summer flounder -- and that does not meet the definition of a summer flounder trawl as specified in the TED regulations -- may be an undocumented source of mortality for which TEDs should be considered.

In 1993 (with a final rule implemented 1995), NMFS established a Leatherback Conservation Zone to restrict shrimp trawl activities from off the coast of Cape Canaveral, Florida, to the North Carolina/Virginia border. This provides for short-term closures when high concentrations of normally pelagically distributed leatherbacks are recorded in more coastal waters where the shrimp fleet operates. This measure is necessary because, due to their size, adult leatherbacks are larger than the escape openings of most NMFS-approved TEDs. Two-week closures were implemented four times in 1998 in the Leatherback Conservation Zone to protect migrating turtles.

NMFS is also working to develop a TED which can be effectively used in

a type of trawl known as a flynet, which is sometimes used in the mid-Atlantic and northeast fisheries for summer flounder, scup, and black sea bass. If observer data conclusively demonstrate a need for such TEDs, regulations will be formulated to require use of TEDs in this fishery, once such a device has been developed.

In addition, NMFS has been active in public outreach efforts to educate fishermen regarding sea turtle handling and resuscitation techniques. In addition to making this information widely available to all fishermen, NMFS has conducted workshops with longline fishermen to discuss incidental take issues and to provide guidance on handling and release procedures. NMFS intends to continue these outreach efforts and hopes to reach all fishermen participating in the pelagic longline fishery over the next one to two years.

There is an extensive array of Sea Turtle Stranding and Salvage Network (STSSN) participants along the Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico coasts which not only collects data on dead sea turtles, but also rescues and rehabilitates live stranded turtles. Data collected by the STSSN are used to monitor stranding levels and compare them with fishing activity in order to determine whether additional restrictions on fishing operations are needed. These data are also used to monitor incidence of disease, study toxicology and contaminants, and conduct genetic studies to determine population structure. All of the states that participate in the STSSN are collecting tissue for and/or conducting genetic studies to better understand the population dynamics of the small subpopulation of northern nesting loggerheads. These states also tag live turtles when encountered (either via the stranding network through incidental takes or in-water studies). Tagging studies help provide an understanding of sea turtle movements, longevity, and reproductive patterns.

There is currently no organized, formal program for at-sea disentanglement of sea turtles. However, recommendations for such programs are being considered by NMFS pursuant to conservation recommendations issued with several recent Section 7 consultations. Entangled sea turtles found at sea in recent years have been disentangled on an ad hoc basis by STSSN members, the whale disentanglement team, the USCG, and fishermen.

NMFS regulations require fishermen to handle sea turtles in such a manner as to prevent injury. As stated in 50 CFR 223.206(d)(1), any sea turtle taken incidentally during fishing or scientific research activities must be handled with due care to prevent injury to live specimens, observed for activity, and returned to the water according to a series of procedures which were recently published.

D. Other potential sources of impacts in the action area

A number of anthropogenic activities are likely to directly or indirectly affect listed species in the action area of this consultation. These sources of potential impact include previous dredging projects, pollution, water quality, and sonic activities.

However, the impacts from these activities are difficult to measure. Where possible, conservation actions are being implemented to monitor or study impacts from these elusive sources.

Close coordination is occurring through the Section 7 process on both dredging and disposal sites to develop monitoring programs and to minimize the potential for vessel-related impacts. As mentioned previously, whole sea turtles and sea turtle parts have been taken in hopper dredging operations in Thimble Shoal Channel. Several of these takes involved decomposed turtle parts, but a significant number of these takes involved fresh dead animals. Dredging in the surrounding area could have influenced the distribution of sea turtles and/or disrupted potential foraging habitat.

Within the action area, sea turtles and optimal sea turtle habitat most likely have been impacted by pollution. Marine debris (e.g., discarded fishing line or lines from boats) can entangle turtles in the water and drown them. Turtles commonly ingest plastic or mistake debris for food, as observed with the leatherback sea turtle. The leatherback's preferred diet includes jellyfish, but similar looking plastic bags are often found in the turtle's stomach contents (Magnuson et al. 1990).

Chemical contaminants may also have an effect on sea turtle reproduction and survival. While the effects of contaminants on turtles is relatively unclear, pollution may be linked to the fibropapilloma virus that kills many turtles each year (NMFS 1997). If pollution is not the causal agent, it may make sea turtles more susceptible to disease by weakening their immune systems.

Excessive turbidity due to coastal development and/or construction sites could influence sea turtle foraging ability. Turtles are not very easily affected by changes in water quality or increased suspended sediments, but if these alterations make habitat less suitable for turtles and hinder their capability to forage, eventually they would tend to leave or avoid these less desirable areas (Ruben and Morreale 1999).

NMFS and the U.S. Navy have been working cooperatively to establish a policy for monitoring and managing acoustic impacts from anthropogenic sound sources in the marine environment. Acoustic impacts can include temporary or permanent injury, habitat exclusion, habituation, and disruption of other normal behavior patterns. It is expected that the policy on managing anthropogenic sound in the oceans will provide guidance for programs such as the use of acoustic deterrent devices in reducing marine mammal-fishery interactions and review of federal activities and permits for research involving acoustic activities.

Summary and Synthesis of the Status of the Species and Environmental Baseline

In summary, the potential for activities that may have previously impacted listed species (dredging, vessel operations, military

activities, commercial and state fisheries, etc.), to affect whales, sea turtles, and shortnose sturgeon remains throughout the action area of this consultation on the ACOE's dredging of the Thimble Shoal Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel. However, recovery actions have been undertaken as described and continue to evolve. Although those actions have not been in place long enough for a detectable change in the right whale population (or other listed species populations) to have occurred, those actions are expected to benefit the right whale and other listed species in the foreseeable future. These actions should not only improve conditions for listed whales and sea turtles, they are expected to reduce sources of human-induced mortality as well.

However, a number of factors in the existing baseline for the large whales considered in this Opinion (especially right whales), and sea turtles (especially loggerheads and leatherbacks) leave cause for considerable concern regarding the status of these populations, the current impacts upon these populations, and the impacts associated with future activities planned by the state and federal agencies.

- The right whale population continues to be declining. Based on recent estimates this population currently numbers fewer than 300 individuals and only one calf was observed in 1999. Losses of adult whales due to ship strikes and entanglements in fishing gear continue to depress the recovery of this species.

- The leatherback sea turtle is declining worldwide. Not considering takes associated with the NMFS managed fisheries, other sources of mortality incurred by this population exceed the 1% sustainable level projected by Spotila et al. (1996).

- The northern subpopulation of loggerhead sea turtles is declining and currently numbers only about 3,800 nesting females. The percent of northern loggerheads represented in sea turtle strandings in northern U.S. Atlantic states is over-representative of their total numbers in the overall loggerhead population. Current take levels from other sources, particularly fisheries (especially trawl and gillnet fisheries), are high.

EFFECTS OF THE ACTION

This section of a biological opinion assesses the direct and indirect effects of the proposed action on threatened and endangered species or critical habitat, together with the effects of other activities that are interrelated or interdependent (50 CFR 402.02). Indirect effects are those that are caused later in time, but are still reasonably certain to occur. Interrelated actions are those that are part of a larger action and depend upon the larger action for their justification. Interdependent actions are those that have no independent utility apart from the action under consideration (50 CFR 402.02).

Several listed species are likely to be present in the action area at

various times of the year and may therefore be adversely affected directly or indirectly by the dredging and/or transport phases of this project. The primary concern for sea turtles and shortnose sturgeon is entrainment in the draghead of the hopper dredge, while the main concern for endangered whales involves the potential for vessel collisions.

The Thimble Shoal Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel areas are part of the coastal corridor through which sea turtles migrate. In addition, the Chesapeake Bay is apparently an important foraging area for juvenile sea turtles. Turtles are likely to be in the area from April to November, and interactions could occur during migrations into or out of the Bay or while sea turtles are foraging in the area.

The two most common sea turtle species in the action area are the loggerhead and Kemp's ridley sea turtles. Leatherback sea turtles may also be present in the more offshore areas of the project. Hawksbill and green turtles may occasionally enter the area and may therefore interact with the project activities. However, these instances would be extremely rare. Endangered whales, including humpback, fin, and right whales, could migrate through the action area. As these species are found more frequently in deeper offshore waters rather than in shallow nearshore or inshore waters, they would be more likely to occur in the vicinity of Atlantic Ocean Channel.

The project under consideration is the deepening and the maintenance dredging of the Thimble Shoal Federal Navigation Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel. Sea turtles may occur in the action area at various times of the year and may therefore be adversely affected directly or indirectly by the dredging operations. Sea turtles are likely to be feeding on or near the bottom of the Chesapeake Bay during the warmer months, with loggerheads and Kemp's ridleys being the most common species in these waters. One of the main factors influencing sea turtle presence in northern waters is seasonal temperature patterns (Ruben and Morreale 1999). Temperature is correlated with the time of year, with the warmer waters in the late spring, summer, and early fall being the most suitable for cold-blooded sea turtles. If sea turtles are expected to be more common in the action area during the warmer months, the likelihood that dredging activities would affect sea turtles is greater at this time than in other times of the year.

The presence of shortnose sturgeon in the Chesapeake Bay has recently been documented (Welsh et al. 1999). Within the Chesapeake Bay, this species has been more frequently documented in Maryland waters, but has historically been found as far south as the Rappahannock River. Distribution and movements of shortnose sturgeon in the Bay are poorly understood at this time, in part because this species is often confused with Atlantic sturgeon. Therefore, the NMFS must implement a conservative approach and conclude that shortnose sturgeon may be present in the project area and that the species may be vulnerable to project impacts.

Although there is currently no evidence of shortnose sturgeon presence

in the Thimble Shoal Channel or Atlantic Ocean Channel, the occurrence in other areas of the Bay and rivers to the south suggests that this species may be present on rare occasions. No information is currently available on which times of the year this species could be present. However, because of the rarity of the species in the Virginia waters of the Chesapeake Bay, NMFS anticipates the level of interaction, if any, to be extremely low or discountable. Likewise, shortnose sturgeon are unlikely to make frequent use any of the areas targeted for dredging for feeding, spawning or overwintering purposes.

Dredging of approximately 2.5 million cubic yards from the inner harbor channels will likely be performed using a hydraulic pipeline dredge, and the dredged material will be placed in the Craney Island upland disposal site. The use of mechanical and hydraulic dredging equipment other than hopper dredges is not expected to adversely affect sea turtles or marine mammals. Hopper dredges will be used to dredge in the Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels. NMFS has determined that dredging of the Thimble Shoal Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel may adversely affect threatened and endangered species in three different ways: (1) the proposed action can alter foraging habitat; (2) the dredges can entrain and kill sea turtles and shortnose sturgeon; and (3) the proposed action can increase the number of species (turtles and whales in particular) injured or killed in collisions with vessels by increasing vessel traffic in the action area. Biological interactions result from disturbance of normal foraging behavior and changes in the composition of the marine community.

The sea turtle recovery plans identify the impacts of dredging as both the destruction or degradation of habitat and the incidental take of sea turtles. The proposed project involves both types of impacts. Since dredging involves removing the bottom material down to a specified depth, the benthic environment could be severely impacted by dredging operations. Dredging would likely cause indirect effects on sea turtles by reducing prey species through the alteration of the existing biotic assemblages. The most common sea turtles found in the action area, the loggerhead and Kemp's ridley, forage mainly on benthic species, namely crabs and mollusks (Morreale and Standora 1992, Bjorndal 1997). The loss of foraging habitat could be especially detrimental to sea turtles because these species primarily enter shallow harbors and bays to forage (NMFS 1995). Turtles are not very easily affected by changes in water quality, increased suspended sediments, or even by moderate alterations of flow regimes. Nevertheless, if these changes make the habitat less suitable for turtles, in the long run sea turtles would tend to leave or avoid these less desirable areas, especially if they became food limited (Ruben and Morreale 1999).

Of the listed species considered in this Opinion, loggerhead sea turtles are the most likely to utilize these areas for feeding. However, it is important to note that some of prey species targeted by turtles and shortnose sturgeon are mobile and are likely to avoid the dredge. In addition, the proposed dredging is not located in an area

identified as critical habitat or a major foraging area. Sea turtles are not likely to be more attracted to the Thimble Shoal or Atlantic Ocean channel area than to other foraging areas in the Bay and should be able to find sufficient prey in alternate areas. The absence of sightings of shortnose sturgeon in Virginia waters of the Chesapeake Bay suggests that this species is unlikely to detect or be affected by any changes in the density of prey in the areas proposed for dredging. Thus, NMFS anticipates that the maintenance dredging of both the Thimble Shoal Channel and the Atlantic Ocean Channel are not likely to disrupt normal feeding behaviors for sea turtles or shortnose sturgeon and are not likely to remove critical amounts of prey resources from the Bay.

Entrainment is the most imminent danger for sea turtles and shortnose sturgeon during selected dredging operations because hopper dredges are known to entrain these species (Magnuson et al. 1990, Slay 1995). Mortality in hopper dredging operations occurs when the species are sucked into the dredge draghead, pumped through the intake pipe and then killed as they cycle through the centrifugal pump and into the hopper. Because entrainment is believed to occur primarily while the draghead is operating on the bottom, it is likely that only those species feeding or resting on or near the bottom would be vulnerable to entrainment. In rare cases, animals may be entrained if suction is created in the draghead by current flow while the device is being placed or removed. However, it is possible to operate the dredge in a manner that minimizes potential for such incidents as noted in the Monitoring Specifications for Hopper Dredges (Appendix B).

There is more documentation of entrained sea turtles than shortnose sturgeon, likely as a result of the turtle's larger size. In King's Bay, Georgia, turtle parts were found at the mouth of the hopper dredge draghead (Slay and Richardson 1988), and at least 38 sea turtle mortalities associated with hopper dredging were recorded during 1991 in three ports located in Brunswick, Georgia, Savannah, Georgia, and Charleston, South Carolina (Slay 1995).

Documented mortalities are more common in the southeastern U.S. probably due to the greater abundance of turtles in these waters, but the potential for an individual sea turtle to be entrained in hopper dredges would be the same for turtles present in the Northeast and Mid-Atlantic. Sea turtle mortality in dredging activities has been documented in the Northeast; a loggerhead turtle was taken by a hopper dredge off the coast of Sea Girt, New Jersey during an ACOE beach renourishment project on August 23, 1997. This turtle was closed up in the hinge between the draghead and the dragarm as the dragarm lifted off the bottom. Additionally, during the dredging of 1,200,000 cy of sediment from Delaware Bay in 1994, a loggerhead turtle was entrained in a hopper dredge.

As mentioned previously, maintenance dredging of Thimble Shoal was conducted in the summer of 2000. During this time, three sea turtles were taken in the hopper dredge. In all of these cases, a draghead deflector was used and the water temperature was 25° C. On July 24,

2000, three unidentifiable pieces of plastron were recovered from the discharge screening. On August 22, 2000, a fresh loggerhead was recovered from the port draghead. Only the head, front flippers, 1/3 of the carapace, and 1/2 of the plastron was recovered. This turtle's neck was broken, the muscles were still pink, and the barnacles on the carapace were alive, indicating that the dredge was the likely cause of death. On August 25, 2000, a piece of loggerhead carapace and attached tissue was removed, and in a subsequent load, a section of digestive tract was recovered. On August 27, 2000, a decomposed loggerhead with a missing section of carapace and many broken bones was recovered. These three takes (two on August 25 and one on August 27) were believed to be the same animal given the size of animal, species, location, state of decomposition, and sections of missing carapace.

Sea turtles were also taken during dredging in the Thimble Shoal Channel in the initial stages of the Virginia Beach project in August 2001. On August 7, 2001, a fresh, whole loggerhead with a cracked carapace was discovered from the draghead, and on August 9, a fresh loggerhead was found lodged in the port draghead, inboard side of the visor. Only the carapace and right front flipper was present. On August 16, the decomposed right front flipper from an unknown species of sea turtle was recovered from the inflow starboard fore screening basket, and on August 17, sections of a loggerhead's carapace, plastron, muscle, and digestive tract were found in the inflow fore port screening basket. Several small veins and arteries still had a bright red coloration, indicating that the turtle likely died recently. On August 20, in the inflow port aft screening basket, the rear left flipper, femoral scutes, and additional skin, muscle and bone, from a loggerhead turtle were found. The turtle was determined to be a fresh dead turtle due to the condition of the specimens. The decomposed front flippers of a loggerhead were recovered from the port draghead (a portion partially underneath the draghead and a portion pinched in the hinge on outside of draghead) on August 21, and on August 22, a severely decomposed portion of a loggerhead carapace was found in the inflow mid screening basket. While it is difficult to determine conclusively, it is possible that the decomposed parts taken on August 21 and August 22 were from the same turtle. On August 24, the decomposed rear flipper of a loggerhead was recovered from the inflow fore screening basket, and on August 28, a fresh loggerhead, missing only a portion of its carapace, was found lodged in the bottom of the starboard draghead. Fragments of this loggerhead's carapace were also removed from the intake screening basket. On September 26, 2001, a decomposed piece of an unknown turtle's plastron was found in the overflow screening basket, and on October 23, a carapace piece from an unknown species of turtle was found in the overflow screening basket. A piece of Kemp's ridley carapace was recovered from the inflow screening basket on November 4. On November 11, two separate incidents were documented at different times, including a portion of a flipper and two ribs without attached tissue from an unknown species of turtle, and a portion of the plastron (with no tissue) from an unknown species of turtle. On November 20, two carapace fragments and associated tissue from a fresh loggerhead were taken. These takes

resulted in a total of 15 incidents when turtles and/or turtle parts were taken in association with dredging in Thimble Shoal Channel.

Thus, during dredging for the Virginia Beach project, there were fifteen instances in which sea turtles or sea turtle parts were taken. Five of the incidentally captured turtles were considered to be fresh dead turtles, and the remaining incidents involved decomposed turtle flippers and/or carapace parts. As mentioned, it is difficult to determine if the decomposed turtle parts found on the dredge screening on August 21 and 22 represent one or two separate turtles. It is also possible that the four instances of decomposed turtles and turtle parts found in the screening baskets died from other causes, not related to dredging activities. NMFS does consider decomposed animals taken in Federal operations (dredging, power plant operations, etc.) to be takes, as the possession of a listed species is considered a take. As NMFS factors in these instances in the development of an anticipated incidental take level, these incidental takes of decomposed animals would count against a Federal action agency's Incidental Take Statement, unless the biological opinion and Incidental Take Statement indicate otherwise.

During the Virginia Beach Hurricane Protection Project, relocation trawling was performed prior to hopper dredging in order to minimize the number of turtles taken in hopper dredges by displacing sea turtles that were in the dredging channel. As of October 4, 2001, 9 loggerhead turtles and 3 Kemp's ridleys were captured and relocated during trawling operations.

The level of effort in the Virginia Beach Hurricane Protection project is comparable to the proposed deepening project. Therefore, the interactions with sea turtles during the proposed deepening would be expected to be relatively the same as the interactions during the Virginia Beach Hurricane Protection Project. Typical maintenance dredging generally involves a smaller magnitude of material to be removed than deepening projects, and sea turtle interactions, therefore, would be expected to be less. As such, the level of sea turtle interactions would depend on the extent, duration, and magnitude of dredging anticipated.

It is also possible that certain environmental conditions increased the numbers of turtles in the Thimble Shoal Channel in August of 2001. However, those environmental conditions are unknown at this time and water column temperatures were relatively typical for August in Virginia (ranging from 26 to 28°C on the days when takes occurred). It is also possible that more turtles were taken in August 2001 due to the methods of operating the dredge. It appears that the Endangered Species Protection Protocol was followed and measures to reduce turtle takes were implemented. However, these operations should be verified (and training to reduce future takes should be conducted) by the dredge inspectors who will be onboard future dredging activities in the Thimble Shoal Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel.

Shortnose sturgeon prefer deeper waters, which would magnify the potential for dredging interactions occurring in the deep channels. While turtles primarily forage in shallow environments, they have been found resting in deeper waters which could cause additional impacts from dredging activities. Marine mammals are highly unlikely to be entrained by the dredge. In 1981, observers documented the take of 71 loggerheads by a hopper dredge at the Port Canaveral Ship Channel, Florida (Slay and Richardson 1988). This channel is a deep, low productivity environment in the Southeast Atlantic that encourages turtles to rest on the bottom, making them extremely vulnerable to entrainment. The large number of turtle mortalities at the Port Canaveral Ship Channel in the early 1980s resulted in part from turtles being buried in the mud, but this is the only area on the East Coast where this is known to occur. Chelonid turtles have been found to make use of deeper, less productive channels as resting areas that afford protection from predators because of the low energy, deep water conditions. Leatherbacks have been shown to dive to great depths, often spending a considerable amount of time on the bottom (NMFS 1995). Regardless, crushing of sea turtles is unlikely to happen in the action area because turtles are not expected to burrow into the sediment and become dormant as they apparently do further south. In the rare event that shortnose sturgeon are in the area, individuals of this species could incur crushing injuries (i.e., injuries other than from actual entrainment).

Contact injuries resulting from dredge movements would occur at or near the water surface and could therefore involve any of the listed species present in the area. Because the dredge is unlikely to be moving at speeds greater than 7 knots during dredging operations, blunt trauma injuries resulting from contact with the hull are unlikely. It is more likely that contact injuries would involve the propeller of the vessel. In general, vessel strikes are rare events but a number of stranded turtles do exhibit wounds consistent with vessel interactions.

There have not been any reports of dredge vessels colliding with listed species, but contact injuries with the dredge are more likely to occur when the dredge is moving from the dredging area to the disposal site. While the distance between these areas is only approximately 4 to 25 miles, the dredge at transit would be moving at faster speeds than during dredging operations, particularly when empty while returning to the channel. Dredges which have been used in the past can operate at speeds of at least 12.1 knots when loaded and 13.4 knots when empty. Thus, vessel strikes are a greater concern during the transit phase of the project. However, the ACOE's proposal to institute a bridge watch during peak abundance periods of turtles, and for whales year-round, reduces the potential for interactions. If animals are sighted and the dredge operator is alerted immediately, the dredge operator should be able to avoid most collisions. Due to these precautions, NMFS does not believe that collisions between sea turtles and dredge vessels will occur. Since it is unlikely that right, humpback, or fin whales will occur in the areas proposed for dredging, and shortnose sturgeon are unlikely to be on the surface where they are vulnerable to a ship strike, NMFS does not anticipate

that shortnose sturgeon, or right, humpback, or fin whales will be injured by any collisions with the dredge vessels.

Estimating the Number of Turtles Taken in Dredging Activities

NMFS has anticipated the amount of incidental take that may occur during the proposed dredging activities for a range of dredged material quantities. The amount of incidental take will likely be dependent on the magnitude of the project, but as it is difficult to know the exact amount of material that will be dredged in any given year in the future, the anticipated take amount was determined for several different magnitudes of dredge material. As stated previously, the project to deepen the two channels could take up to four years to complete. However, it is possible that this dredging could be completed in less than one year.,A large hopper dredge can potentially remove up to 20,000 cy in one day. If this were the case, dredging of 5 million cy would be completed in 250 days. ACOE has indicated that, for this project, this is unlikely due to possible funding constraints. However, because the potential exists to dredge this quantity in one year, the NMFS has set the upper limit of the amount of material to be dredged in the Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels annually used to determine take as 5 million cy. Based on previous dredging activities and takes in the project area, NMFS anticipates that up to 18 loggerhead and 4 Kemp's ridley sea turtles could be entrained during Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels dredging operations that involve removing up to 5 million cy of material. For dredging of the Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels that will remove up to 3 million cy in one or both of the channels in any given year, NMFS anticipates that up to 10 loggerhead and 2 Kemp's ridley sea turtles could be entrained. NMFS further anticipates that 4 loggerhead and 1 Kemp's ridley sea turtle could be entrained during dredging activities that combined will remove up to 1 million cy in any given year in the Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels.

This anticipated take level considered the level of previous sea turtle takes in Thimble Shoal Channel, the previous incidental take levels for other dredging projects in the vicinity of the action area including Cape Henry, York Spit, York River entrance, and Rappahannock Shoal Channels maintenance dredging (which would dredge up to 5 million cy of material) and the Virginia Beach Project (which would dredge up to 2.7 million cy of material), and the anticipated magnitude of dredging. While decomposed turtle parts are considered to be takes, NMFS is most concerned with the takes that appeared to be fresh dead sea turtles and therefore directly attributable to the dredging activities. Thus, the anticipated level of take refers to those turtles which NMFS confirms as freshly dead.

Due to their rare occurrence in the action area, NMFS does not anticipate shortnose sturgeon to be taken regardless of the time of the year the dredging occurs. If in the future, new information suggests otherwise, NMFS will re-assess the anticipated amount of shortnose sturgeon take during these maintenance dredging and deepening operations.

Loggerhead sea turtles. Like other long-lived sea turtles, loggerheads delay maturity to allow individuals to grow larger and produce more offspring. As discussed in the Environmental Baseline section, more offspring may compensate for the high natural mortality in the early life stages; i.e., mortality rates of eggs and hatchling are generally high and decrease with age and growth. The risks of delayed maturity are that annual survival of the later life stages must be high in order for the population to grow. Studies demonstrate that population growth is highly sensitive to changes in annual survival of the juvenile and adult stages. Crouse (1999) reports, "Not only have large juveniles already survived many mortality factors and have a high reproductive value, but there are more large juveniles than adults in the population. Therefore, relatively small changes in the annual survival rate impact a large segment of the population, magnifying the effect."

The loggerhead sea turtles in the action area are likely to represent differing proportions of the five western Atlantic subpopulations. Although the northern nesting subpopulation produces about 9 percent of the total loggerhead nests, they comprise more of the loggerhead sea turtles found in foraging areas from the northeastern U.S. to Georgia: between 25 and 59 percent of the loggerhead sea turtles in this area are from the northern subpopulation (Sears 1994, Norrgard 1995, Sears et al. 1995, Rankin-Baransky 1997, Bass et al. 1998). The northern subpopulation may be experiencing a significant decline (2.5 - 3.2% for various beaches) due to a combination of natural and anthropogenic factors, demographic variation, and a loss of genetic viability. As discussed in the status of the species section, it is possible that most of the loggerheads which may be taken during the ACOE's proposed dredging activities may originate from the northern subpopulation of loggerheads. Conversely, turtles originating from the southern subpopulation could likewise be taken in large numbers.

Based on previous dredging activities which have employed the same protocols proposed for use by the ACOE for dredging during warmer months, the magnitude of the project, and previous levels of incidental take in Virginia channels, NMFS anticipates up to 18 loggerheads and 4 Kemp's ridleys could be entrained, seriously injured, or killed in any given year during deepening operations in which up to 5 million cy of material may be removed. For maintenance dredging involving up to 3 million cy of material in one or both of the channels, NMFS anticipates that up to 10 loggerhead and 2 Kemp's ridley sea turtles could be taken. NMFS further anticipates that 4 loggerhead and 1 Kemp's ridley sea turtle could be entrained during maintenance dredging activities that will remove up to 1 million cy in any given year in one or both of the channels considered in this opinion.

The death of up to 18 loggerheads during the course of maintenance dredging in these channels would represent a loss of less than 0.49 percent of the estimated number of nesting females in the northern subpopulation. This level of take represents the high end of the spectrum for the proposed project because typical deepening or

maintenance dredging would not likely involve the maximum amount of material for each channel in the same year. If 10 loggerheads were killed during the course of deepening or maintenance dredging in these channels, this would represent a loss of less than 0.27 percent of the estimated number of nesting females in the northern subpopulation, and if 4 loggerheads were killed, 0.1 percent of the estimated number of nesting females in the northern subpopulation would be lost. These are conservative estimates, however, since the loss of loggerhead turtles during these dredging activities are not likely limited to adult females, the only segment of the population, or subpopulation, for which NMFS has any population estimates. Although unlikely to occur, a worse case scenario could occur if all of the loggerheads killed were juvenile females from the northern subpopulation. It is more likely that some turtles taken by dredging activities will be from the northern subpopulation and some from the southern subpopulation.

Even if all of the loggerhead turtles anticipated to be entrained and killed were juvenile or reproductive females from the northern subpopulation, the loss of up to 18 loggerheads during the annual maintenance dredging of the Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels is not anticipated to have a detectable effect on the numbers or reproduction of the affected subpopulation, and therefore is not expected to appreciably reduce the likelihood of survival and recovery of the species. Again note that this maximum magnitude of take is not anticipated to occur on a regular basis, but instead, the level of dredging (and thus incidental take) is likely to be smaller in any given year.

Kemp's ridley sea turtles. The biology of Kemp's ridleys also suggests that losses of juvenile turtles can have a magnified effect on the survival of this species. The death of 4 Kemp's ridley sea turtles during the course of annual dredging in the channels considered in this opinion would represent a loss of less than 0.13 percent of the population. This level of take would represent the high end of the spectrum for the proposed project because typical deepening or maintenance dredging would not likely involve the maximum amount of material for each channel in the same year. If 2 Kemp's ridleys were killed during the course of dredging in these channels, this would represent a loss of less than 0.07 percent of the population, and if 1 Kemp's ridley was killed, 0.03 percent of the estimated number of nesting females in the population would be lost. Similar to information available for loggerheads, these are conservative estimates since the loss of Kemp's ridley sea turtles during these dredging activities are not likely limited to adult females, the only segment of the population for which NMFS has any population estimates. Although unlikely to occur, a worse case scenario could occur if all Kemp's ridleys killed were juvenile females. Even if all Kemp's ridley sea turtles anticipated to be entrained and killed were reproductive females, this loss is not anticipated to have a detectable effect on the numbers or reproduction of the affected population and therefore is not expected to appreciably reduce the likelihood of survival and recovery of the species.

In summary, this biological opinion considered the effects of dredging in the Thimble Shoal Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel from April to November in order to accurately assess the impacts to listed species. The primary concern for sea turtles and shortnose sturgeon is entrainment in the draghead of the hopper dredge, while the main concern for endangered whales involves the potential for vessel collisions.

Sea turtle takes have occurred in the action area with the same type of hopper dredge and operational protocol as will be employed in the deepening and maintenance projects. In July and August 2000, three turtles were taken in a hopper dredge during Thimble Shoal Channel maintenance dredging. From August 7 to November 20, 2001, dredging in Thimble Shoal Channel encountered 15 instances of turtle takes during the dredging operations. During this time, in which turtles were documented during the dredge operations, only six were considered to be fresh dead turtles. The remainder were decomposed turtle flippers and/or carapace parts. As of October 4, 2001, 9 loggerhead turtles and 3 Kemp's ridleys were captured and relocated during trawling operations. Additionally, in nearby Cape Henry Channel, on September 26, 2001, a fresh loggerhead turtle was taken during dredging and on October 10, 2001, a fresh Kemp's ridley turtle was found in the forward port basket. After the take of these two turtles, measures were initiated by the ACOE to minimize the take of additional sea turtles, but on October 17, another loggerhead turtle was taken during dredging activities.

As the deepening operations and future maintenance dredging in the channels could involve removing a range of dredge material, NMFS assessed the project's impacts on listed species and the anticipated level of incidental take for three different magnitudes of dredge material. As stated previously, the project to deepen the two channels could take up to four years to complete. However, it is possible that this dredging could be completed in less than one year. A large hopper dredge can remove up to 20,000 cy in one day. If this were the case, dredging of 5 million cy would be completed in 250 days. ACOE has indicated that, for this project, this is unlikely due to possible funding constraints. However, because the potential exists to dredge this quantity in one year, the NMFS has set the upper limit of the dredging range as 5 million cy. Based on previous dredging activities, NMFS anticipates that up to 18 loggerheads and 4 Kemp's ridleys could be taken in the dredging operations involving up to 5 million cy of material. For dredging involving up to 3 million cy of material in one or both of the channels, NMFS anticipates that up to 10 loggerhead and 2 Kemp's ridley sea turtles could be taken. NMFS further anticipates that 4 loggerhead and 1 Kemp's ridley sea turtle could be entrained during maintenance dredging activities that will remove up to 1 million cy in one or both of the channels in any given year. Due to the nature of the injuries expected by entrainment, most of the turtles are expected to die. These estimations of incidental take are based upon the number of turtles previously taken during dredging in the Cape Henry and Thimble Shoal Channels, the incidental take for sea turtles designated in previous biological opinions, and the amount of

material to be dredged for the channels considered in this opinion.

Seasonal differences in the potential for interactions with shortnose sturgeon cannot be predicted with the available data. However, due to the low occurrence of this species in the action area and its behavior, NMFS does not anticipate shortnose sturgeon to be entrained by the dredging activities, physically struck by the dredge vessel, or affected by any local reductions in prey.

Although right, humpback, and fin whales may be affected by the vessels transiting the action area during the disposal phase of these operations, the potential for collisions with these large whales, or with smaller turtles, is greatly reduced by the speed at which the vessels will be traveling and the ACOE's proposed practice of maintaining a bridge watch. NMFS does not expect right, humpback, or fin whales, or leatherback, loggerhead, green, Kemp's ridley, or hawksbill turtles, to be involved in collisions with vessels involved with the disposal operations associated with this project.

CUMULATIVE EFFECTS

Cumulative effects, as defined in the ESA, are those effects of future state or private activities, not involving Federal activities, that are reasonably certain to occur within the action area of the Federal action subject to consultation. Future federal actions that are unrelated to the proposed action are not considered in this section because they require separate consultation pursuant to section 7 of the ESA.

Natural mortality of endangered species, including disease (parasites) and predation, occurs in Mid-Atlantic waters. In addition to dredging activities, sources of human-induced mortality and/or harassment of listed species in the action area include incidental takes in state-regulated fishing activities, private vessel interactions, marine debris and/or contaminants.

Future commercial fishing activities in state waters may take several protected species. However, it is not clear to what extent these future activities would affect listed species differently than the current state fishery activities described in the Environmental Baseline section. The Atlantic Coastal Cooperative Statistics Program (ACCSP), when implemented, is expected to provide information on takes of protected species in state fisheries and systematically collected fishing effort data which will be useful in monitoring impacts of the fisheries. NMFS expects these fisheries to continue in the future.

As noted in the Environmental Baseline section, private vessel activities in the action area may adversely affect listed species in a number of ways, including entanglement, boat strike, or harassment. It is not possible to predict whether additional impacts from these private activities will occur in the future. In other areas of the Northeast, various initiatives have been planned to expand or establish high-speed ferry service. At this time, NMFS is not aware

of high-speed ferry services planned for the action area. NMFS and other member agencies of the NEIT will continue to monitor the development of the high-speed vessel industry and its potential threats to listed species and critical habitat.

Excessive turbidity due to coastal development and/or construction sites could also influence sea turtle foraging ability. As mentioned previously, turtles are not very easily affected by changes in water quality or increased suspended sediments, but if these alterations make habitat less suitable for turtles and hinder their capability to forage, eventually they would tend to leave or avoid these less desirable areas (Ruben and Morreale 1999).

Marine debris (e.g., discarded fishing line or lines from boats) can entangle turtles in the water and drown them. Turtles commonly ingest plastic or mistake debris for food, as observed with the leatherback sea turtle. The leatherback's preferred diet includes jellyfish, but similar looking plastic bags are often found in the turtle's stomach contents (Magnuson et al. 1990).

Sources of contamination in the action area include atmospheric loading of pollutants (e.g., PCBs), stormwater runoff from coastal development, runoff into rivers emptying into the bays, groundwater discharges, and river input and runoff. Chemical contamination may have an effect on listed species reproduction and survival. While the effects of contaminants on sea turtles is relatively unclear, pollution may be linked to the fabropapilloma virus that kills many turtles each year (NMFS 1997). If pollution is not the causal agent, it may make sea turtles more susceptible to disease by weakening their immune systems.

INTEGRATION AND SYNTHESIS OF EFFECTS

NMFS has determined that the ACOE's deepening and maintenance dredging of the Thimble Shoal Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel could adversely affect loggerhead, leatherback, green, Kemp's ridley, and hawksbill sea turtles, shortnose sturgeon, and right, humpback, and fin whales by physically entraining them in the dredge, colliding with them during vessel operations, and/or removing and altering the availability of the prey resources they utilize.

As the deepening operations and future maintenance dredging in the channels could involve removing a range of dredge material, NMFS assessed the project's impacts on listed species and the anticipated level of incidental take for three different magnitudes of dredge material. As stated previously, the project to deepen the two channels could take up to four years to complete. However, it is possible that this dredging could be completed in less than one year. A large hopper dredge can remove up to 20,000 cy in one day. If this were the case, dredging of 5 million cy would be completed in 250 days. ACOE has indicated that, for this project, this is unlikely due to possible funding constraints. However, because the potential exists to dredge this quantity in one year, the NMFS has set the upper limit of the

range used to determine take as 5 million cy. Based on previous dredging activities, NMFS anticipates that up to 18 loggerheads and 4 Kemp's ridleys could be taken in the dredging operations involving up to 5 million cy of material. For dredging involving up to 3 million cy of material in one or both of the channels, NMFS anticipates that up to 10 loggerhead and 2 Kemp's ridley sea turtles could be taken. NMFS further anticipates that 4 loggerhead and 1 Kemp's ridley sea turtle could be entrained during dredging activities that will remove up to 1 million cy in one or both of the channels in any given year. Due to their rare occurrence in the action area, and/or size and vulnerability to entrainment, NMFS does not anticipate right, humpback, or fin whales, or shortnose sturgeon to be taken by the dredging operations.

While operational measures should be implemented to minimize the take of sea turtles to the extent possible, the loss of a maximum of 18 loggerhead and 4 Kemp's ridley sea turtles during maintenance dredging would represent a small percentage of these populations. This is also the worse case scenario, as dredging activities are not likely to involve the maximum amount of dredged material stated in the project description section (and thus incidental take) during this project or in any given year in the future. It is probable that a smaller amount of dredging will occur. Further, the estimation of the amount of take on the population is conservative since the loss of turtles during these dredging activities are not likely limited to adult females, the only segment of the population, or subpopulation, for which NMFS has any population estimates. Even if all of the turtles anticipated to be entrained and killed were juveniles or reproductive females, NMFS does not anticipate these losses to have a detectable effect on the numbers or reproduction of the affected population or subpopulation, and therefore is not expected to appreciably reduce the likelihood of survival and recovery of loggerhead, Kemp's ridley, or green sea turtles.

Although dredge vessels could collide with sea turtles or large whales, the ACOE has initiated a bridge watch protocol which NMFS believes effectively reduces the potential for collisions between turtles and whales with operating dredges and dredges transiting to the pumping station. The physical removal of sediments and associated epifauna from the dredge sites could reduce the availability of prey in the dredged areas, but NMFS believes these reductions will be localized and foraging turtles and shortnose sturgeon will not be limited by the reductions.

CONCLUSION

After reviewing the best available information on the status of endangered and threatened species under NMFS jurisdiction, the environmental baseline for the action area, the effects of the action, and the cumulative effects, it is NMFS' biological opinion that the dredging operations in the Thimble Shoal Channel and Atlantic Ocean may adversely affect but are not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of the right, humpback, or fin whale; loggerhead,

leatherback, Kemp's ridley, green, or hawksbill sea turtle; or shortnose sturgeon. Because no critical habitat is designated in the action area, none will be affected by the project.

INCIDENTAL TAKE STATEMENT

Section 9 of the ESA and Federal regulations pursuant to section 4(d) of the ESA prohibit the take of endangered and threatened species, respectively without special exemption. Take is defined as to harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture or collect, or to attempt to engage in any such conduct. Harm is further defined by NMFS to include any act which actually kills or injures fish or wildlife. Such an act may include significant habitat modification or degradation that actually kills or injures fish or wildlife by significantly impairing essential behavioral patterns including breeding, spawning, rearing, migrating, feeding, or sheltering. Harass is defined by FWS as intentional or negligent actions that create the likelihood of injury to listed species to such an extent as to significantly disrupt normal behavior patterns which include, but are not limited to, breeding, feeding or sheltering. Incidental take is defined as take that is incidental to, and not the purpose of, the carrying out of an otherwise lawful activity. Under the terms of section 7(b)(4) and section 7(o)(2), taking that is incidental to and not intended as part of the agency action is not considered to be prohibited under the ESA provided that such taking is in compliance with the terms and conditions of this Incidental Take Statement.

The measures described below are non-discretionary, and must be undertaken by ACOE so that they become binding conditions for the exemption in section 7(o)(2) to apply. ACOE has a continuing duty to regulate the activity covered by this Incidental Take Statement. If ACOE (1) fails to assume and implement the terms and conditions or (2) fails to adhere to the terms and conditions of the Incidental Take Statement through enforceable terms, the protective coverage of section 7(o)(2) may lapse. In order to monitor the impact of incidental take, ACOE must report the progress of the action and its impact on the species to the NMFS as specified in the Incidental Take Statement [50 CFR §402.14(i)(3)].

Amount or extent of take

While it is difficult to ascertain future take of sea turtles, NMFS based the anticipated take levels on previous sea turtle takes during 2000/2001 Thimble Shoal Channel dredging and 2001 Cape Henry Channel maintenance dredging, the level of take anticipated in previous biological opinions, the distribution and number of sea turtles in the Chesapeake Bay, and the magnitude of and operational measures employed by the dredging projects. The anticipated level of take for dredging in Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels was determined based upon the greatest estimated amount of material to be dredged during deepening operations and the maximum and minimum amounts to be dredged in both channels during maintenance operations:

- During any given year, if the amount of dredged material to be removed is less than or equal to 5 million cy, NMFS anticipates that dredging in the two channels may result in the observed take of 18 loggerhead and 4 Kemp's ridley sea turtles.

- During any given year, if the amount of dredged material to be removed is less than or equal to 3 million cy, NMFS anticipates that dredging operations in the two channels may result in the observed take of 10 loggerhead and 2 Kemp's ridley sea turtles.

- During any given year, if the amount of dredged material to be removed is less than or equal to 1 million cy, NMFS anticipates that dredging operations in the two channels may result in the observed take of 4 loggerhead and 1 Kemp's ridley sea turtle.

The incidental level of turtle take is anticipated to be fresh dead. No incidental take for hawksbill or leatherback sea turtles is anticipated as these species are relatively unlikely to be prevalent in the action area and interactions with the dredge are expected to be low.

NMFS also expects that the deepening operations and maintenance dredging may take an additional unquantifiable number of previously dead sea turtle parts. While decomposed animals taken in Federal operations are considered to be takes, as the possession of a listed species is considered a take, NMFS recognizes that decomposed sea turtles may be taken in dredging operations that may not necessarily be related to the dredging activity itself. Theoretically, if dredging operations are conducted properly, no takes of sea turtles should occur as the turtle draghead defector should push the turtles to the side and the suction pumps should be turned off whenever the dredge draghead is away from the substrate. However, due to certain environmental conditions (e.g., rocky bottom, uneven substrate), the dredge draghead may periodically lift off the bottom and entrain previously dead sea turtles that may be on the bottom through the high level of suction. A sea turtle take may not be considered related to dredge operations and count towards the above referenced anticipated take level if the condition of the specimen is in a severely decomposed or advanced state of decay and if the specimen is a turtle part. Provided that NMFS concurs with the ACOE's determination regarding the stage of decomposition, condition of the specimen, and likely cause of mortality, the take will not be attributed to the incidental take level for this project.

Additionally, NMFS also expects that relocation trawling in either of the channels may take an additional unquantifiable number of live loggerhead and Kemp's ridley sea turtles. As stated in the reasonable and prudent measures and terms and conditions of this Incidental Take Statement, relocation trawling may occur under certain circumstances prior to dredging. This trawling will result in sea turtle takes, but these takes are not expected to be lethal due to the short duration of

the tow times (15 to 30 minutes per tow). While relocating sea turtles may invoke a degree of stress on the animals, the level of stress should be minimized by an expedited and proper handling time. Additionally, the capture of a live turtle in a trawl is likely less harmful to the species as compared to a sea turtle being entrained in a dredge draghead. Thus, an unquantifiable number of live loggerhead and Kemp's ridley sea turtles are anticipated to be taken during any relocation trawling deemed necessary during dredging in both channels.

The distribution of shortnose sturgeon in Virginia waters is relatively unknown and the furthest recorded capture of shortnose sturgeon is in the mouth of the York River. While NMFS must employ a conservative approach to management and consider the species to be in the area, it is difficult to determine the abundance of this species in the action area and how the proposed project will impact shortnose sturgeon. Due to the lack of information about distribution in Virginia waters and the low likelihood that the dredge activities will interact with shortnose sturgeon, no incidental take will be designated for shortnose sturgeon at this time. No incidental take of any listed marine mammal is anticipated for this project.

Effect of the take

In the accompanying biological opinion, NMFS evaluated the effects of this level of anticipated take on the above listed species. NMFS has determined that these interactions, should they occur, are not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of these species, or destruction or adverse modification of critical habitat.

Reasonable and Prudent Measures

NMFS has determined that the following reasonable and prudent measures are necessary and appropriate to minimize impacts of incidental take of sea turtles. Although no takes of other listed species are authorized at this time, these measures must be undertaken in a manner which ensures detection of takes of these other species so that appropriate reinitiation action can be taken.

1. ACOE shall ensure that between April 1 and November 30, hopper dredges are outfitted with state-of-the-art sea turtle deflectors on the draghead and operated in a manner that will reduce the risk of interactions with sea turtles which may be present in the dredge area.

2. ACOE shall ensure that dredges are equipped and operated in a manner that provides endangered/threatened species observers with a reasonable opportunity for detecting interactions with listed species and that provides for handling, collection, and resuscitation of turtles injured during project activity. Full cooperation with the endangered/threatened species observer program is essential for compliance with the ITS.

3. ACOE must enact measures that would reduce the number of sea turtles in the dredging channel so that the possibility of entrainment would be minimized.

4. ACOE must develop and follow a system to provide timely reporting to the NMFS on any takes of protected species.

Terms and Conditions

In order to be exempt from the prohibitions of Section 9 of the ESA, the ACOE must comply with the following terms and conditions, which implement the reasonable and prudent measures described above and outline required reporting/monitoring requirements. These terms and conditions are non-discretionary.

1. If dredging occurs between April 1 and November 30, hopper dredges must be equipped with the rigid deflector draghead as designed by the ACOE Waterways Experimental Station (WES), or if that is unavailable, a rigid sea turtle deflector attached to the draghead. Deflectors must be checked and/or adjusted by a designated expert prior to a dredge operation to insure proper installment and operation during dredging. The deflector must be checked after every load throughout the dredge operation to ensure that proper installation is maintained. Since operator skill is important to the effectiveness of the WES-developed draghead, operators must be properly instructed in its use. Dredge inspectors must ensure that all measures to protect sea turtles are being followed during dredge operations.

2. If dredging occurs during the period of April 1 through November 30, the ACOE must adhere to the attached "Monitoring Specifications for Hopper Dredges" with trained NMFS-approved sea turtle observers, in accordance with the attached "Observer Protocol" and "Observer Criteria" (Appendix B). NMFS-approved observers must be required on hopper dredges once surface waters reach or exceed 11° C, or during the period of April 1 through November 30 (whichever occurs first), of any year to monitor the hopper spoil, overflow, screening and dragheads for sea turtles and shortnose sturgeon and their remains.

3. As with any incidental take, if a decomposed turtle or turtle part is taken in dredging operations, an incident report must be completed and the specimen must be photographed (Appendix G). The ACOE must submit the incident report for the decomposed turtle part, as well as photographs, to NMFS and request concurrence that this take should not be attributed to the Incidental Take Statement. NMFS will have the final say in determining if the take should count towards the Incidental Take Statement.

4. The ACOE must ensure that all contracted personnel involved in operating hopper dredges receive thorough training on measures of dredge operation that will minimize takes of sea turtles. Training shall include measures discussed in Appendix B. It shall be the goal of each hopper dredging operation to establish operating procedures that are consistent with those that have been used during hopper dredging in other regions of the coastal United States, and which have proven effective in reducing

turtle/dredge interactions. Therefore, Glynn Banks (ACOE, Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS, [601] 634-3597), or a person with a similar level of expertise on this matter, shall be involved both in dredge operation training, and installation, adjustment and monitoring of the rigid deflector draghead assembly.

5. It is unlikely that sea turtles will survive entrainment in a hopper dredge, as the turtles found in the dragheads are almost always dead, dying, or dismantled. However, a few turtles have escaped hopper dredges without apparent injuries. A sub-adult loggerhead was removed from dredge gear unharmed in Savannah, Georgia and an occasional small green turtle has been known to survive (Slay 1995, Magnuson et al. 1990). The procedures for handling live sea turtles are outlined in case the unlikely event should occur. All permit holders must follow the sea turtle handling techniques specified in Appendix B-II-E and Appendix C.

6. A sea turtle trawling and relocation survey must be initiated following the take of two (2) turtles (any species) in a 24-hour time period or four (4) turtles within a two month period, or in other circumstances that NMFS deems appropriate. All trawls must follow the standard protocol developed and used by the ACOE South Atlantic Division (Appendix D). The trawling and relocation survey must be initiated within 24 hours of the incidental take or the ACOE must suspend dredging operations until such trawling can be initiated. Trawling should continue for at least 5 consecutive days, unless precluded by inclement weather, after which NMFS may continue or suspend the survey. After the trawling survey is completed, the NMFS and ACOE shall immediately discuss the results of the trawling to determine if additional measures are needed to relocate turtles found in the channel.

7. The results of each turtle take from the trawling survey must be recorded on the Sea Turtle Tagging Data Report (Appendix E). The preliminary results of the trawling survey must be submitted to NMFS immediately after the survey is completed (e.g., after 5 days) so that NMFS can determine if additional trawling is warranted. A final report summarizing the results of the trawling and any takes of listed species must be submitted to the ACOE and NMFS within 30 working days of completion of the trawling survey.

8. A final report summarizing the results of the dredging and any takes of listed species must be submitted to the ACOE and NMFS (at the addresses specified in Appendix B) within 30 working days of completion of each cycle of the project.

9. Vessels must comply with the ESA 500-yard approach regulations for right whales. To minimize risks from vessel operations around other listed species, the dredge vessel must not intentionally approach listed species closer than 100 yards when in transit. When species are present vessels must, except when

precluded by safety requirements, follow the advice of the onboard NMFS-approved observer to avoid collisions.

10. If listed species are present during dredging or material transport, vessels transiting the area must post a watch, avoid intentional approaches closer than 100 yards (or 500 yards in the case of right whales) when in transit, and reduce speeds to below 4 knots.

11. If the take of loggerhead sea turtles approaches 1/2 of the permitted incidental take level (e.g., 9 turtles for 5 million cy) during any project cycle, the ACOE must immediately contact NMFS at (978) 281-9112 to review the situation and determine whether any new management measures should be implemented to prevent the total incidental take level from being reached.

12. If warranted by ACOE, beach quality sand dredged from the Channels may be deposited as part of a beach renourishment activity. When decided upon, the ACOE must inform NMFS that this type of disposal has been selected.

NMFS anticipates that no more than 18 loggerheads and 4 Kemp's ridleys could be taken during the dredging of the Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels involving up to 5 million cy of material. For dredging involving up to 3 million cy of material in the Thimble Shoal and/or Atlantic Ocean Channels, NMFS anticipates that no more than 10 loggerhead and 2 Kemp's ridley sea turtles could be taken. NMFS further anticipates that no more than 4 loggerhead and 1 Kemp's ridley sea turtle could be entrained during dredging activities that will remove up to 1 million cy in one or both of the channels considered in this opinion in any given year. The reasonable and prudent measures, with their implementing terms and conditions, are designed to minimize the impact of incidental take that might result from the proposed action. If, during the course of the project, this level of incidental take is exceeded, the additional level of take would represent new information requiring reinitiation of consultation and review of the reasonable and prudent measures provided above.

CONSERVATION RECOMMENDATIONS

In addition to Section 7(a)(2), which requires agencies to ensure that proposed projects will not jeopardize the continued existence of listed species, Section 7(a)(1) of the ESA places a responsibility on all federal agencies to "utilize their authorities in furtherance of the purposes of this Act by carrying out programs for the conservation of endangered species." Conservation Recommendations are discretionary activities designed to minimize or avoid adverse effects of a proposed action on listed species or critical habitat, to help implement recovery plans, or to develop information.

1. Where weather/sea conditions permit, hopper dredging should be conducted from December 1 to March 31, or when surface water

temperatures are below 11° C, when sea turtles are most likely not present in Virginia coastal waters.

2. When endangered species observers are required on hopper dredges (April 1 to November 30), 100% overflow screening is recommended. While monitoring 100% of the inflow screening is required as a term and condition of this project's Incidental Take Statement, observing 100% of the overflow screening would ensure that any takes of sea turtles are detected and reported.

3. To facilitate future management decisions on listed species occurring in the action area, ACOE should maintain a database mapping system to: 1) create a history of use of the geographic areas affected; and, 2) document endangered/threatened species presence/interactions with project operations.

4. New approaches to sampling for turtle parts should be investigated.

5. ACOE should investigate, support, and/or develop additional technological solutions to further reduce the potential for sea turtle takes in hopper dredges.

6. Because presence of shortnose sturgeon in the lower Chesapeake Bay could substantially affect the conclusions in future Section 7 consultations, the ACOE should contact the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service to collaborate on sturgeon research efforts in Virginia.

7. For every year when dredging activities are planned for winter months, the ACOE Project Manager should contact the marine mammal staff at the Virginia Marine Science Museum in order to obtain information on whale sightings in the area.

REINITIATION OF CONSULTATION

This concludes formal consultation on the dredging activities conducted in Thimble Shoal Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel. As provided in 50 CFR 402.16, reinitiation of formal consultation is required where discretionary federal agency involvement or control over the action has been retained (or is authorized by law) and if: (1) the amount or extent of incidental take is exceeded; (2) a new species is listed or critical habitat designated that may be affected by the action; (3) the agency action is subsequently modified in a manner that causes an effect to the listed species or critical habitat not considered in this opinion; or (4) new information reveals effects of the action that may affect listed species or critical habitat in a manner or to an extent not previously considered. In instances where the amount or extent of incidental take is exceeded, the ACOE must immediately request reinitiation of formal consultation.

LITERATURE CITED

Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission (ASMFC). 1997. Amendment 3 to the interstate fishery management plan for lobster. Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission, Washington, D.C.

Bain, M.B., D.L. Peterson, and K.K. Arend. 1998. Population status of shortnose sturgeon in the Hudson River. Final Report to the National Marine Fisheries Service. U.S. ACE Agreement # NYD 95-38.

Barlow, J., and P. J. Clapham. 1997. A new birth-interval approach to estimating demographic parameters of humpback whales. Ecology, 78: 535-546.

Bass, A.L., S.P. Epperly, J. Braun, D.W. Owens, and R.M. Patterson. 1998. Natal origin and sex ratios of foraging sea turtles in the Pamlico-Albemarle Estuarine Complex. U.S. Dep. Commerce. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SEFSC

Bellmund, D.E., J.A. Musick, R.C. Klinger, R.A. Byles, J.A. Keinath, and D.E. Barnard. 1987. Ecology of sea turtles in Virginia. Virginia Institute of Marine Science Special Science Report No. 119, Virginia Institute of Marine Science, Gloucester Point, Virginia.

Bjorndal, K.A. 1997. Foraging ecology and nutrition of sea turtles. Pages 199-233 *In*: Lutz, P.L. and J.A. Musick, eds., The Biology of Sea Turtles. CRC Press, New York. 432 pp.

Burke, V.J., E.A. Standora and S.J. Morreale. 1989. Environmental factors and seasonal occurrence of sea turtles in Long Island, New York. S.A. Eckert, K.L. Eckert and T.H. Richardson (Compilers). Proceedings of the Ninth Annual Workshop on Sea Turtle Conservation and Biology. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-232, pp. 21-23.

Carr, A.F. 1952. Handbook of Turtles. The Turtles of the United States, Canada and Baja California. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press.

Carr, A.F. 1963. Panspecific reproductive convergence in *Lepidochelys kempi*. Ergebn. Biol. 26: 298-303.

Carr, A.F. and L.H. Ogren. 1960. The ecology and migrations of sea turtles, 4. The green turtle in the Caribbean Sea. Bull. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist. 121:1-48.

Carr, A.F., M.H. Carr, and A.B. Meylan. 1978. The ecology and migrations of sea turtles, 7. The west Caribbean green turtle colony. Bull. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist. 162:1-46.

Caswell, H., M. Fujiwara, and S. Brault. 1999. Declining survival probability threatens the North Atlantic right whale. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. 96: 3308-3313.

Chester, A.J., J. Braun, F.A. Cross, S.P. Epperly, J.V. Merriner, and P.A. Tester. 1994. AVHHR imagery and the near real-time conservation of endangered sea turtles in the western North Atlantic. Proceedings of the WMO/IOC Technical Conference on Space-Based Ocean Observations, September 1993 (WMO/TD-No. 649). Bergen, Norway. pp. 184-189.

Clark, C.W. 1995. Application of U.S. Navy underwater hydrophone arrays for scientific research on whales. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 45: 210-212.

Dadswell, M.J. 1979. Biology and population characteristics of the shortnose sturgeon, *Acipenser brevirostrum* LeSueur 1818 (Osteichthyes: Acipenseridae), in the Saint John River estuary, New Brunswick, Canada. Can. J. Zool. 57: 2186-2210.

Dadswell, M.J., B.D. Taubert, T.S. Squiers, D. Marchette, and J. Buckley. 1984. Synopsis of biological data on shortnose sturgeon, *Acipenser brevirostrum* LeSueur 1818. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Technical Report NMFS 14, Washington, D.C.

Dovel, W.L. 1981. The endangered shortnose sturgeon of the Hudson estuary: its ife history and vulnerability to the activities of man. Final Report to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, Washington, D.C.

Duellman, W.E. 1961. The amphibians and reptiles of Michoacan, Mexico. Univ. Kansas Publ., Mus. Nat. Hist 15(1):1-148.

Ehrhart, L.M. 1979. Reproductive characteristics and management potential of the sea turtle rookery at Canaveral National Seashore, Florida. Pp. 397-399 in Proceedings of the First Conference on Scientific Research in the National Parks, New Orleans, Louisiana, November 9-12, 1976. R.M. Linn, ed. Transactions and Proceedings Series-National Park Service, No. 5. Washington, D.C.: National Park Service, U.S. Government Printing Office.

Ehrhart, L.M. 1983. A survey of nesting by the green turtle, *Chelonia mydas*, and loggerhead turtle, *Caretta caretta*, in south Brevard County, Florida. Unpubl. Report to World Wildlife Fund B U.S., Washington, DC, 49p.

Epperly, S.P, J. Braun, A.J. Chester, F.A. Cross, J.V. Merriner, and P.A. Tester. 1995. Winter distribution of sea turtles in the vicinity of Cape Hatteras and their interactions with the summer flounder trawl fishery. Bull. Mar. Sci. 56(2):519-540.

Epperly, S.P., J. Braun, A.J. Chester, F.A. Cross, J.V. Merriner, P.A. Tester, and J.H. Churchill. 1996. Beach strandings as an indicator of at-sea mortality of sea turtles. Bull. Mar. Sci. 59:289-297.

Hain, J.H.W., M.J. Ratnaswamy, R.D. Kenney, and H.E. Winn. 1992. The fin whale, *Balaenoptera physalus*, in waters of the northeastern United States continental shelf. Rep. Int. Whal. Comm. 42: 653-669.

Hamilton, P.K., M.K. Marx, and S.D. Kraus. 1998. Scarification analysis of North Atlantic right whales (*Eubalaena glacialis*) as a method of assessing human impacts. Final report to the Northeast Fisheries Science Center, NMFS, Contract No. 4EANF-6-0004.

Hildebrand, H. 1982. A historical review of the status of sea turtle populations in the western Gulf of Mexico, P. 447-453. In K.A. Bjorndal (ed.), Biology and conservation of sea turtles. Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington, D.C.

Hirth, H.F. 1971. Synopsis of biological data on the green sea turtle, *Chelonia mydas*. FAO Fisheries Synopsis No. 85: 1-77.

IWC. 1998. Report of the workshop on the comprehensive assessment of right whales: a worldwide comparison. International Whaling Commission special workshop held 19-25 March 1998, in Cape Town, South Africa. SC/50/REP 4.

Katona, S.K., and J.A. Beard. 1990. Population size, migrations, and feeding aggregations of the humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in the Western North Atlantic Ocean. Rep. Int. Whal. Comm., Special Issue 12: 295-306.

Keinath, J.A., J.A. Musick, and R.A. Byles. 1987. Aspects of the biology of Virginia=s sea turtles: 1979-1986. Virginia J. Sci. 38(4): 329-336.

Knowlton, A.R., S.D. Kraus, and R.D. Kenney. 1994. Reproduction in North Atlantic right whales (*Eubalaena glacialis*). Can. J. Zool. 72: 1297-1305.

Kraus, S.D. 1990. Rates and Potential Causes of Mortality in North Atlantic Right Whales (*Eubaleana glacialis*). Mar. Mamm. Sci. 6(4):278-291.

Lutcavage, M. and J.A. Musick. 1985. Aspects of the biology of sea turtles in Virginia. Copeia 1985(2): 449-456.

Magnuson, J.J., J.A. Bjorndal, W.D. DuPaul, G.L. Graham, D.W. Owens, C.H. Peterson, P.C.H. Prichard, J.I. Richardson, G.E. Saul, and C.W. West. 1990. Decline of Sea Turtles: Causes and Prevention. Committee on Sea Turtle Conservation , Board of

Environmental Studies and Toxicology, Board on Biology, Commission of Life Sciences, National Research Council, National Academy Press, Washington, D.C. 259 pp.

Mendonca, M.T. and L.M. Ehrhart. 1982. Activity, population size and structure of immature Chelonia mydas and Caretta caretta in Mosquito Lagoon, Florida. Copeia 1:161-167.

Meylan, A., B. Schroeder, and A. Mosier. 1995. Sea turtle nesting activity in the state of Florida. Fla. Mar. Res. Publ. 52:1-51.

Morreale, S.J. and E.A. Standora. 1992. Habitat use and feeding activity of juvenile Kemp=s ridleys in inshore waters of the northeastern U.S. M. Salmon and J. Wyneken (Compilers). Proceedings of the Eleventh Annual Workshop on Sea Turtle Conservation and Biology. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-302, pp. 75-77.

Morreale, S.J. and E.A. Standora. 1998. Early life stage ecology of sea turtles in northeastern U.S. waters. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-413, 49 pp.

Moser, M.L. and S.W. Ross. 1995. Habitat use and movements of shortnose and Atlantic sturgeons in the lower Cape Fear River, North Carolina. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 124: 225-234.

Musick, J.A. and C.J. Limpus. 1997. Habitat utilization and migration in juvenile sea turtles. Pp. 137-164 *In*: Lutz, P.L., and J.A. Musick, eds., The Biology of Sea Turtles. CRC Press, New York. 432 pp.

Musick, J.A., R. Byles, R.E. Klinger, and S. Bellmund. 1984. Mortality and behavior or sea turtles in the Chesapeake Bay, Summary Report to NMFS for 1979 through 1983, Contract No. NA80FAC00004. Virginia Institute of Marine Science, Gloucester Point, Virginia.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 1991a. Final recovery plan for the humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*). Prepared by the Humpback Whale Recovery Team for the national Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, Maryland. 105 pp.

NMFS. 1991b. Final recovery plan for the northern right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*). Prepared by the Right Whale Recovery Team for the National Marine Fisheries Service. 86 pp.

NMFS. 1995. Endangered Species Act B Section 7 Consultation on beach renourishment projects, south shore of Long Island and Northern New Jersey shore. NMFS Northeast Regional Office, Gloucester, Massachusetts.

NMFS. 1996. Status review of shortnose sturgeon in the Androscoggin

and Kennebec Rivers. Northeast Regional Office, Gloucester, Massachusetts.

NMFS. 1997. Endangered Species Act B Section 7 Consultation on the Atlantic Pelagic Fishery for Swordfish, Tuna, and Shark in the Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ). NMFS Northeast Regional Office, Gloucester, Massachusetts.

NMFS. 1998a. Draft recovery plans for the fin whale (*Balaenoptera physalus*) and sei whale (*Balaenoptera borealis*). Prepared by R.R. Reeves, G.K. Silber, and P.M. Payne for the National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, Maryland. July 1998.

NMFS. 1998b. Final recovery plan for the shortnose sturgeon (*Acipenser brevirostrum*). National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, Maryland. October 1998.

NMFS. 1999. Our Living Oceans. Report on the status of U.S. living marine resources, 1999. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-F/SPO-41.

NMFS. 2000. ESA Section 7 Consultation on the Atlantic Pelagic Fisheries for Swordfish, Tuna, Shark and Billfish in the U.S. EEZ. National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, Maryland. June 30, 2000.

NMFS and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). 1991. Recovery plan for U.S. population of loggerhead turtle. National Marine Fisheries Service, Washington, D.C. 64 pp.

NMFS and USFWS. 1992. Recovery plan for leatherback turtles in the U.S. Caribbean, Atlantic, and Gulf of Mexico. National Marine Fisheries Service, Washington, D.C. 65 pp.

NMFS and USFWS. 1995. Status reviews for sea turtles listed under the Endangered Species Act of 1973. National Marine Fisheries Service, Silver Spring, Maryland. 139 pp.

Norrgard, J. 1995. Determination of stock composition and natal origin of a juvenile loggerhead turtle population (*Caretta caretta*) in Chesapeake Bay using mitochondrial DNA analysis. M.A. Thesis. College of William and Mary, Williamsburg, Va., 47 pp.

Peters, J.A. 1954. The amphibians and reptiles of the coast and coastal Sierra of Michoachan, Mexico. Occas. Pap. Mus. Zool. 554:1-37.

Prescott, R. L. 1988. Leatherbacks in Cape Cod Bay, Massachusetts, 1977-1987. *In* Proceedings of the Eighth Annual Workshop on Sea Turtle Conservation and Biology. B.A. Schroeder, compiler. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFC-214, p. 83-84.

Pritchard, P.C.H. 1997. Evolution, phylogeny and current status. Pp. 1-28 *In*: The Biology of Sea Turtles. Lutz, P., and J.A. Musick, eds. CRC Press, New York. 432 pp.

Rankin-Baransky, K.C. 1997. Origin of loggerhead turtles (*Caretta caretta*) in the western North Atlantic as determined by mtDNA analysis. M.S. Thesis, Drexel University, Philadelphia, Penn.

Robbins, J., and D. Mattila. 1999. Monitoring entanglement scars on the caudal peduncle of Gulf of Maine humpback whales. Report to the National Marine Fisheries Service. Order No. 40EANF800288. 15 pp.

Ruben, H.J, and S.J. Morreale. 1999. Draft Biological Assessment for Sea Turtles in New York and New Jersey Harbor Complex. Unpublished Biological Assessment submitted to National Marine Fisheries Service.

Sears, C.J. 1994. Preliminary genetic analysis of the population structure of Georgia loggerhead sea turtles. U.S. Dep. Commerce. NOAA Tech. Memo NMFS-SEFSC.

Sears, C.J., B.W. Bowen, R.W. Chapman, S.B. Galloway, S.R. Hopkins-Murphy, and C.M. Woodley. 1995. Demographic composition of the feeding population of juvenile loggerhead sea turtles (*Caretta caretta*) off Charleston, South Carolina: evidence from mitochondrial DNA markers. Mar. Biol. 123:869-874.

Shoop, C.R. and R.D. Kenney. 1992. Seasonal distributions and abundances of loggerhead and leatherback sea turtles in waters of the northeastern United States. Herpetological Monographs 6:43-67.

Slay, C.K. 1995. Sea turtle mortality related to dredging activities in the southeastern U.S.: 1991. Richardson, J.I. and T.H. Richardson (compilers). Proceedings of the Twelfth Annual Workshop on Sea Turtle Biology and Conservation. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-361, pp. 132-133.

Slay, C.K. and J.I. Richardson. 1988. King=s Bay, Georgia: Dredging and Turtles. Schroeder, B.A. (compiler). Proceedings of the eighth annual conference on sea turtle biology and conservation. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFC-214, pp. 109-111.

Smith, T.D., J. Allen, P.J. Clapham, P.S. Hammond, S. Katona, F. Larsen, J. Lien, D. Mattila, P.J. Palsboll, J. Sigurjonsson, P.T. Stevick, and N. Oien. 1999. An ocean-basin-wide mark-recapture study of the north Atlantic humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*). Mar. Mamm. Sci. 15 (1): 1-32.

Spotila, J.R., A.E. Dunham, A.J. Leslie, A.C. Steyermark, P.T. Plotkin, and F. V. Paladino. 1996. Worldwide Population Decline

of *Demochelys coriacea*: Are Leatherback Turtles Going Extinct? Chelonian Conservation and Biology 2(2): 209-222.

Spotila, J.R., R.D. Reina, A.C. Steyermark, P.T. Plotkin, F.V. Paladino. 2000. Nature (405): 529-530

Swingle, W.M., S.G. Barco, T.D. Pitchford, W.A. McLellan, and D.A. Pabst. 1993. Appearance of juvenile humpback whales feeding in the nearshore waters of Virginia. Mar. Mamm. Sci. 9: 309-315.

Taubert, B.D. 1980. Reproduction of shortnose sturgeon, *Acipenser brevirostrum*, in the Holyoke Pool, Connecticut River, Massachusetts, USA, and the Saint John River, New Brunswick, Canada. Can. J. Zool. 58: 1125-1128.

Terwilliger, K. and J.A. Musick. 1995. Virginia Sea Turtle and Marine Mammal Conservation Team. Management plan for sea turtles and marine mammals in Virginia. Final Report to NOAA, 56 pp.

Thompson, N.B. 1988. The status of loggerhead, *Caretta caretta*; Kemp=s ridley, *Lepidochelys kempi*; and green, *Chelonia mydas*, sea turtles in U.S. Waters. Mar. Fish. Rev. 50(3): 16-23.

TEWG. 1998. An assessment of the Kemp=s ridley (*Lepicochelys kempi*) and loggerhead (*Caretta caretta*) sea turtle populations in the Western North Atlantic. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC-409. 96 pp.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1997. Synopsis of the biological data on the green turtle, *Chelonia mydas* (Linnaeus 1758). Biological Report 97(1). U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, D.C. 120 pp.

Vladykov, V.D., and J.R. Greeley. 1963. Order Acipenseroidei. Pages 24-60 *In*: Fishes of the western North Atlantic. Part III. Memoirs of the Sears Foundation for Marine Research 1.

Waring, G.T., D.L. Palka, P.J. Clapham, S. Swartz, M. Rossman, T. Cole, K.D. Bisack, and L.J. Hansen. 1999. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico marine mammal stock assessments C 1998. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NE-116.

Watkins, W.A., K.E. Moore, J. Sigurjonsson, D. Wartzok, and G. Notarbartolo di Sciara. 1984. Fin whale (*Balaenoptera physalus*) tracked by radio in the Irminger Sea. Rit Fiskideildar 8(1): 1-14.

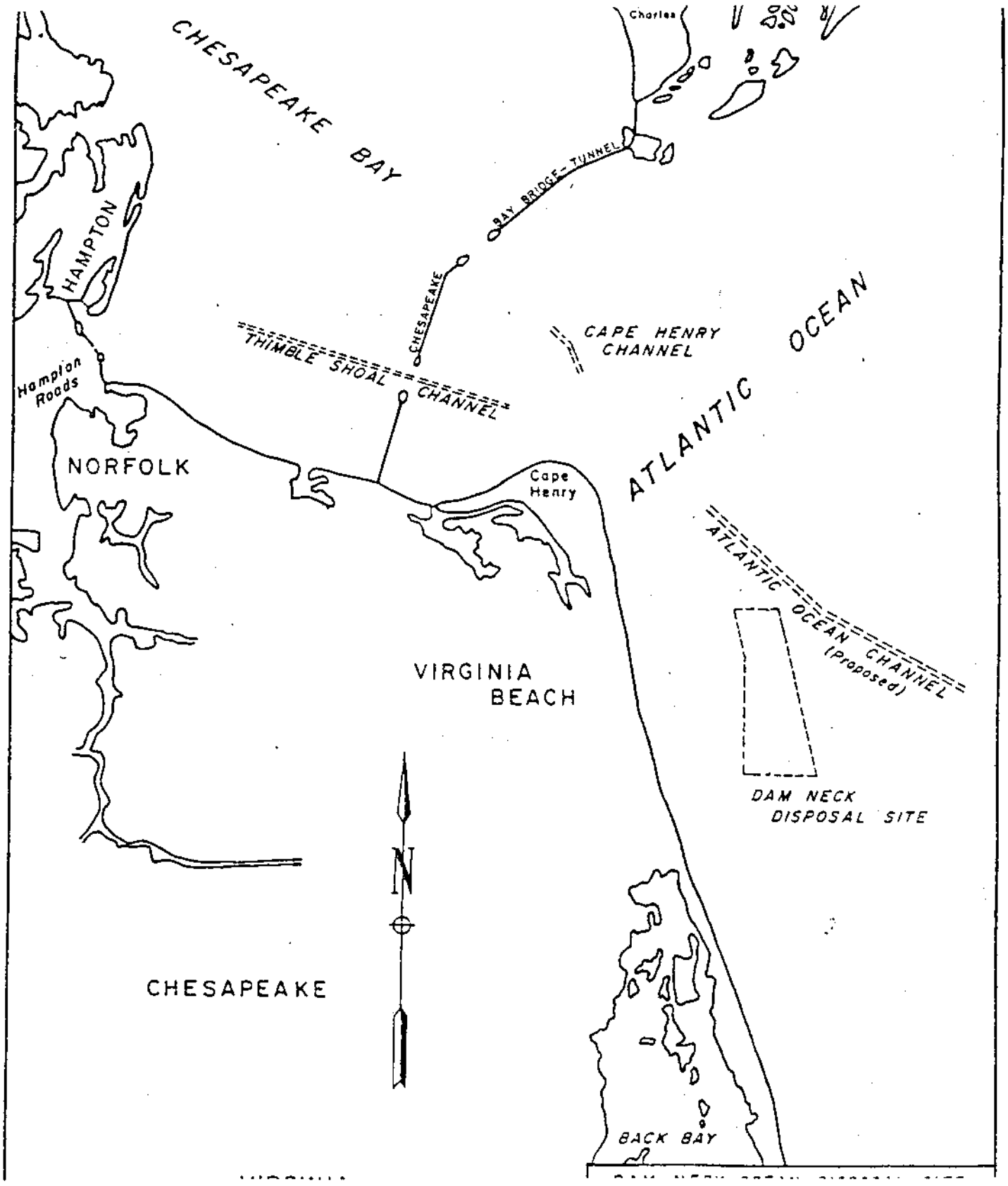
Welsh, S.A., J.E. Skjeveland, M.F. Mangold. 1999. A progress report of investigations and research on Atlantic and shortnose sturgeon in Maryland waters of the Chesapeake Bay (1996-1998). Unpublished report, U.S. Fish and Wildlife, Annapolis, MD.

Wynne, K. and M. Schwartz. 1999. Guide to marine mammals and turtles of the U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico. Rhode Island Sea Grant, Narragansett, Rhode Island. 114 pp.

APPENDIX A

Map of Project Location

Thimble Shoal Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel



APPENDIX B.

MONITORING SPECIFICATIONS FOR HOPPER DREDGES

I. EQUIPMENT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Baskets or screening

Baskets or screening must be installed over the hopper inflows with openings no smaller than 4 inches by 4 inches to provide 100% coverage of all dredged material and shall remain in place during all dredging operations between April 1 and November 30 of any calendar year. Baskets/screening will allow for better monitoring by observers of the dredged material intake for sea turtles and their remains. The baskets or screening must be safely accessible to the observer and designed for efficient cleaning.

B. Draghead

The draghead of the dredge shall remain on the bottom **at all times** during a pumping operation, except when:

1) the dredge is not in a pumping operation, and the suction pumps are turned completely off;

2) the dredge is being re-oriented to the next dredge line during borrow activities; and

3) the vessel's safety is at risk (i.e., the dragarm is trailing too far under the ship's hull).

At initiation of dredging, the draghead shall be placed on the bottom during priming of the suction pump. If the draghead and/or dragarm become clogged during dredging activity, the pump shall be shut down, the dragarms raised, whereby the draghead and/or dragarm can be flushed out by trailing the dragarm along side the ship. If plugging conditions persist, the draghead shall be placed on deck, whereby sufficient numbers of water ports can be opened on the draghead to prevent future plugging.

Upon completion of a dredge track line, the drag tender shall:

1) throttle back on the RPMs of the suction pump engine to an idling speed (e.g., generally less than 100 RPMs) **prior to** raising the draghead off the bottom, so that no flow of material is coming through the pipe into the dredge hopper. Before the draghead is raised, the vacuum gauge on the pipe should read zero, so that no suction exists both in the dragarm and draghead, and no suction force exists that can impinge a turtle on the draghead grate;

2) hold the draghead firmly on the bottom with no flow conditions for approximately 10 to 15 seconds before raising the draghead; then, raise the draghead quickly off the bottom and up to a mid-water

column level, to further reduce the potential for any adverse interaction with nearby turtles;

3) re-orient the dredge quickly to the next dredge line; and

4) re-position the draghead firmly on the bottom prior to bringing the dredge pump to normal pumping speed, and re-starting dredging activity.

C. Floodlights

Floodlights must be installed to allow the NMFS-approved observer to safely observe and monitor the baskets or screens.

D. Intervals between dredging

Sufficient time must be allotted between each dredging cycle for the NMFS-approved observer to inspect and thoroughly clean the baskets and screens for sea turtles and/or turtle parts and document the findings. Between each dredging cycle, the NMFS-approved observer should also examine and clean the dragheads and document the findings.

II. OBSERVER PROTOCOL

A. Basic Requirement

A NMFS-approved observer with demonstrated ability to identify sea turtle species must be placed aboard the dredge(s) being used; starting immediately upon project commencement to monitor for the presence of listed species and/or parts being entrained or present in the vicinity of dredge operations.

B. Duty Cycle

Beginning April 1, one NMFS-approved observer is to be onboard for every week of the dredging project until project completion or November 30, whichever comes first. While onboard, observers shall provide the required inspection coverage on a rotating basis of six hours on and six hours off each day. Combined monitoring periods would then represent 50% of total dredging time through the project period. If possible, the ACOE shall maintain 100% observer coverage during dredging operations in the Thimble Shoal and Atlantic Ocean Channels by employing 2 observers on board at any given time.

C. Inspection of Dredge Spoils

During the required inspection coverage, the trained NMFS-approved observer shall inspect the galvanized screens and baskets at the completion of each loading cycle for evidence of sea turtles or shortnose sturgeon. The Endangered Species Observation Form shall be completed for each loading cycle, whether listed species are present or not (Appendix F). If any whole turtles or shortnose sturgeon (alive or dead) or turtle or shortnose sturgeon parts are taken incidental to the project(s), Kim Damon-Randall (978) 281-9112 or Carrie McDaniel (978) 281-9388 must be contacted within 24 hours of

the take. An incident report for sea turtle/shortnose sturgeon take (Appendix G) shall also be completed by the observer and sent to Kim Damon-Randall via FAX (978) 281-9394 within 24 hours of the take. Incident reports shall be completed for every take regardless of the state of decomposition. NMFS will determine if the take should be attributed to the incidental take level, after the incident report is received. Every incidental take (alive or dead, decomposed or fresh) should be photographed. Weekly reports, including all completed load sheets, photographs, and relevant incident reports, as well as a final report, are to be submitted to the attention of Kim Damon-Randall, NMFS, Protected Resources Division, One Blackburn Drive, Gloucester, MA 01930-2298.

D. Information to be Collected

For each sighting of any endangered or threatened marine species (including whales as well as sea turtles), record the following information on the Endangered Species Observation Form (Appendix F):

1) Date, time, coordinates of vessel
2) Visibility, weather, sea state
3) Vector of sighting (distance, bearing)
4) Duration of sighting
5) Species and number of animals
6) Observed behaviors (feeding, diving, breaching, etc.)
7) Description of interaction with the operation

E. Disposition of Parts

If any whole turtles or shortnose sturgeon (alive or dead, decomposed or fresh) or turtle or shortnose sturgeon parts are taken incidental to the project(s), Kim Damon-Randall (978) 281-9112 or Carrie McDaniel (978) 281-9388 must be contacted within 24 hours of the take. All whole dead sea turtles or shortnose sturgeon, or turtle or shortnose sturgeon parts should be photographed and described in detail on the Incident Report of Sea Turtle/Shortnose Sturgeon Mortality (Appendix G). The photographs and reports should be submitted to Kim Damon-Randall, NMFS, Protected Resources Division, One Blackburn Drive, Gloucester, MA 01930-2298. Any dead **Kemp's ridley** sea turtles shall be photographed, placed in plastic bags, labeled with location, load number, date, and time taken, and placed in cold storage. Dead turtles or turtle parts will be further labeled as recent or old kills based on evidence such as fresh blood, odor, and length of time in water since death. Disposition of dead sea turtles/shortnose sturgeon will be determined by NMFS. Other sea turtle species (loggerhead, leatherback, or green turtles) taken either whole or in parts, or any shortnose sturgeon should be disposed of (after a photograph is taken and a reporting form has been completed) by attaching a weight to the animal and dumping the specimen at the dredge spoil disposal site. If the species is unidentifiable or if there are entrails that may have come from a turtle, the subject should be photographed, placed in plastic bags, labeled with location, load number, date and time taken, and placed in cold storage. Dead Kemp's ridley or unidentifiable species or parts will be collected by NMFS or NMFS-approved personnel (contact Kim Damon-Randall at (978) 281-9112).

Live turtles (both injured and uninjured) should be held onboard the dredge until transported as soon as possible to the appropriate stranding network personnel for rehabilitation (Appendix C). No live turtles should be released back into the water without first being checked by a qualified veterinarian or a rehabilitation facility. Virginia and Maryland stranding network members (for rehabilitating turtles) include Mark Swingle and/or Susan Barco at the Virginia Marine Science Museum [(757)437-4949], Jack Musick at the Virginia Institute of Marine Science [(804)684-7313], and Dr. Brent Whitaker and/or David Schofield of the National Aquarium in Baltimore [(410)576-3853; FAX Number: (410)576-1080)]. Mark Swingle/Susan Barco, Brent Whitaker/David Schofield, and Dana Hartley (NMFS Stranding Network Coordinator: (508) 495-2090) should also be contacted immediately for any marine mammal injuries or mortalities.

III. OBSERVER REQUIREMENTS

Submission of resumes of endangered species observer candidates to NMFS for final approval ensures that the observers placed onboard the dredges are qualified to document takes of endangered and threatened species, to confirm that incidental take levels are not exceeded, and to provide expert advice on ways to avoid impacting endangered and threatened species. NMFS does not offer certificates of approval for observers, but approves observers on a case-by-case basis.

A. Qualifications

Observers must be able to:

1) differentiate between leatherback (*Dermochelys coriacea*), loggerhead *Caretta caretta*), Kemp's ridley *(Lepidochelys kempii*), green (*Chelonia mydas*), and hawksbill *(Eretmochelys imbricata*) turtles and their parts, and shortnose (*Acipenser brevirostrum*) and Atlantic (*Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus*) sturgeon and their parts;

2) handle live sea turtles and sturgeon and resuscitate and release them according accepted procedures;

3) correctly measure the total length and width of live and whole dead sea turtle and sturgeon species;

4) observe and advise on the appropriate screening of the dredge=s overflow, skimmer funnels, and dragheads; and

5) identify marine mammal species and behaviors.

B. Training

Ideally, the applicant will have educational background in marine biology, general experience aboard dredges, and hands-on field experience with the species of concern. For observer candidates who do not have sufficient experience or educational background to gain

immediate approval as endangered species observers, we note below the observer training necessary to be considered admissible by NMFS. We can assist the ACOE by identifying groups or individuals capable of providing acceptable observer training. Therefore, at a minimum, observer training must include:

1) instruction on how to identify sea turtles and sturgeon and their parts;

2) instruction on appropriate screening on hopper dredges for the monitoring of sea turtles and sturgeon(whole or parts);

3) demonstration of the proper handling of live sea turtles and sturgeon incidentally captured during project operations. Observers may be required to resuscitate sea turtles according to accepted procedures prior to release;

4) instruction on standardized measurement methods for sea turtle and sturgeon lengths and widths; and

5) instruction on how to identify marine mammals; and

6) instruction on dredging operations and procedures, including safety precautions onboard a vessel.

APPENDIX C

Sea Turtle Handling and Resuscitation

It is unlikely that sea turtles will survive entrainment in a hopper dredge, as the turtles found in the dragheads are usually dead, dying, or dismantled. However, the procedures for handling live sea turtles follow in case the unlikely event should occur.

Please photograph all turtles (alive or dead) and turtle parts found during dredging activities and complete the Incident Report of Sea Turtle Take (Appendix G).

Dead sea turtles
The procedures for handling dead sea turtles and parts are described in Appendix B-II-E.

Live sea turtles
When a sea turtle is found in the dredge gear, observe it for activity and potential injuries.

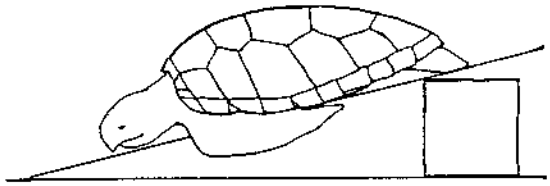
- **If the turtle is actively moving**, it should be retained onboard until evaluated for injuries by a permitted rehabilitation facility. Due to the potential for internal injuries associated with hopper entrainment, it is necessary to transport the live turtle to the nearest rehabilitation facility as soon as possible, following these steps:
  1) Contact the nearest rehabilitation facility to inform them of the incident. If the rehabilitation personnel cannot be reached immediately, please contact Dana Hartley, NMFS Northeast Region Stranding Coordinator, at (508) 495-2090 or Carrie McDaniel at (978) 281-9388.
  2) Keep the turtle shaded and moist (e.g., with a water-soaked towel over the eyes, carapace, and flippers).
  3) Contact the crew boat to pick up the turtle as soon as possible from the dredge (within 12 to 24 hours maximum). The crew boat should be aware of the potential for such an incident to occur and should develop an appropriate protocol for transporting live sea turtles.
  4) Transport the live turtle to the closest permitted rehabilitation facility able to handle such a case.

  Do not assume that an inactive turtle is dead. The onset of rigor mortis and/or rotting flesh are often the only definite indications that a turtle is dead. Releasing a comatose turtle into any amount of water will drown it, and a turtle may recover once its lungs have had a chance to drain.

- **If a turtle appears to be comatose** (unconscious), contact the designated stranding/rehabilitation personnel immediately. Once the rehabilitation personnel has been informed of the incident, attempts should be made to revive the turtle at once. Sea

turtles have been known to revive up to 24 hours after resuscitation procedures have been followed. The resuscitation regulations can be found at 50 CFR 223.206(d)(1).

- Place the animal on its bottom shell (plastron) so that the turtle is right side up and elevate the hindquarters at least 6 inches for a period of 4 up to 24 hours. The degree of elevation depends on the size of the turtle; greater elevations are required for larger turtles.
- Periodically, rock the turtle gently left to right and right to left by holding the outer edge of the shell (carapace) and lifting one side about 3 inches then alternate to the other side.
- Periodically, gently conduct one of the above reflex tests to see if there is a response.
- Keep the turtle in a safe, contained place, shaded, and moist (e.g., with a water-soaked towel over the eyes, carapace, and flippers) and observe it for up to 24 hours.
- If the turtle begins actively moving, retain the turtle until the appropriate rehabilitation personnel can evaluate the animal. The rehabilitation facility should eventually release the animal in a manner that minimizes the chances of re-impingement and potential harm to the animal (i.e., from cold stunning).
- Turtles that fail to move within several hours (up to 24) must be handled in the manner described in Appendix B-II-E, or transported to a suitable facility for necropsy (if the condition of the sea turtle allows and the rehabilitation facility wants to necropsy the animal).



Stranding/rehabilitation contacts

- Virginia and Maryland stranding network members (for rehabilitating turtles) include Mark Swingle and/or Susan Barco at the Virginia Marine Science Museum [(757)437-4949], Jack Musick at the Virginia Institute of Marine Science [(804)684-7313], and Dr. Brent Whitaker and/or David Schofield of the National Aquarium in Baltimore [(410)576-3853; FAX Number: (410)576-1080].
- Mark Swingle/Susan Barco, Dr. Whitaker/Mr. Schofield, and Dana Hartley (NMFS Stranding Network Coordinator: (508) 495-2090) should also be contacted immediately for any marine mammal injuries or mortalities.

APPENDIX D

Sea Turtle Trawling and Relocation Guidelines
(as derived from ACOE South Atlantic Division protocol)

Sea turtle trawling procedures

1. Trawling will be conducted under the supervision of a biologist approved by the NMFS. A letter of approval from NMFS will be provided prior to the commencement of trawling.
2. Any turtles captured during the survey will be measures and tagged in accordance with standard biological sampling procedures with sampling data recorded on the Sea Turtle Tagging and Relocation Report (Appendix E). Any captured sea turtles will be relocated south of the work area at least 3 miles from the location recorded on the Sea Turtle Tagging and Relocation Report.
3. The trawler will be equipped with two 60-foot nets constructed from 8-inch mesh (stretch) fitted with mud rollers and flats as specified in the Turtle Trawl Nets Specifications. Paired net tows will be made for 10 to 12 hours per day or night. Trawling will be conducted with the tidal flow using repetitive 15-30 minute (total time) tows in the channel. Tows will be made in the center, green and red sides of the channel such that the total width of the channel bottom is sampled. Positions at the beginning and end of each tow will be determined from GPS Positioning equipment. Tow speed will be recorded at the approximate midpoint of each tow.
4. Methods and equipment will be standardized including data sheets, nets, trawling direction to tide, length of station, length of tow, and number of tows per station. Water temperature measurements will be taken at the water surface each day using a laboratory thermometer. Data on each tow, including weather conditions, air temperature, wind velocity and direction, sea state-wave height, and precipitation, will be recorded on the Sea Turtle Trawling Report.
5. Before trawling begins, the necessary state permits for trawling in Virginia state waters will be obtained from the appropriate party (e.g., State of Virginia, Virginia Marine Resources Commission).

Turtle Trawl Nets Specifications

DESIGN: 4 seam, 4 legged, 2 bridal trawl net
WEBBING: 4 inch bar, 8 inch stretch
top - 36 gauge twisted nylon dipped
side - 36 gauge twisted nylon dipped
bottom - 84 gauge braided nylon dipped
NET LENGTH: 60 ft from cork line to cod end
BODY TAPER: 2 to 1
WING END HEIGHT: 6 ft
CENTER HEIGHT: Dependent on depth of trawl 14 to 18 ft
COD END: Length 50 meshes x 4" = 16.7 ft
Webbing 2 inch bar, 4 inch stretch, 84 gauge braid nylon dipped, 80 meshes around, 40 rigged meshes with 1/4 x 2 inch choker rings, 1 each 2 x 4 inch at end
cod end cover - none
chaffing gear - none
HEAD ROPE: 60 ft 2 inch combination rope (braid nylon with stainless cable center)
FOOT ROPE: 65 ft 2 inch combination rope
LEG LINE: top - 6 ft, bottom 6 - ft
FLOATS: size - tuna floats (football style), diameter - 7 inch length - 9 inch, number - 12 each, spacing - center on top net 2 inches apart
MUD ROLLERS: size 5 inch diameter 5.5 inch length, number - 22 each, spacing - 3 ft attached with 3/8 inch polypropelene rope (replaced with snap on rollers when broken)
TICKLER CHAINS: NONE (discontinued- but previously used 1/4 inch x 74 ft galvanized chain)
WEIGHT: 20 ft of 1/4 inch galvanized chain on each wing, 40 ft per net looped and tied
DOOR SIZE: 7 ft x 40 inches (or 8 ft x 40 inches), Shoe - 1 inch x 6 inch, bridles - 3/8 inch high test chain
CABLE LENGTH (bridle length, total): 7/16 inch x 240-300 ft varies with bottom conditions
FLOAT BALL: none
LAZY LINES: 1 inch nylon
PICKUP LINES: 3/8 inch polypropelene
WHIP LINES: 1 inch nylon

APPENDIX E

Sea Turtle Tagging Data Report

(Note that any reporting form submitted for turtles taken by trawling activities related to the Thimble Shoal Channel and Atlantic Ocean Channel project should include the following information.)

Channel:_____ Date:_____
Tow #:_____ Net (circle): Port Starboard
Species: _____ Sex (circle): Male Female Unknown

Describe capture location and data of capture (include state, county, lat and long):_____
_____

Describe capture method and/or type of gear in use when turtle was caught:_____
_____

Flipper Tag Information
Left: _____
Right:_____
PIT Tag #:_____

Species Information: *(please designate cm/m or inches.)*
Weight (kg or lbs): _____
Plastron length _____ Plastron width _____
Straight carapace length _____ Straight carapace width _____
Curved carapace length _____ Curved carapace width _____
Tail length: _____ Head width:_____
Condition of specimen/description of animal_____
_____

Miscellaneous:
Blood taken: YES NO _____# of vials
Photos Taken: YES NO
Recapture: _____ this effort _____ previous effort
Organization
Tagging:_____
Personnel: _____ Phone:_____

Turtle Release Information:
Date:_____ Time:_____
Lat:_____ Long:_____
State:_____ County:_____

Remarks: (note if turtle was involved with tar or oil, gear or debris entanglement, wounds or mutilations, propellor damage, papillomas, tag locations, etc.)
_____
_____
_____
_____

ENDANGERED SPECIES OBSERVER PROGRAM

LOAD DATA FORM

USACE DISTRICT: _____

CONTRACT #: _____ **Maintenance**____/**New Work** _____ **PROJECT start date** _____

PROJECT NAME: _____ **DREDGE NAME:** _____

DREDGE FIRM: _____

LOAD #: _____ **LOAD start date:** _____ **Times (24hrs): Start** _____ **End** _____

Condition of screening : Port_____ **Starboard** _____ **Overflow** _____

Number of dragheads in use: _____ **Type of dragheads used:** _____**Size of dragheads:** _____

Draghead deflector? YES ____ **NO** ____ **Condition of deflector:** _____

Type of material dredged: _____

Weather conditions: _____

_____

Tidal stage (CIRCLE ONE): Slack Rising High Falling Low Unknown

<u>Beaufort Sea States (Winds/Wave Height)</u> (CIRCLE ONE)

0 = <1 knot/ 0 ft	**3** = 7-10 knot/ 2 ft	**6** = 22-27 knot/10 ft	**9** = 41-47 knot/23 ft	**12** = >63 knot/45
1 = 1- 3 knot/ 0.25 ft	**4** = 11-16 knot/ 4 ft	**7** = 28-33 knot/14 ft	**10** = 48-55 knot/29 ft	
2 = 4- 6 knot/ 0.5 ft	**5** = 17-21 knot/ 6 ft	**8** = 34-40 knot/18 ft	**11** = 56-63 knot/37 ft	

Waves: _____ **ft Wind (speed & direction):** _____

AIR TEMP: _____ **^{o}C/^{o}F** **(^{o}F = 9/5 (^{o}C) + 32; ^{o}C = 5/9 (^{o}F - 32))**

WATER TEMP: Surface _____ **^{o}C /^{o}F Column (mid-depth)** _____ **^{o}C /^{o}F Bottom** _____ **^{o}C /^{o}F**

SCREEN TYPE						
	_____	**Inflow screening:**	**None**	**25%**	**50%**	**75%**	**100%**
	_____	**Overflow screening:**	**None**	**25%**	**50%**	**75%**	**100%**
	_____	**Other screening:**	**None**	**25%**	**50%**	**75%**	**100%**

PORT SCREEN CONTENTS: _____

_____

_____

STARBOARD SCREEN CONTENTS: _____

_____

_____

Estimate number entrained on this load for the following:

Sturgeon (any species) _____

Shark (any species) _____

Horseshoe crab _____

Blue crab _____

TURTLE OR TURTLE PARTS PRESENT THIS LOAD: YES _____ **NO** _____

SPECIES OF TURTLE TAKE: <u>Unknown</u> <u>Loggerhead</u> <u>Green</u> <u>Kemp's ridley</u> <u>Hawksbill</u> <u>Leatherback</u>

Comments: _____

_____

Number observers used/24hrs: _____ **% Monitoring/24 hrs: None 25% 50% 75% 100%**

Observer's name: _____ **Observer firm**_____

Observer signature _____

ENDANGERED SPECIES OBSERVER PROGRAM

DAILY REPORT

USACE DISTRICT: _____

PROJECT NAME: _____ **DREDGE NAME:** _____

Date: _____ **Load #s:** _____ **Areas dredge worked:** _____

Weather conditions: _____

_____

Beaufort Sea State: 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

AIR TEMP: _____ ^{o}C/^{o}F (ºF = 9/5 (ºC) + 32; ºC = 5/9 (ºF - 32))

WATER TEMP: Surface _____ ^{o}C /^{o}F **Column (mid-depth)** _____ ^{o}C /^{o}F **Bottom** _____ ^{o}C /^{o}F

Condition of deflector:_____ **Condition of screening:** _____

Were there incidents involving endangered or protected species? **YES** ____ **NO** ____

Which species? (complete incident form(s))_____

Comments (type of material, biological specimens, unusual circumstances, etc): _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

BRIDGE WATCH SUMMARY

Time	Species	# Sightings/# Animals	Location/Comments
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	

Observer name _____

ENDANGERED SPECIES OBSERVER PROGRAM

WEEKLY SUMMARY

USACE DISTRICT: _____

PROJECT NAME: _____ **DREDGE NAME:** _____

Dates: _____ - _____ **Load #s:** _____

Areas dredge worked: _____

Were there incidents involving endangered or protected species? **YES** ____ **NO** ____

Which species? _____

Comments: _____

BRIDGE WATCH SUMMARY

Date/Time	Species	# Sightings/# Animals	Location/Comments
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	
		/	

Observer name _____

ENDANGERED SPECIES OBSERVER PROGRAM

SEA TURTLE INCIDENTAL TAKE DATA FORM

USACE DISTRICT:_____
PROJECT NAME: _____ **DREDGE NAME:** _____

DATE: _____ **Time turtle take recovered (24hr):** _____ **Turtle take # for project:** _____

LOAD #: _____ **Times (24hrs): Start** _____ **End** _____ **Load start date** _____

SPECIES OF TURTLE TAKE: **Unknown** **Loggerhead** **Green** **Kemp's ridley** **Hawksbill** **Leatherback**

Channel location of take: Latitude _____ **Longitude** _____
Other location / Channel description (e.g. buoy markers, landmarks):_____
_____

Location take recovered on dredge:_____

Number of dragheads in use at time of incident: _____ **Draghead deflector? YES** ____ **NO** ____
Condition of deflector:_____ **Condition of screening:** _____

Beaufort Sea State: 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

AIR TEMP: _____ **^{o}C/^{o}F** **(^{o}F = 9/5 (^{o}C) + 32; ^{o}C = 5/9 (^{o}F - 32))**
WATER TEMP: Surface _____ **^{o}C /^{o}F Column (mid-depth)** _____ **^{o}C /^{o}F Bottom** _____ **^{o}C /^{o}F**

Condition of specimen: _____
_____
_____
0 = Alive; 1 = Fresh dead; 2 = Moderately decomposed; 3 = Severely decomposed; 4 = skeleton/old bone; 5 = undetermined

Sex: M F UN How determined?_____ **Age class: Juv** ___ **Sub-Adult** ___ **Adult** ___ **UN** ___

Measurements: ***Circle units***

		Head Width:	_____ **cm/in**
Plastron Length:	_____ **cm/in**	**Plastron Width:**	_____ **cm/in**
Carapace Straight Length:	_____ **cm/in**	**Carapace Straight Width:**	_____ **cm/in**
Carapace Curved Length:	_____ **cm/in**	**Carapace Curved Width:**	_____ **cm/in**

Measurement/description of part:_____

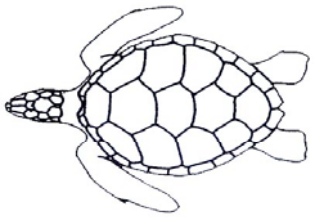
Genetic samples taken: YES ____ **NO** ____ **Photos taken: YES** ____ **NO** ____
Turtle tagged?: YES ____ **NO** ____ **Tag type:**_____ **Tag #:** _____ **Tag date:** _____
Final disposition of specimen: _____

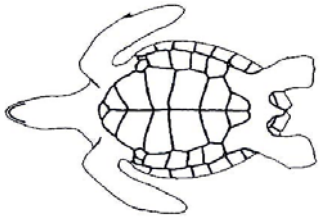
Comments: _____
_____
_____

Load data form attached: YES ____**NO** ____ **Dredge load log attached: YES** ____**NO** ____

Observer's name _____

Use diagrams below to illustrate specimen/part recovered:





Kemp's Ridley (*Lepidochelys kempii)*

Shade areas of turtle that are missing; sketch cracks and lacerations

Comments: _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

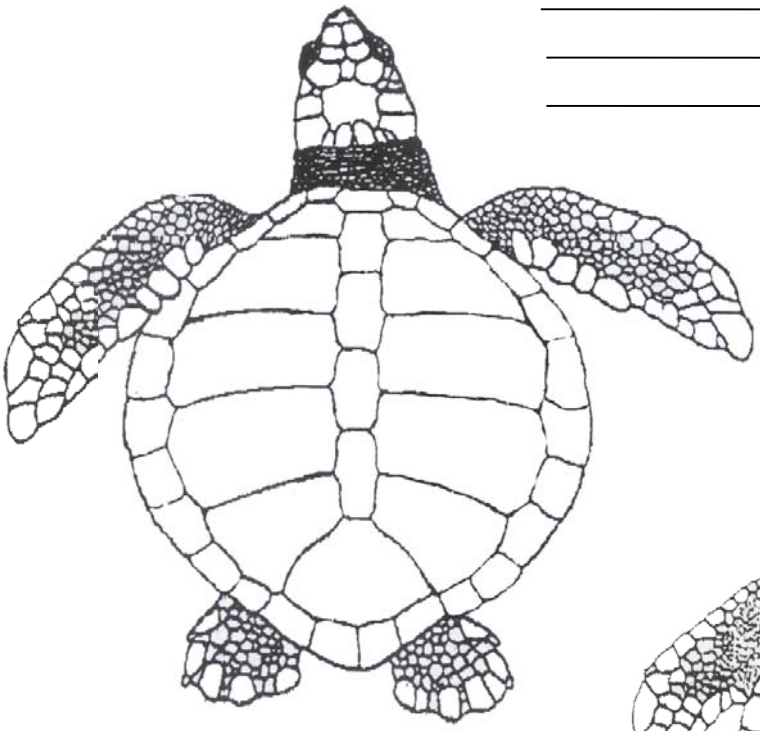
_____

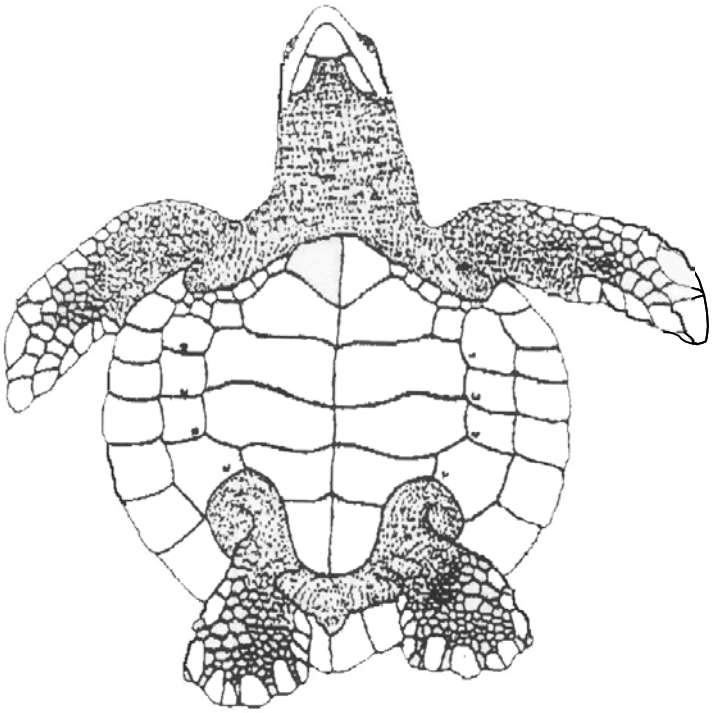
_____

_____

_____

_____





Original Drawings by Tom McFarland

Drawings Modified by Andrew Jackson

Green turtle (*Chelonia mydas)*

Shade areas of turtle that are missing; sketch cracks and lacerations

Comments: _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

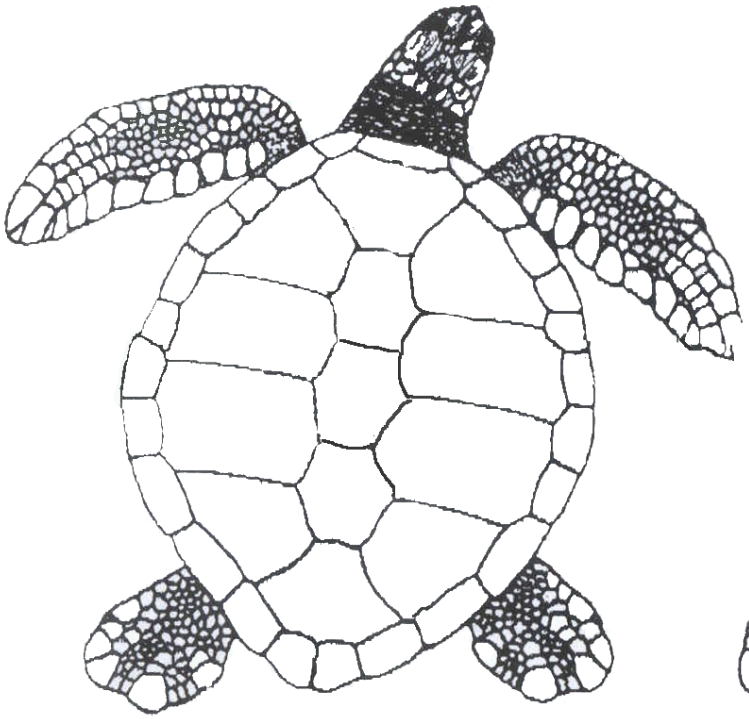
_____

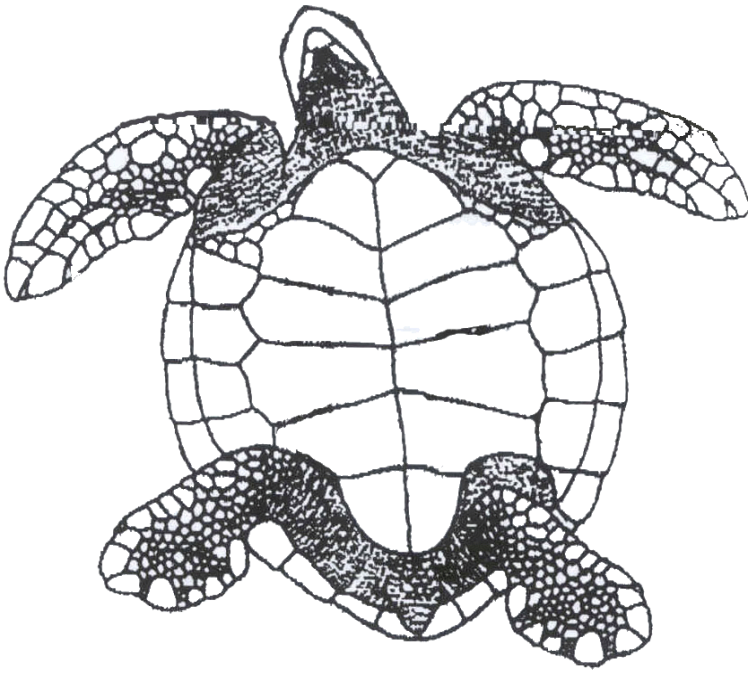
_____

_____

_____

_____





Original Drawings by Tom McFarland

Drawings Modified by Andrew Jackson

Loggerhead (*Caretta caretta)*

Shade areas of turtle that are missing; sketch cracks and lacerations

Comments: _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

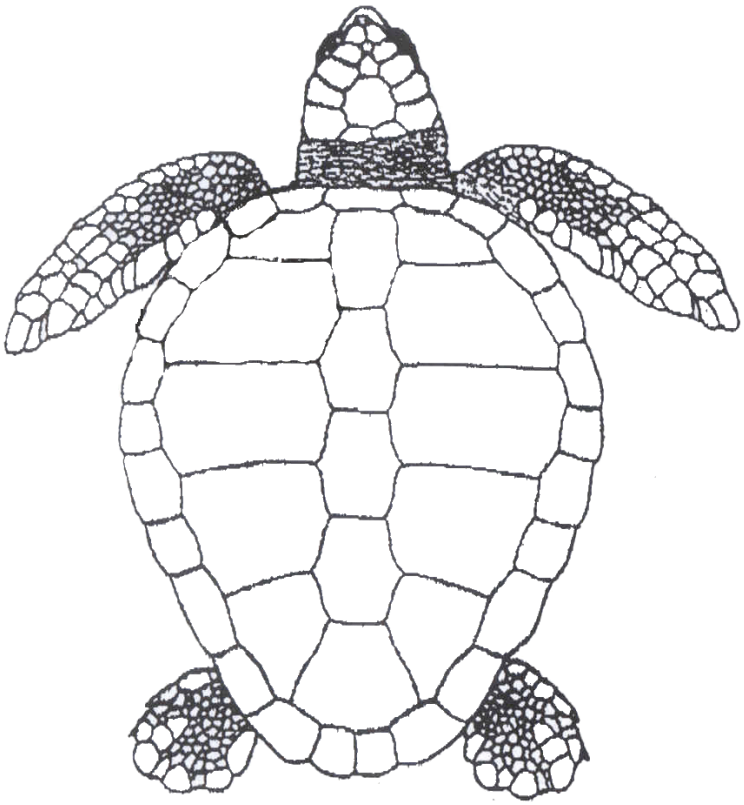
_____

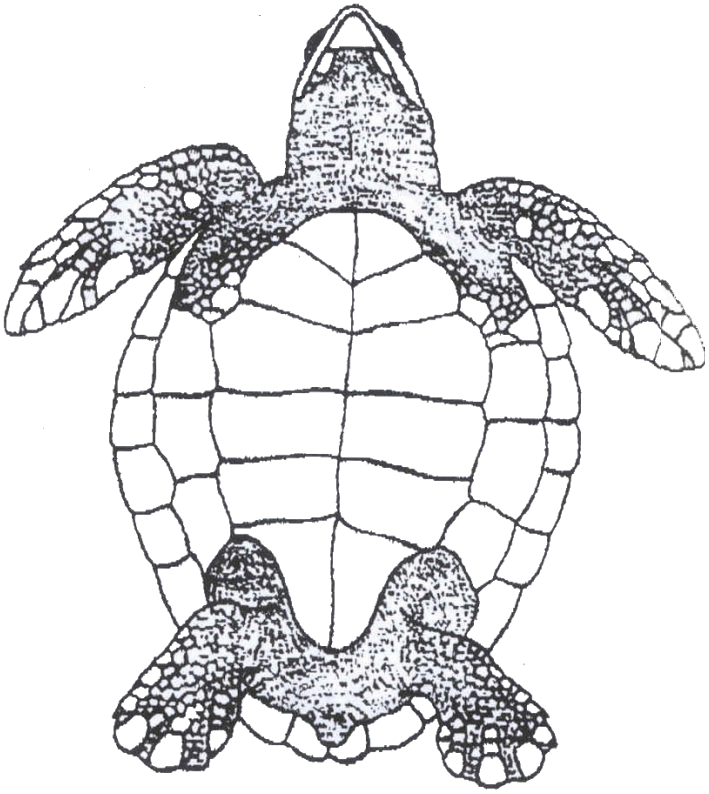
_____

_____

_____

_____





Original Drawings by Tom McFarland

Drawings Modified by Andrew Jackson

Leatherback (*Dermochelys coriacea)*

Shade areas of turtle that are missing; sketch cracks and lacerations

Comments: _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

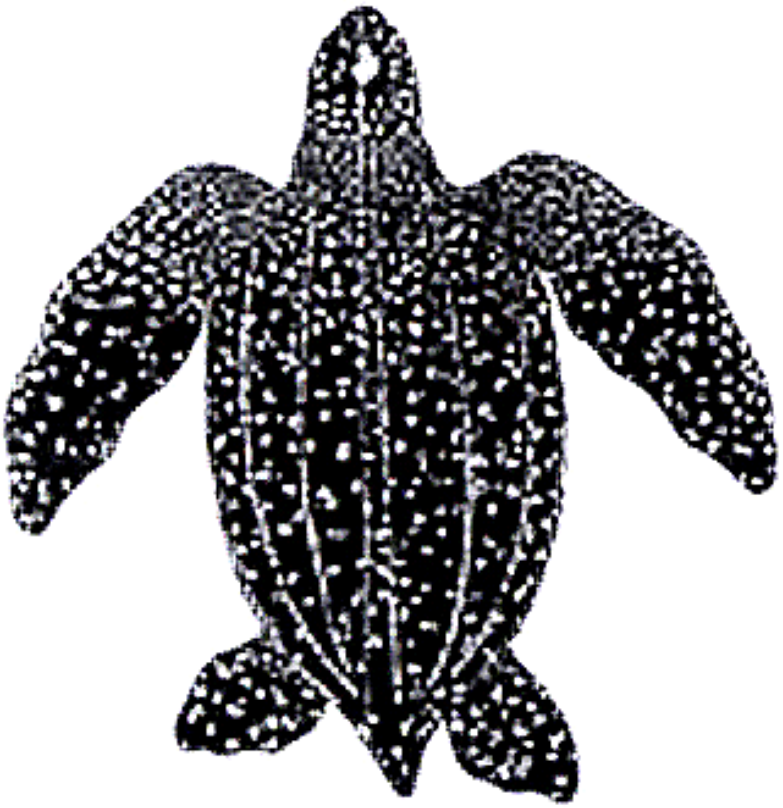
_____

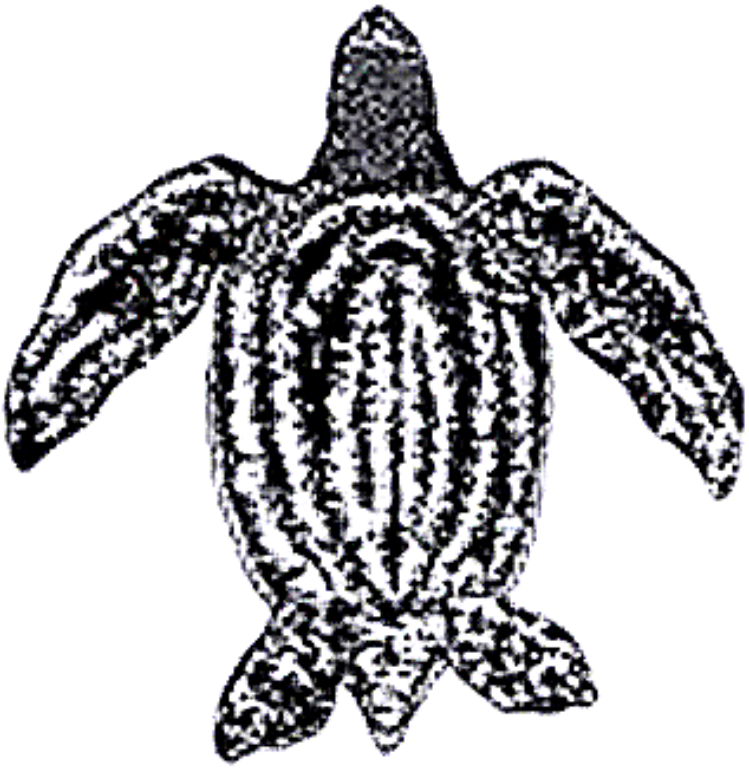
_____

_____

_____

_____





Original Drawings by Tom McFarland

Drawings Modified by Andrew Jackson

ENDANGERED SPECIES OBSERVER PROGRAM

STURGEON INCIDENTAL TAKE DATA FORM

USACE DISTRICT: _____

PROJECT NAME: _____ **DREDGE NAME:** _____

DATE: _____ **Time sturgeon take recovered (24hr):** _____ **Sturgeon # for project:** _____

LOAD #: _____ **Times (24hrs): Start** _____ **End** _____ **Load start date** _____

SPECIES OF STURGEON TAKE: Shortnose _____ **Gulf** _____ **Other** _____ **Unknown** _____

Channel location of take: Latitude _____ **Longitude** _____

Other location / Channel description (e.g. buoy markers, landmarks):_____

_____

Location take recovered on dredge:_____

Number of dragheads in use at time of incident: _____ **Draghead deflector? YES** ____ **NO** ____

Condition of deflector:_____ **Condition of screening:** _____

Beaufort Sea State: 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

AIR TEMP: _____ **^{o}C/^{o}F** **(^{o}F = 9/5 (^{o}C) + 32; ^{o}C = 5/9 (^{o}F - 32))**

WATER TEMP: Surface _____ **^{o}C /^{o}F Column (mid-depth)** _____ **^{o}C /^{o}F Bottom** _____ **^{o}C /^{o}F**

Condition of specimen: _____

_____

_____

0 = Alive; 1 = Fresh dead; 2 = Moderately decomposed; 3 = Severely decomposed; 4 = skeleton/old bone; 5 = undetermined

Measurements/description of specimen:_____

_____

_____

Genetic samples taken: YES ____ **NO** ____ **Photos taken: YES** ____ **NO** ____

Sample frozen/preserved: YES ____ **NO** ____

Final disposition of specimen: _____

Comments: _____

_____

_____

_____

Load data form attached: YES ____**NO** ____ **Dredge load log attached: YES** ____**NO** ____

Observer's name _____

Use diagram below to illustrate specimen/part recovered:

ENDANGERD SPECIES OBSERVER PROGRAM
Large Whale Observation Data
(Append to Daily Report)

Vessel_____

Project _____

Date_____/_____/_____

Load # _____ Times: Start _____ End _____ Dump _____
Location(lat/long) _____ X _____ Beau Sea State _____
Wind Direction _____ Speed _____ Cloud Cover(%) _____ H_2O Surf. Temp _____

Start Sighting Time_____ Vessel location (lat/long) _____ X _____
Magnetic bearing to sighting _____ Estimated distance _____
Species observed _____ # of animals _____
Vessel's heading _____ Animal's heading _____

Estimated length of whale(s)_____
Coloration_____
Fins or flippers observed_____
Behaviors observed_____
Surfacing intervals (time and distance) _____

End Sighting Time_____ Vessel location (lat/long) _____ X _____
Duration of observation _____

Comments (was whale's behavior effected by vessel? how far and in what direction did whale(s) move during observation? who was notified?)

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

Observers on Duty: _____

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 01355

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES
1.2 DEFINITIONS
1.2.1 Environmental Pollution and Damage
1.2.2 Environmental Protection
1.2.3 Contractor Generated Hazardous Waste
1.2.4 Waters of the United States
1.2.5 Wetlands
1.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS
1.4 SUBCONTRACTORS
1.5 PAYMENT
1.6 SUBMITTALS
1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS
1.7.1 Contents of Environmental Protection Plan
1.8 ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT OF CONTRACT DEVIATIONS
1.9 NON-COMPLIANCE NOTIFICATION

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION OF FEATURES
3.2 LAND RESOURCES
3.3 WATER RESOURCES
3.4 PROTECTION OF WILDLIFE AND VEGETATION
3.5 U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (USDA) QUARANTINED CONSIDERATIONS
3.6 WETLANDS AND NATURAL HABITAT
3.7 POST CONSTRUCTION CLEANUP

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 01355

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

33 CFR 328	Definitions
40 CFR 68	Chemical Accident Prevention Provisions
40 CFR 302	Designation, Reportable Quantities, and Notification
40 CFR 355	Emergency Planning and Notification

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1	(2003) U.S. Army Corps on Engineers Safety and Health Requirements Manual
WETLAND MANUAL	Corps of Engineers Wetlands Delineation Manual Technical Report Y-87-1

1.2 DEFINITIONS

Environmental pollution and damage is defined as the presence of chemical, physical, or biological elements or agents that adversely affect human health or welfare; unfavorably alter ecological balances of plant or animal communities; or degrade the environment from an aesthetic, cultural or historic perspective.

1.2.1 Environmental Pollution and Damage

Environmental pollution and damage is the presence of chemical, physical, or biological elements or agents which adversely affect human health or welfare; unfavorably alter ecological balances of importance to human life; affect other species of importance to humankind; or degrade the environment aesthetically, culturally, or historically.

1.2.2 Environmental Protection

Environmental protection is the prevention and control of pollution and habitat disruption that may occur to the environment during construction. The control of environmental pollution and damage requires consideration of land, water, and air; biological and cultural resources; and includes management of visual aesthetics; noise; solid, chemical, gaseous, and

liquid waste; radiant energy and radioactive material as well as other pollutants.

1.2.3 Contractor Generated Hazardous Waste

Contractor generated hazardous waste means materials that, if abandoned or disposed of, may meet the definition of a hazardous waste. These waste streams would typically consist of material brought on site by the Contractor to execute work, but are not fully consumed during the course of construction. Examples include, but are not limited to, excess paint thinners (i.e. methyl ethyl ketone, toluene), waste thinners, excess paints, excess solvents, waste solvents, excess pesticides, and contaminated pesticide equipment rinse water.

1.2.4 Waters of the United States

All waters which are under the jurisdiction of the Clean Water Act, as defined in 33 CFR 328.

1.2.5 Wetlands

Wetlands means those areas that are inundated or saturated by surface or ground water at a frequency and duration sufficient to support, and that under normal circumstances do support, a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions. Wetlands generally include swamps, marshes, and bogs. Official determination of whether or not an area is classified as a wetland must be done in accordance with WETLAND MANUAL.

1.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

The Contractor shall minimize environmental pollution and damage that may occur as the result of construction operations. The environmental resources within the project boundaries and those affected outside the limits of permanent work shall be protected during the entire duration of this contract. The Contractor shall comply with all applicable Federal, State, and local laws and regulations. The Contractor shall provide environmental protective measures and procedures to prevent and control pollution, limit habitat disruption, and correct environmental damage that occurs during construction. The Contractor shall be responsible for any delays resulting from failure to comply with environmental laws and regulations.

1.4 SUBCONTRACTORS

The Contractor shall ensure compliance with this SECTION by subcontractors.

1.5 PAYMENT

No separate payment will be made for work covered under this SECTION. The Contractor shall be responsible for payment of fees associated with environmental permits, application, and notices obtained by the Contractor. All costs associated with this SECTION shall be included in the contract price. The Contractor shall be responsible for payment of all fines and fees for violation or non-compliance with Federal, State, Regional and local laws and regulations.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall make submittals for the following listed reports and certificates as required by the specifications. The Contracting Officer may request submittals in addition to those specified when deemed necessary to adequately describe the work. Units of weights and measures used on all submittals shall be the same as those used in the contract drawings. Each submittal shall be complete and in sufficient detail to allow ready determination of compliance with contract requirements. Prior to submittal, all items shall be checked and approved by the Contractor's Quality Control (CQC) representative and each item shall be stamped, signed, and dated by the CQC representative indicating action taken in accordance with SECTION 01451. Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Environmental Protection Plan; G

Prior to commencement of any work, including delivery of any plant, equipment or construction materials to the site, submit a plan for environmental protection as specified herein.

The paragraph "ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS" below lists personnel requirements and plans to be submitted by the Contractor as a part of the Environmental Protection Plan. Although these requirements are listed as individual Plans and personnel requirements that are a part of the contents of the Environmental Protection Plan, all listed individual Plans and personnel requirements must be submitted with the entire Environmental Protection Plan for approval.

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The Contractor shall submit an Environmental Protection Plan for review and approval by the Contracting Officer. This Environmental Protection Plan shall consist of a written narrative, as well as any individual plans, supplemental drawings, documents, and photographs required to verify the Contractor's work will be in accordance with the environmental permits and all laws and regulations governing the work as indicated and specified. The Contractor shall submit this plan and all supplementary data for approval at least 10 calendar days prior to the scheduled Preconstruction Conference. The Contractor will be informed in writing of any revisions as may be required by the Contracting Officer at the Preconstruction Conference and shall submit a final plan for final approval not later than 5 calendar days prior to start of scheduled construction activities. Acceptance is conditional and is predicated upon satisfactory performance during construction. The Government reserves the right to require the Contractor to make changes in the Environmental Protection Plan or operations if the Contracting Officer determines that environmental protection requirements are not being met. The plan shall detail the actions that the Contractor shall take to comply with all applicable Federal, State, and local laws and regulations concerning environmental protection and pollution control and abatement, as well as the additional specific requirements of this contract. No physical work at the site, including delivery of the Contractor's plant and equipment and construction

materials, shall begin prior to acceptance by the Contracting Officer of the Contractor's Environmental Protection Plan covering the work to be performed. No requirement in this Section shall be construed as relieving the Contractor of any applicable Federal, State, and local environmental protection laws and regulations. During Construction, the Contractor shall be responsible for identifying, implementing, and submitting for approval any additional requirements to be included in the Environmental Protection Plan.

1.7.1 Contents of Environmental Protection Plan

The purpose of the Environmental Protection Plan is to present a comprehensive overview of known or potential environmental issues which the Contractor must address during construction. Issues of concern shall be defined within the Environmental Protection Plan as outlined in this section. The Contractor shall address each topic at a level of detail commensurate with the environmental issue and required construction task(s). Topics or issues which are not identified in this SECTION, but which the Contractor considers necessary, shall be identified and discussed after those items formally identified in this SECTION. The Environmental Protection Plan shall be current and maintained onsite by the Contractor. The Environmental Protection Plan shall comply with the requirements of EM 385-1-1 and include, but not be limited to, the following:

a. Name(s) of person(s) within the Contractor's organization who is(are) responsible for ensuring adherence to the Environmental Protection Plan and those who may be delegated with separate responsibilities subject to approval of the CO.

b. Name(s) and qualifications of person(s) responsible for manifesting hazardous waste to be removed from the site, if applicable.

c. Name(s) and qualifications of person(s) responsible for training the Contractor's environmental protection personnel.

d. Description of the Contractor's environmental protection personnel training program.

e. The Spill Control plan shall include the procedures, instructions, and reports to be used in the event of an unforeseen spill of a substance regulated by 40 CFR 68, 40 CFR 302, 40 CFR 355, or regulated under State or Local laws and regulations. The Spill Control Plan supplements the requirements of EM 385-1-1. This plan shall include as a minimum:

1. The name of the individual who will report any spills or hazardous substance releases and who will follow up with complete documentation. This individual shall immediately notify the Contracting Officer in addition to the legally required Federal, State, and local reporting channels (including the National Response Center 1-800-424-8802) if a reportable quantity is released to the environment. The plan shall contain a list of the required reporting channels and telephone numbers.

2. The name and qualifications of the individual who will be responsible for implementing and supervising the containment and cleanup.

3. Training requirements for Contractor's personnel and methods

of accomplishing the training.

4. A list of materials and equipment to be immediately available at the job site, tailored to cleanup work of the potential hazard(s) identified.

5. The names and locations of suppliers of containment materials and locations of additional fuel oil recovery, cleanup, restoration, and material-placement equipment available in case of an unforeseen spill emergency.

6. The methods and procedures to be used for expeditious contaminant cleanup.

f. A non-hazardous solid waste disposal plan identifying methods and locations for solid waste disposal including clearing debris. The plan shall include schedules for disposal. The Contractor shall identify any subcontractors responsible for the transportation and disposal of solid waste. Licenses or permits shall be submitted for solid waste disposal sites that are not a commercial operating facility. Evidence of the disposal facility's acceptance of the solid waste shall be attached to this plan during the construction.

g. A recycling and solid waste minimization plan with a list of measures to reduce consumption of energy and natural resources. The plan shall detail the Contractor's actions to comply with and to participate in Federal, State, Regional, and local government sponsored recycling programs to reduce the volume of solid waste at the source.

h. An air pollution control plan detailing provisions to assure that dust, debris, materials, trash, etc., do not become air borne and travel off the project site.

i. A contaminant prevention plan that: identifies potentially hazardous substances to be used on the job site; identifies the intended actions to prevent introduction of such materials into the air, water, or ground; and details provisions for compliance with Federal, State, and local laws and regulations for storage and handling of these materials. In accordance with EM 385-1-1, a copy of the Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) and the maximum quantity of each hazardous material to be on site at any given time shall be included in the contaminant prevention plan. As new hazardous materials are brought on site or removed from the site, the plan shall be updated.

1.8 ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT OF CONTRACT DEVIATIONS

Any deviations, requested by the Contractor, from the drawings, plans and specifications which may have an environmental impact will be subject to approval by the Contracting Officer and may require an extended review, processing, and approval time. The Contracting Officer reserves the right to disapprove alternate methods, even if they are more cost effective, if the Contracting Officer determines that the proposed alternate method will have an adverse environmental impact.

1.9 NON-COMPLIANCE NOTIFICATION

The Contracting Officer will notify the Contractor in writing of any observed noncompliance with Federal, State or local environmental laws or regulations, permits, and other elements of the Contractor's Environmental

Protection plan. The Contractor shall, after receipt of such notice, inform the Contracting Officer of the proposed corrective action and take such action when approved by the Contracting Officer. The Contracting Officer may issue an order stopping all or part of the work until satisfactory corrective action has been taken. No time extensions shall be granted or equitable adjustments allowed to the Contractor for any such suspensions. This is in addition to any other actions the Contracting Officer may take under the contract, or in accordance with the Federal Acquisition Regulation or Federal Law.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION OF FEATURES

This SECTION supplements the CONTRACT CLAUSE "PROTECTION OF EXISTING VEGETATION, STRUCTURES, EQUIPMENT, UTILITIES, AND IMPROVEMENTS". The Contractor shall prepare a list of features requiring protection under the provisions of the CONTRACT CLAUSE that are not specifically identified on the drawings or otherwise specified as environmental features requiring protection. The Contractor shall protect those environmental features as indicated and specified, in spite of interference that their preservation may cause to the Contractor's work under the contract.

3.2 LAND RESOURCES

The Contractor shall confine all activities to areas defined by the drawings and specifications. Prior to the beginning of any construction, the Contractor shall identify any land resources to be preserved within the work area. Except in areas indicated on the drawings or specified to be dredged, the Contractor shall not remove, cut, deface, injure, or destroy land resources including trees, shrubs, vines, grasses, topsoil, and land forms without approval. No ropes, cables, or guys shall be fastened to or attached to any trees for anchorage unless specifically authorized. The Contractor shall provide effective protection for land and vegetation resources at all times as defined in the following subparagraphs. Stone, soil, or other materials displaced into uncleared areas shall be removed by the Contractor.

3.3 WATER RESOURCES

The Contractor shall monitor construction activities to prevent pollution of surface and ground waters. Toxic or hazardous chemicals shall not be applied to soil or vegetation. All water areas affected by construction activities shall be monitored by the Contractor. The Contractor shall perform monitoring, inspections, sampling and testing, reporting, and record keeping as indicated and specified.

3.4 PROTECTION OF WILDLIFE AND VEGETATION

The Contractor is informed that the work areas are in a portion of Virginia frequented by migratory birds and is a native habitat for eagles, hawks, egrets, herons, pelicans, terns, and other wildlife that are identified as either endangered species protected by federal law or species of special concern for Commonwealth of Virginia agencies. If, in the performance of this contract, evidence of the possible disturbance to any such migratory bird or listed species may occur, the Contractor shall notify the Contracting Officer immediately, giving the location and nature of the

findings. The Contractor shall advise all personnel associated with the operation of the vessels and plant of the civil and criminal provisions of the Endangered Species Act (ESA), the Migratory Bird Act, and the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA). In the event that endangered or protected species are affected by this work, the work under this contract may be suspended or terminated as determined by the Contracting Officer. All crew members of the dredge, attendant plant operators, and those sub-contractors employed on the work shall be required to read and certify in writing they are aware of the contents of this specification and the Contractor's Environmental Protection Plan. Copies of this SECTION and the Environmental Protection Plan, including a posting warning of the civil and criminal liabilities that violators are subject to for non-compliance to the requirements of them, shall be clearly posted with other required postings on-site for employees.

3.5 U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (USDA) QUARANTINED CONSIDERATIONS

The Contractor shall thoroughly clean all construction equipment at the prior job site in a manner that ensures all residual soil is removed and that egg deposits from plant pests are not present. The Contractor shall consult with the USDA Plant Protection and Quarantine (USDA - PPQ) jurisdictional office for additional cleaning requirements that may be necessary.

3.6 WETLANDS AND NATURAL HABITAT

Use of the Contractor's plant to construct the scheduled work, including the associated use of ropes, cables, or guys over wetlands and in natural habitat areas, shall be scheduled in a manner to disturb the wetlands and natural habitat areas to the minimum necessary to accomplish the work. Any damage to wetlands or natural habitat areas shall be repaired to original condition at no additional expense to the government. The Contracting Officer will notify the Contractor in writing of any observed noncompliance with the previously mentioned Federal, State or local laws or regulations, permits, and other elements of the Contractor's environmental protection plan. The Contractor shall, after receipt of such notice, inform the Contracting Officer of proposed corrective action and take such action when approved. If the Contractor fails to comply promptly, the Contracting Officer may issue an order stopping all or part of the work until satisfactory corrective action has been taken. No time extensions shall be granted or costs or damages allowed to the Contractor for any such suspensions.

3.7 POST CONSTRUCTION CLEANUP

The Contractor shall clean up all areas used for construction in accordance with Contract Clause: "Cleaning Up". The Contractor shall, unless otherwise instructed in writing by the Contracting Officer, obliterate all signs of temporary construction facilities such as haul roads, work area, structures, foundations of temporary structures, stockpiles of excess or waste materials, and other vestiges of construction prior to final acceptance of the work. The disturbed land area shall be graded, filled and the entire area seeded unless otherwise indicated.

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 01420

SOURCES FOR REFERENCE PUBLICATIONS

07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES
1.2 ORDERING INFORMATION

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 01420

SOURCES FOR REFERENCE PUBLICATIONS
07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

Various publications are referenced in other sections of the specifications to establish requirements for the work. These references are identified in each section by document number, date and title. The document number used in the citation is the number assigned by the standards producing organization, (e.g. ASTM B 564 Nickel Alloy Forgings). However, when the standards producing organization has not assigned a number to a document, an identifying number has been assigned for reference purposes.

1.2 ORDERING INFORMATION

The addresses of the standards publishing organizations whose documents are referenced in other sections of these specifications are listed below, and if the source of the publications is different from the address of the sponsoring organization, that information is also provided. Documents listed in the specifications with numbers which were not assigned by the standards producing organization should be ordered from the source by title rather than by number.

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)
Three Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5990
Ph: 212-591-7722
Fax: 212-591-7674
E-mail: infocentral@asme.org
Internet: http://www.asme.org

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)
1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02169-7471
Ph: 617-770-3000
Fax: 617-770-0700
E-mail: webmaster@nfpa.org
Internet: http://www.nfpa.org

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)
Order CRD-C DOCUMENTS from:
U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station
ATTN: Technical Report Distribution Section, Services Branch, TIC
3909 Halls Ferry Road
Vicksburg, MS 39180-6199
Ph: 601-634-2664
Fax: 601-634-2388
E-mail: mtc-info@erdc.usace.army.mil
Internet: http://www.wes.army.mil/SL/MTC/handbook.htm

Order Other Documents from:

USACE Publications Depot
Attn: CEIM-IM-PD
2803 52nd Avenue
Hyattsville, MD 20781-1102
Ph: 301-394-0081
Fax: 301-394-0084
E-mail: pubs-army@usace.army.mil
Internet: http://www.usace.army.mil/publications
or http://www.hnd.usace.army.mil/techinfo/engpubs.htm

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)
8601 Adelphi Road
College Park, MD 20740-6001
Ph: 866-272-6272
Fax: 301-837-0483
Internet: http://www.archives.gov

Order documents from:
Superintendent of Documents
U.S.Government Printing Office (GPO)
732 North Capitol Street, NW
Washington, DC 20401
Ph: 888-293-6498 or 202-512-1530
Fax: 202-512-1262
E-mail: gpoaccess.gov
Internet: http://www.gpoaccess.gov

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 01451

CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL

07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 PAYMENT
1.2 SUBMITTALS

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT APPLICABLE)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS
3.2 QUALITY CONTROL PLAN
3.2.1 General
3.2.2 Acceptance of Plan
3.2.3 Notification of Changes
3.3 COORDINATION MEETING
3.4 QUALITY CONTROL ORGANIZATION
3.4.1 Personnel Requirements
3.4.2 CQC System Manager
3.4.3 Additional Requirement
3.4.4 Organizational Changes
3.5 SUBMITTALS AND DELIVERABLES
3.6 CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL (CQC)
3.6.1 Preparatory Phase
3.6.2 Initial Phase
3.6.3 Follow-up Phase
3.6.4 Additional Preparatory and Initial Phases
3.7 DOCUMENTATION
3.8 SAMPLE FORMS
3.9 NON-COMPLIANCE NOTIFICATION

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 01451

CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL
07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 PAYMENT

Separate payment will not be made for providing and maintaining an effective Quality Control program, and all costs associated therewith shall be included in the applicable unit prices or lump-sum prices contained in the Bidding Schedule.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall make submittals for the following listed reports and certificates as required by the specifications. The Contracting Officer may request submittals in addition to those specified when deemed necessary to adequately describe the work. Units of weights and measures used on all submittals shall be the same as those used in the contract drawings. Each submittal shall be complete and in sufficient detail to allow ready determination of compliance with contract requirements. Prior to submittal, all items shall be checked and approved by the Contractor's Quality Control (CQC) representative and each item shall be stamped, signed, and dated by the CQC representative indicating action taken in accordance with SECTION 01451. Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction and Postconstruction Submittals

Quality Control Plan; G

Prior to commencement of dredging, submit a copy of Quality Control Plan to Contracting Officer indicating plans, procedures, and organization necessary to produce an end product that complies with the contract requirements.

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Daily Quality Control Reports

Daily quality control reports including preparatory and initial phase minutes shall be submitted on a daily basis as specified in paragraph "DOCUMENTATION".

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT APPLICABLE)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

The Contractor is responsible for quality control and shall establish and maintain an effective quality control system in compliance with the

Contract Clause titled "Inspection of Construction." The quality control system shall consist of plans, procedures, and organization necessary to produce an end product that complies with the contract requirements. The system shall cover all construction operations, both onsite and offsite, and shall be keyed to the proposed construction sequence.

3.2 QUALITY CONTROL PLAN

3.2.1 General

Prior to start of the scheduled work operations, the Contractor shall furnish his Quality Control Plan to the COR for acceptance. The CQC Plan the Contractor proposes to implement shall identify the personnel, procedures, instructions, records, and forms, and, as a minimum, shall include:

a. A description of the quality control organization, including a chart showing lines of authority by name with duties and responsibilities of their respective position, qualifications (in resume format), and acknowledgment that the CQC staff shall implement the three phase control system for all aspects of the work specified.

b. The number, classifications, qualifications, duties, responsibilities and authorities of personnel. A copy of the letter, signed by an authorized official of the firm, which describes the responsibilities and delegates the sufficient authorities to adequately perform the functions of the CQC System Manager, including authority to stop work which is not in compliance with the contract. The CQC System Manager shall issue letters of direction to all other various quality control representatives outlining duties, authorities and responsibilities, and shall furnish copies to the Government at the same time.

c. Control, verification and acceptance testing procedures for each specific test to include the test name, specification paragraph requiring test, feature of work to be tested, test frequency, and person or laboratory responsible for each test (laboratory facilities will be approved by the CO).

d. Procedures for scheduling, reviewing, certifying, and managing submittals, including those of subcontractors, offsite fabricators, suppliers, and purchasing agents. These procedures shall be in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.

e. Procedures for tracking preparatory, initial, and follow-up control phases and control, verification, and acceptance tests including documentation.

f. Procedures for tracking construction deficiencies from identification through acceptable corrective action. These procedures shall establish verification that identified deficiencies have been corrected.

g. Reporting procedures, including proposed reporting formats.

h. A list of the definable features of work. A definable feature of work is a task which is separate and distinct from other tasks,

has separate control requirements, and may be identified by different trades or disciplines, or it may be work by the same trade in a different environment. Although each section of the specifications may generally be considered as a definable feature of work, there are frequently more than one definable feature under a particular section. This list will be agreed upon during the coordination meeting.

3.2.2 Acceptance of Plan

Acceptance of the Contractor's plan is required prior to the start of construction. Acceptance is conditional and will be predicated on satisfactory performance during the construction. The Government reserves the right to require the Contractor to make changes in his CQC Plan and operations including removal of personnel, as necessary, to obtain the quality specified.

3.2.3 Notification of Changes

After acceptance of the CQC Plan, the Contractor shall notify the Contracting Officer in writing of any proposed change. Proposed changes are subject to acceptance by the Contracting Officer.

3.3 COORDINATION MEETING

As soon as practicable after receipt of Notice to Proceed (NTP) and before start of the scheduled work, and prior to acceptance by the Government of the CQC Plan, the Contractor shall meet with the Contracting Officer or Authorized Representative and discuss the Contractor's quality control system. The Contractor's Project Manager, Submittals Clerk and Quality Control Manager, and Dredge Captain and Plant Operators shall attend this meeting. The Contractor is encouraged to have an officer of his company and representation from any major subcontractors at the conference. The CQC Plan shall be submitted for review a minimum of 14 calendar days prior to the Coordination Meeting. During the meeting, a mutual understanding of the system details shall be developed, including the forms for recording the CQC operations, control activities, testing, administration of the system for both onsite and offsite work, and the interrelationship of Contractor's Management and control with the Government's Quality Assurance. Minutes of the meeting shall be prepared by the Government. The minutes shall become a part of the contract file. There may be occasions when subsequent conferences will be called by either party to reconfirm mutual understandings, to address deficiencies in the CQC system, or clarify procedures which may require corrective action by the Contractor.

3.4 QUALITY CONTROL ORGANIZATION

3.4.1 Personnel Requirements

The requirements for the CQC organization are a CQC System Manager and sufficient number of additional qualified personnel to ensure contract compliance. The Contractor shall provide a CQC organization that shall be at the site at all times during progress of the work and with complete authority to take any action necessary to ensure compliance with the contract. All CQC staff members shall be subject to interview and acceptance by the Contracting Officer or his designated representative.

3.4.2 CQC System Manager

The Contractor shall identify as CQC System Manager an individual within the onsite work organization who shall be responsible for overall management of CQC and have the authority to act in all CQC matters for the Contractor. The CQC System Manager will be held responsible for the quality of work on the job and is subject to removal by the Contracting Officer for non-compliance with quality requirements specified in the contract. The CQC System Manager shall be:

a. A graduate engineer, graduate architect, graduate of construction management, or an experienced construction management person with a minimum of five years experience in dredging work similar in magnitude and duration to this contract. This experience shall include work in environments with similar dredging conditions and compliance with environmental requirements in the Commonwealth of Virginia.

This CQC System Manager shall be on the site at all times during construction and shall be employed by the prime Contractor. The CQC System Manager shall be assigned as System Manager but may have duties as project superintendent in addition to quality control. An alternate for the CQC System Manager shall be identified in the plan to serve in the event of the System Manager's absence. The requirements for the alternate shall be the same as for the designated CQC System Manager.

3.4.3 Additional Requirement

In addition, this experience shall include successful completion of Course entitled "Construction Quality Management for Contractors". The Contractor and his designated CQC staff shall have completed this training within 60 calendar days of receipt of his Notice To Proceed. This course is offered periodically by the Corps of Engineers. Specific times and locations are available from the Norfolk District, telephone (757) 201-7723.

3.4.4 Organizational Changes

The Contractor shall maintain the CQC staff at full strength at all times. When it is necessary to make changes to the CQC staff, the Contractor shall revise the CQC Plan to reflect the changes and submit the changes to the Contracting Officer for acceptance.

3.5 SUBMITTALS AND DELIVERABLES

Submittals, if needed, shall be made as specified in Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES. The CQC organization shall be responsible for certifying that all submittals and deliverables are in compliance with the contract requirements.

3.6 CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL (CQC)

Contractor Quality Control is the means by which the Contractor ensures that the construction, to include that of subcontractors and suppliers, complies with the requirements of the contract. At least three phases of control shall be conducted by the CQC System Manager for each definable feature of work as follows:

3.6.1 Preparatory Phase

This phase shall be performed prior to beginning work on each definable

feature of work, after all required plans/documents/materials are approved/accepted, and after copies are at the work site. This phase shall include:

a. A review of the paragraphs of applicable specifications, reference codes, and standards. A copy of those sections of referenced codes and standards applicable to that portion of the work to be accomplished in the field shall be made available by the Contractor at the preparatory inspection. These copies shall be maintained in the field and available for use by Government personnel until final acceptance of the work.

b. A review of the contract drawings.

c. A check to assure that all materials and equipment have been tested, submitted, and approved.

d. Review of provisions that have been made to provide required control inspection and testing.

e. Examination of the work area to assure that all required preliminary work has been completed and is in compliance with the contract.

f. A physical examination of required materials, equipment, and sample work to assure that they are on hand, conform to approved shop drawings or submitted data, and are properly stored.

g. A review of the appropriate activity hazard analysis to assure safety requirements are met.

h. Discussion of procedures for controlling quality of the work including repetitive deficiencies. Document construction tolerances and workmanship standards for that feature of work.

i. A check to ensure that the portion of the plan for the work to be performed has been accepted by the Contracting Officer.

j. Discussion of the initial control phase.

k. The Government shall be notified at least 48 hours, excluding non-workdays, in advance of beginning the preparatory control phase. This phase shall include a meeting conducted by the CQC System Manager and attended by the superintendent, other CQC personnel (as applicable), and the foreman responsible for the definable feature. The results of the preparatory phase actions shall be documented by separate minutes prepared by the CQC System Manager and attached to the daily CQC report. The time and date of the preparatory phase meeting shall be coordinated with the Progress Schedule. The Contractor shall instruct applicable workers as to the acceptable level of workmanship required in order to meet contract specifications.

3.6.2 Initial Phase

This phase shall be accomplished at the beginning of each definable feature of work. The following shall be accomplished:

a. A check of work to ensure that it is in full compliance with

contract requirements. Review minutes of the preparatory meeting.

b. Verify adequacy of controls to ensure full contract compliance. Verify required control inspection and testing.

c. Establish level of workmanship and verify that it meets minimum acceptable workmanship standards. Compare with required sample panels as appropriate.

d. Resolve all differences.

e. Check safety to include compliance with and upgrading of the safety plan and activity hazard analysis. Review the activity analysis with each worker.

f. The Government shall be notified at least 24 hours, excluding non-workdays, in advance of beginning the initial phase. Separate minutes of this phase shall be prepared by the CQC System Manager and attached to the daily CQC report. Exact location of initial phase shall be indicated for future reference and comparison with follow-up phases.

g. The initial phase should be repeated for each new crew to work onsite, or any time acceptable specified quality standards are not being met.

3.6.3 Follow-up Phase

Daily checks shall be performed to assure control activities, including control testing, are providing continued compliance with contract requirements, until completion of the particular feature of work. The checks shall be made a matter of record in the CQC documentation. Final follow-up checks shall be conducted and all deficiencies corrected prior to the start of additional features of work which may be affected by the deficient work. The Contractor shall not build upon nor conceal non-conforming work.

3.6.4 Additional Preparatory and Initial Phases

Additional preparatory and initial phases shall be conducted on the same definable features of work if: the quality of on-going work is unacceptable; if there are changes in the applicable CQC staff, onsite production supervision or work crew; if work on a definable feature is resumed after a substantial period of inactivity; or if other problems develop.

3.7 DOCUMENTATION

The Contractor shall maintain Daily Quality Control Reports recording a current record providing factual evidence that required quality control activities and tests have been performed. These records shall include the work of subcontractors and suppliers and shall be on an acceptable form that includes, as a minimum, the following information:

a. Contractor/subcontractor and their area of responsibility.

b. Operating plant/equipment with hours worked, idle, or down for repair.

c. Work performed each day, giving location, description, and by whom. When Network Analysis (NAS) is used, identify each phase of work performed each day by NAS activity number.

d. Test and control activities performed with results and references to specifications/drawings requirements. The control phase shall be identified (Preparatory, Initial, Follow-up). List of deficiencies noted, along with corrective action.

e. Quantity of materials received at the site with statement as to acceptability, storage, and reference to specifications/drawings requirements.

f. Offsite surveillance activities, including actions taken.

g. Job safety evaluations stating what was checked, results, and instructions or corrective actions.

h. Instructions given/received and conflicts in plans and/or specifications.

i. Contractor's verification statement.

These records shall indicate a description of trades working on the project; the number of personnel working; weather conditions encountered; and any delays encountered. These records shall cover both conforming and deficient features and shall include a statement that equipment and materials incorporated in the work and workmanship comply with the contract. The original and one copy of these records in report form shall be furnished to the Government daily within 24 hours after the date covered by the report. All calendar days shall be accounted for throughout the life of the contract. The first report following a day of no work shall be for that day only. Reports shall be signed and dated by the CQC System Manager. The report from the CQC System Manager shall include copies of test reports and copies of reports prepared by all subordinate quality control personnel.

3.8 SAMPLE FORMS

Sample forms for recording of Preparatory and Initial Phase Inspections, Quality Control Reports and Daily Report of Operations - Dredges are included at the end of this SECTION. The Contractor shall utilize these forms as a guide only in the planning and scheduling of his work; however, the actual CQC requirements as specified in this SECTION will be fully implemented by the Government at the Pre-Construction Conference.

3.9 NON-COMPLIANCE NOTIFICATION

The Contracting Officer will notify the Contractor of any detected noncompliance with the foregoing requirements. The Contractor shall take immediate corrective action after receipt of such notice. Such notice, when delivered to the Contractor at the work site, shall be deemed sufficient for the purpose of notification. If the Contractor fails or refuses to comply promptly, the Contracting Officer may issue an order stopping all or part of the work until satisfactory corrective action has been taken. No part of the time lost due to such stop orders shall be made the subject of claim for extension of time or for excess costs or damages by the Contractor.

SAMPLE FORM

PREPARATORY PHASE CHECKLIST

PREPARATORY PHASE CHECKLIST

Date Preparatory Held:_____

Contract No.:_____ Spec. Section & Paragraph_____

Title:_____ Drawing Sheet Numbers_____

MAJOR DEFINABLE FEATURE OF WORK:_____

A. PERSONNEL PRESENT:

NAME	POSITION	COMPANY
1)_____	_____	_____
2)_____	_____	_____
3)_____	_____	_____
4)_____	_____	_____
5)_____	_____	_____
6)_____	_____	_____
7)_____	_____	_____
8)_____	_____	_____
9)_____	_____	_____
10)_____	_____	_____

(List additional personnel on reverse side)

B. Has each specification paragraph, drawing, and permit requirement been studied: YES___ NO___

C. TRANSMITTALS INVOLVED:

NUMBER & ITEM	CODE	CONTRACTOR OR GOVERNMENT APPROVAL
1)_____	_____	_____
2)_____	_____	_____
3)_____	_____	_____
4)_____	_____	_____
5)_____	_____	_____
6)_____	_____	_____

C(1). Have all items involved been approved? YES____ NO____

If NO, list items: _____

_____

D. ARE ALL MATERIALS ON HAND? YES___ NO____

Have all materials been checked for contract compliance against approved shop drawings? YES___ NO____

D(1). Items not on hand or not in accordance with transmittals:

1)_____

2)_____

3)_____

4)_____

E. TESTS REQUIRED IN ACCORDANCE WITH CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS:

TEST	PARAGRAPH
1)_____	_____
2)_____	_____
3)_____	_____
4)_____	_____

F. ACCIDENT PREVENTION PREPLANNING – HAZARD CONTROL MEASURES:

F(1). Applicable Outlines (Attach complete copies):

1)_____

2)_____

3)_____

4)_____

5)_____

6)_____

7)_____

8)_____

F(2). Operational Equipment and Operator Checklists:

FOR EQUIPMENT:

1)_____

2)_____

3)_____

FOR OPERATOR:

1)_____

2)_____

3)_____

G. HAVE PROCEDURES FOR ACCOMPLISHING WORK BEEN REVIEWED WITH APPROPRIATE PEOPLE: YES____ NO___

H. HAS ALL PRELIMINARY WORK BEEN ACCOMPLISHED IN ACCORDANCE WITH CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS AND IS THIS FEATURE OF WORK READY TO START: YES____ NO____

H(1). Explain any problems:_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____
QUALITY CONTROL REPRESENTATIVE

SAMPLE FORM

INITIAL PHASE CHECKLIST

INITIAL PHASE CHECKLIST

Contract No.:_____ Date:_____

Spec. Section & Paragraph_____

Description and Location of Work Inspected:_____

_____

REFERENCE CONTRACT DRAWINGS:_____

A. PERSONNEL PRESENT:

NAME	POSITION	COMPANY
1)_____	_____	_____
2)_____	_____	_____
3)_____	_____	_____
4)_____	_____	_____
5)_____	_____	_____
6)_____	_____	_____

B. MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT BEING USED ARE IN STRICT COMPLIANCE WITH THE CONTRACT: YES____ NO___

If NO, Explain: _____

_____

_____

C. WORKMANSHIP IS ACCEPTABLE: YES____ NO___ STATE AREAS WHERE IMPROVEMENT IS NEEDED: _____

_____

_____

D. SAFETY VIOLATIONS AND CORRECTION ACTION TAKEN:_____

_____

_____

_____

QUALITY CONTROL REPRESENTATIVE

SAMPLE FORM

CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL REPORT

CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL REPORT	REPORT NO.
	DATE
PROJECT/CONTRACT NUMBER	SUPERINTENDENT
CONTRACTOR	WEATHER

PRECIPITATION PAST 24 HOURS(inches) : TEMPERATURE (F): MINIMUM MAXIMUM

WERE THER ANY DELAYS IN WORK PROGRESS TODAY? NO___ YES___
If YES, Explain:

VERBAL INSTRUCTIONS GIVEN BY THE GOVERNMENT:

HAS ANYTHING DEVELOPED WHICH MIGHT LEAD TO A CHANGE ORDER OR CLAIM? NO___ YES___
If YES, Explain:

NOTE: Official notification of claim must be made to the Contracting Officer by separate correspondence.

SAFETY INSPECTION/MEETINGS: Indicate inspections made, items inspected, deficiencies noted and corrective action taken.

WERE THERE ANY LOST TIME ACCIDENTS THIS DATE? NO___ YES ___ If YES, attach accident report.

PRIME CONTRACTOR/SUBCONTRACTOR WORKFORCE
(If space provided below is inadequate, use additional sheets)

No.	TRADE	HOURS	EMPLOYER	No.	TRADE	HOURS	EMPLOYER

CUMULATIVE TOTAL HOURS OF WORK	TOTAL WORK HOURS ON JOB SITE THIS DATE
HOURS FROM PREVIOUS REPORT	TOTAL WORK HOURS FROM START OF CONSTRUCTION

MAJOR ITEMS OF EQUIPMENT

TYPE/CAPACITY	No.	STANDBY HOURS	OPERATING HOURS

THREE PHASE INSPECTION

ADVANCE NOTICE OF PREPARATORY, INITIAL OR FINAL FOLLOW-UP INSPECTION:
(Minimum five working days notice required)

PREPARATORY INSPECTION HELD TODAY:
Indicate Definable Features of Work. Attach Preparatory Checklist.

INITIAL INSPECTION HELD TODAY:
Indicate Definable Features of Work. Attach Initial Checklist.

FINAL FOLLOW-UP INSPECTION HELD TODAY:
Indicate NAS Activity Number. Attach Final Follow-up Checklist.

ACTIVITIES IN PROGRESS: Attach daily CQC follow-up inspection deficiencies/corrections noted.

ACTIVITY NUMBER	S=START C=CONTINUING F=FINISH	DESCRIPTION OF WORK ACTUALLY PERFORMED/MAJOR MATERIAL DELIVERIES TODAY

CQC TESTING

ACTIVITY NUMBER	DESCRIPTION OF TESTS PERFORMED	PASSED/FAILED

USER SCHOOLING CONDUCTED

ACTIVITY NUMBER	DESCRIPTION OF SCHOOLING

INSTALLED PROPERTY PRICING DATA ATTACHED: YES ____ NO ____

TRANSFERRED PROPERTY, DD-1149 ATTACHED: YES____ NO ____

QA COMMENTS CORRECTED TODAY: YES____ NO ____

EQUIPMENT SAFETY CHECKLIST ATTACHED: YES____ NO ____

GENERAL COMMENTS:

CONTRACTOR CERTIFICATION: On behalf of the contractor, I certify that this report is complete and correct and all equipment and material used and work performed during this reporting period are in compliance with the contract plans and specifications, to the best of my knowledge, except as noted above.

Authorized Contractor Representative: _____

Report Date: _____ Date submitted to Government Representative: _____

SAMPLE FORM

REPORT OF OPERATIONS
DREDGES
(ENG FORM 4267)

DAILY REPORT OF OPERATIONS - DREDGES

THRU:	TO:	FROM:	REPORT NO.

CHARACTER	☐ MAINTE-NANCE ☐ NEW WORK ☐ DAILY ☐ STATUS ☐ COMPLETION ☐ ANNUAL					DATE OR PERIOD	
DREDGE	NAME AND TYPE		SIZE →	PIPELINE *in. dia.*		DIPPER OR BUCKET *cu. yds.*	
	HORSEPOWER OF →	DREDGE PUMP	SUCTION PIPE JET	CUTTER OR BUCKET		PROPULSION	
	NUMBER OF CREWMEMBERS →	DREDGE / SHORE	OTHER PLANT	TOTAL	**WORK SCHEDULE** →	SHIFTS PER DAY	DAYS PER WEEK
PROJECT AND BAR	NAME		**AUTH DIMENSIONS** →	WIDTH	DEPTH	OVERDEPTH	
	LOCATION *(include station numbers)*						
CHARACTER OF MATERIAL	ABSOULTE DENSITY	IN PLACE DENSITY *GMS/Liter*		VOIDS RATIO			
	GRAIN SIZE			GEOLOGICAL CLASSIFICATION			
CONTRACT OR DREDGING ORDER	NUMBER		☐ CONTRACTO ☐ HIRED LABOR	TOTAL NO. OF DAYS IN WHICH WORK WAS DONE			
CHANNEL CONDITION	AVERAGE DEPTH →	BEFORE DREDGING	AFTER DREDGING	MINIMUM SOUNDING →	BEFORE DREDGING	AFTER DREDGING	
RIVER STAGE	MINIMUM	TIME	MAXIMUM	TIME	GAGE LOCATION		
WEATHER CONDITION	*(clear, cloudy, rain, snow, and fog)*		VISIBILITY *miles*	WIND *(maximum velocity & direction)*			

WORK PERFORMED

ITEM	UNIT	QUANTITY
AVERAGE WIDTH OF CUT	FEET	
TOTAL ADVANCE THIS PERIOD	FEET	
TOTAL ADV. PREVIOUS TO THIS	FEET	
TOTAL ADVANCE TO DATE	FEET	
FLOATING PIPE: SHORE PIPE:		
TOTAL LENGTH OF DISHARGE PIPE	FEET	
AVERAGE LIFT	FEET	
AVERAGE PUMP SPEED	R.P.M.	
AVG. DREDGED PER PUMP. HR,	CU.YDS.	
SCOWS LOADED	NUMBER	
AVERAGE LOAD PER SCOW	CU. YDS.	

CUBIC YARDS REMOVED

AMOUNT DREDGED THIS PERIOD:	
(1) GROSS *(computed amount)*	
(2) CREDITED *(pay place)*	
AMOUNT PREVIOUSLY REPORTED:	
(1) GROSS *(computed amount)*	
(2) CREDITED *(pay place)*	
TOTAL AMOUNT DREDGED TO DATE:	
(1) GROSS *(computed amount)*	
(2) CREDITED *(pay place)*	

ATTENDANT PLANT

ITEM	NAME OR NUMBER	HOURS

NUMBER OF INSPECTIONS	BY DISTRICT PERSONNEL	BY OTHER PERSONNEL
CONTRACT USE ONLY	HAS ANYTHING DEVELOPED WHICH MIGHT LEAD TO A CHANGE ORDER OR CLAIM? *(If "YES", explain under remarks on back)* ☐ NO ☐ YES	

DISTRIBUTION OF TIME

EFFECTIVE WORKING TIME *(chargeable to cost of work)*		**HOURS**	**MIN.**
PUMPING OR DREDGING			
PCT. OF EFFECTIVE RENTAL TIME			
BOOSTER *(in line)* *Hrs.*			
NON-EFFECTIVE WORKING TIME *(chargeable to cost of work)*			
HANDLING PIPE LINES			
HANDLING ANCHOR LINES			
CLEARING PUMP AND PIPE LINE			
CLEARING CUTTER OR SUCTION HEAD			
WAITING FOR SCOWS			
TO AND FROM WHARF OR ANCHORAGE			
CHANGING LOCATION OF PLANT ON JOB			
LOSS DUE TO OPPOSING NATURAL ELEMENTS			
LOSS DUE TO PASSING VESSELS			
SHORE LINE AND SHORE WORK			
WAITING FOR BOOSTER			
MINOR OPER. REPAIRS *(explain in remarks)*			
WAITING FOR ATTENDANT PLANT			
PREPERATION AND MAKING UP TOW			
TRANSFERRING PLANT BETWEEN WORKS			
LAY TIME OFF SHIFT AND SATURDAYS			
SUNDAYS AND HOLIDAYS			
FIRE DRILL			
MISCELLANEOUS *(explain in remarks)*			
TOTAL NON-EFFECTIVE WORKING TIME			
PCT. OF NON-EFFECTIVE RENTAL TIME			
TOTAL EFFECTIVE AND NON-EFFECTIVE TIME *(chargeable to cost of work)*			
PCT. OF TOTAL TIME IN PERIOD			
LOST TIME *(not chargeable to cost of work)*			
MAJOR REPAIRS AND ALTERATIONS			
CESSATION			
COLLISIONS			
MISCELLANEOUS *(explain in remarks)*			
TOTAL LOST TIME			
PERCENTAGE OF TOTAL TIME			
TOTAL TIME IN PERIOD			

ENG FORM 4267
JAN 70

REPLACES ENG FORM 28 *(Costs)*, 1 MAR 53, AND ENG FORM 29 *(Costs)*, 1 JAN 62, WHICH ARE OBSOLETE. *(ER 1125-2-304)*

(Signature and Renarks required on reverse side.)

SUMMARY OF COSTS

ITEMS	COST
DIRECT PLANT OPERATING COSTS	
UNIFORM DAILY RATE BASIS *(To be completed when submitting Status and Completion reports.)*	
CHARGES: _____ DAYS AT _____ PER DAY *(Item 19, ENG Form 22 (Costs)- adjusted to exclude plant increment cost.)* ▶ **OR** ◀	
ACTUAL PLANT COSTS *(To be completed when submiting Annual report.)*	
PAYROLLS *(gross)*.....	
SUBS~~ISTENCE &~~ QUARTERS OR ~~PER DIEM &~~ MILEAGE.....	
FUEL BARRELS AT PER BARREL.....	
WATER.....	
LUBRICANTS.....	
PLANT OWNERSHIP COSTS *(as computed below)*.....	
INSURANCE.....	
ATTENDANT PLANT.....	
MISCELLANEOUS.....	
SUBTOTAL - UNIFORM DAILY RATE OR ACTUAL	
SHORE WORK	
SUBTOTAL- SHORE WORK COSTS.....	
OTHER COSTS	
SURVEYS.....	
INSPECTION AND SUPERVISION.....	
OVERHEAD.....	
OTHER INDIRECT COSTS.....	
SUBTOTAL - OTHER COSTS.....	
~~SUBTOTAL - OTHER UNIT COST PER CUBIC YARD.~~	
GRAND TOTAL - ALL COSTS.....	

OPERATING SUPPLIES

COMMODITIES	CONSUMED		INVENTORY	
	UNIT	QUANTITY	QUANTITY	VALUE
FUEL *(oil)*	**BBLS**			
LUBRICANT *(oil)*	**GAL**			
LUBRICANT *(grease)*	**LBS**			
WATER	**GAL**			

SUBSISTENCE SUPPLIES.....	
MISCELLANEOUS SUPPLIES.....	
TOTAL.....	

ANNUAL REPORT DATA

(complete when submitting Annual report.)

	per min.
COST PER RENTAL MINUTE *(Based on total operating cost)*.....	
TOTAL COST OF PLANT *(End of F.Y. reporting period)*.....	
BOOK VAULE *(End of F.Y. reporting period)*.....	
BALANCE IN PLANT ACCOUNT *(End of F.Y. reporting period)*.....	
PLANT OWNERSHIP COSTS *(Actual for F.Y. reporting period)*:	
DEPRECIATION.....	
REPAIRS *(Adjusted)*.....	
CESSATION OF WORK.....	
SMALL TOOLS, ETC.	
TOTAL.....	

REMARKS

SUBMITTED BY *(Name, title, and signature)*	RECOMMENDED BY *(Name, title, and signature)*	APPROVED BY *(Name, title, and signature)*

(REVERSE OF ENG FORM 4267)

U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1970 OF-376-067

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 01525

SAFETY AND OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH REQUIREMENTS

07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES
1.2 SUBMITTALS
1.3 DEFINITIONS
1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS
1.5 DRUG PREVENTION PROGRAM
1.6 SITE QUALIFICATIONS, DUTIES AND MEETINGS
1.6.1 Personnel Qualifications
1.6.1.1 Site Safety and Health Officer (SSHO)
1.6.1.2 Competent Person for Confined Space Entry
1.6.2 Personnel Duties
1.6.2.1 Designated Site Safety and Health Officer (SSHO)
1.6.3 Post Award Meetings
1.6.3.1 Preconstruction Conference
1.6.3.2 Weekly Safety Meetings
1.6.3.3 Work Phase Meetings
1.7 TRAINING
1.7.1 New Employee Indoctrination
1.7.2 Periodic Training
1.7.3 Training on Activity Hazard Analysis (AHA)
1.8 ACCIDENT PREVENTION PLAN (APP)
1.8.1 EM 385-1-1 Contents
1.9 ACTIVITY HAZARD ANALYSIS (AHA)
1.10 DISPLAY OF SAFETY INFORMATION
1.11 SITE SAFETY REFERENCE MATERIALS
1.12 EMERGENCY MEDICAL TREATMENT
1.13 REPORTS
1.13.1 Accident Reports
1.13.2 Accident Notification
1.13.3 Bi-Weekly Exposure Reports
1.13.4 Regulatory Citations and Violations

PART 2 PRODUCTS (This Division Not Used.)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION WORK
3.1.1 Hazardous Material Use
3.1.2 Hazardous Material Exclusions
3.2 EQUIPMENT
3.2.1 Material Handling Equipment
3.2.2 Weight Handling Equipment
3.2.3 Equipment and Mechanized Equipment
3.3 WORK IN CONFINED SPACES

3.4 CRYSTALLINE SILICA
3.5 HOUSEKEEPING
3.5.1 Clean-Up

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 01525

SAFETY AND OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH REQUIREMENTS
07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B30.3	(1996) Construction Tower Cranes
ASME B30.5	(2000) Mobile and Locomotive Cranes
ASME B30.8	(2000) Floating Cranes and Floating Derricks
ASME B30.22	(2000) Articulating Boom Cranes

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.94	Ventilation
29 CFR 1910.146	Permit-required Confined Spaces
29 CFR 1915	Confined and Enclosed Spaces and Other Dangerous Atmospheres in Shipyard Employment

U. S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1	(2003) Safety and Health Requirements Manual

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 10	(2002) Portable Fire Extinguishers
NFPA 241	(2000) Safeguarding Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only or as otherwise designated. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section

01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Accident Prevention Plan (APP)

Activity Hazard Analysis (AHA)

SD-06 Test Reports

Reports

Submit reports as their incidence occurs, in accordance with the requirements of the paragraph entitled, "Reports."

Accident Reports

Monthly Exposure Reports

Regulatory Citations and Violations

1.3 DEFINITIONS

a. Competent Person for Fall Protection. A person who is capable of identifying hazardous or dangerous conditions in the personal fall arrest system or any component thereof, as well as their application and use with related equipment, and has the authority to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate the hazards of falling.

b. High Visibility Accident. Any mishap which may generate publicity or high visibility.

c. Medical Treatment. Treatment administered by a physician or by registered professional personnel under the standing orders of a physician. Medical treatment does not include first aid treatment even through provided by a physician or registered personnel.

d. Multi-Employer Work Site (MEWS). A multi-employer work site, as defined by OSHA, is one in which many employers occupy the same site. The Government considers the Prime Contractor to be the "controlling authority" for all work site safety and health of the subcontractors.

e. Recordable Injuries or Illnesses. Any work-related injury or illness that results in:

(1) Death, regardless of the time between the injury and death, or the length of the illness;

(2) Days away from work;

(3) Restricted work;

(4) Transfer to another job;

(5) Medical treatment beyond first aid;

(6) Loss of consciousness; or

(7) A significant injury or illness diagnosed by a physician or

other licensed health care professional, even if it did not result in (1) through (6) above.

g. Site Safety and Health Officer (SSHO). The superintendent or other qualified or competent person who is responsible for the on-site safety and health required for the project. The Contractor quality control (QC) person can be the SSHO on this project.

1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

In addition to the detailed requirements included in the provisions of this contract, work performed shall comply with USACE EM 385-1-1, and the applicable federal, state, and local laws, ordinances, criteria, rules and regulations governing the work. Submit matters of interpretation of standards to the appropriate administrative agency for resolution before starting work. Where the requirements of this specification, applicable laws, criteria, ordinances, regulations, and referenced documents vary, the most stringent requirements shall apply.

1.5 DRUG PREVENTION PROGRAM

Conduct a proactive drug and alcohol use prevention program for all workers, prime and subcontractor, on the site. Ensure that no employee uses illegal drugs or consumes alcohol during work hours. Ensure there are no employees under the influence of drugs or alcohol during work hours. After accidents, collect blood, urine, or saliva specimens and test the injured and involved employees for the influence of drugs and alcohol. A copy of the test shall be made available to the Contracting Officer upon request.

1.6 SITE QUALIFICATIONS, DUTIES AND MEETINGS

1.6.1 Personnel Qualifications

1.6.1.1 Site Safety and Health Officer (SSHO)

Site Safety and Health Officer (SSHO) shall be provided at the work site at all times to perform safety and occupational health management, surveillance, inspections, and safety enforcement for the Contractor. The SSHO shall meet the following requirements:

a. A minimum of 5 years safety work on similar projects.
b. 30-hour OSHA construction safety class or equivalent within the last 5 years.
c. An average of at least 24 hours of formal safety training each year for the past 5 years.
d. Competent person training as needed.

1.6.1.2 Competent Person for Confined Space Entry

Provide a competent person meeting the requirements of EM 385-1-1 who is assigned in writing by the Designated Authority to assess confined spaces and who possesses demonstrated knowledge, skill and ability to:

a. Identify the structure, location, and designation of confined and permit-required confined spaces where work is done;

b. Calibrate and use testing equipment including but not limited to, oxygen indicators, combustible gas indicators, carbon monoxide

indicators, and carbon dioxide indicators, and to interpret accurately the test results of that equipment;

c. Perform all required tests and inspections specified in 29 CFR 1910.146 and 29 CFR 1915 Subpart B;

d. Assess hazardous conditions including atmospheric hazards in confined space and adjacent spaces and specify the necessary protection and precautions to be taken;

e. Determine ventilation requirements for confined space entries and operations;

f. Assess hazards associated with hot work in confined and adjacent space and determine fire watch requirements; and,

g. Maintain records required.

1.6.2 Personnel Duties

1.6.2.1 Designated Site Safety and Health Officer (SSHO)

a. Conduct daily safety and health inspections and maintain a written log which includes area/operation inspected, date of inspection, identified hazards, recommended corrective actions, estimated and actual dates of corrections. Safety inspection logs shall be attached to the Contractors' daily quality control report.

b. Conduct mishap investigations and complete required reports. Maintain the OSHA Form 300 and Daily Production reports for prime and sub-contractors.

c. Maintain applicable safety reference material on the job site.

d. Attend the pre-construction conference, pre-work meetings including preparatory inspection meeting, and periodic in-progress meetings.

e. Implement and enforce accepted APPS and AHAs.

f. Maintain a safety and health deficiency tracking system that monitors outstanding deficiencies until resolution. A list of unresolved safety and health deficiencies shall be posted at an area frequented by all wokers as acceptable by the COR.

g. Ensure sub-contractor compliance with safety and health requirements.

Failure to perform the above duties will result in dismissal of the designated SSHO, and a project work stoppage. The project work stoppage will remain in effect pending approval of a suitable replacement.

1.6.3 Post Award Meetings

1.6.3.1 Preconstruction Conference

a. The Contractor will be informed, in writing, of the date of the preconstruction conference. The purpose of the preconstruction conference is for the Contractor and the Contracting Officer's representatives to become acquainted and explain the functions and

operating procedures of their respective organizations and to reach mutual understanding relative to the administration of the overall project's Accident Prevention Plan (APP) before the initiation of work.

b. Contractor representatives who have a responsibility or significant role in accident prevention on the project shall attend the preconstruction conference. This includes the project superintendent, site safety and health officer, quality control supervisor, or any other assigned safety and health professionals who participated in the development of the APP (including the Activity Hazard Analyses (AHAs) and special plans, program and procedures associated with it).

c. The Contractor shall discuss the details of the submitted APP to include incorporated plans, programs, procedures and a listing of anticipated AHAs that will be developed and implemented during the performance of the contract. This list of proposed AHAs will be reviewed at the conference and an agreement will be reached between the Contractor and the Contracting Officer's representative as to which phases will require an analysis. In addition, a schedule for the preparation, submittal, review, and acceptance of AHAs shall be established to preclude project delays.

d. Deficiencies in the submitted APP will be brought to the attention of the Contractor at the preconstruction conference, and the Contractor shall revise the plan to correct deficiencies and re-submit it for acceptance. Work shall not begin until there is an accepted APP.

1.6.3.2 Weekly Safety Meetings

Conduct weekly safety meetings at the project site for all employees. The Contracting Officer will be informed of the meeting in advance and be allowed attendance. Minutes showing contract title, signatures of attendees and a list of topics discussed shall be attached to the Contractors' daily quality control report.

1.6.3.3 Work Phase Meetings

The appropriate AHA shall be reviewed and attendance documented by the Contractor at the preparatory, initial, and follow-up phases of quality control inspection. The analysis should be used during daily inspections to ensure the implementation and effectiveness of safety and health controls.

1.7 TRAINING

1.7.1 New Employee Indoctrination

New employees (prime and sub-contractor) shall be informed of specific site hazards before they begin work. Documentation of this orientation shall be kept on file at the project site.

1.7.2 Periodic Training

Provide Safety and Health Training in accordance with USACE EM 385-1-1 and the accepted APP. Ensure all required training has been accomplished for all onsite employees.

1.7.3 Training on Activity Hazard Analysis (AHA)

Prior to beginning a new phase, training will be provided to all affected

employees to include a review of the AHA to be implemented.

1.8 ACCIDENT PREVENTION PLAN (APP)

The Contractor shall use a qualified person to prepare the written site-specific APP. Prepare the APP in accordance with the format and requirements of USACE EM 385-1-1 and as supplemented herein. Cover all paragraph and subparagraph elements in USACE EM 385-1-1, Appendix A, "Minimum Basic Outline for Preparation of Accident Prevention Plan". Where a paragraph or subparagraph element is not applicable to the work to be performed indicate "Not Applicable" next to the heading. Specific requirements for some of the APP elements are described below. The APP shall be job-specific and shall address any unusual or unique aspects of the project or activity for which it is written. The APP shall interface with the Contractor's overall safety and health program. Any portions of the Contractor's overall safety and health program referenced in the APP shall be included in the applicable APP element and made site-specific. The Government considers the Prime Contractor to be the "controlling authority" for all work site safety and health of the subcontractors. Contractors are responsible for informing their subcontractors of the safety provisions under the terms of the contract and the penalties for noncompliance, coordinating the work to prevent one craft from interfering with or creating hazardous working conditions for other crafts, and inspecting subcontractor operations to ensure that accident prevention responsibilities are being carried out. The APP shall be signed by the person and firm (senior person) preparing the APP, the Contractor, the on-site superintendent, and the designated site safety and health officer.

Submit the APP to the Contracting Officer 15 calendar days prior to the date of the preconstruction conference for acceptance. Work cannot proceed without an accepted APP. The Contracting Officer reviews and comments on the Contractor's submitted APP and accepts it when it meets the requirements of the contract provisions.

Once accepted by the Contracting Officer, the APP and attachments will be enforced as part of the contract. Disregarding the provisions of this contract or the accepted APP will be cause for stopping of work, at the discretion of the Contracting Officer, until the matter has been rectified.

Once work begins, changes to the accepted APP shall be made with the knowledge and concurrence of the Contracting Officer, project superintendent, SSHO and quality control manager. Should any unforeseen hazard become evident during the performance of work, the project superintendent shall inform the Contracting Officer, both verbally and in writing, for resolution as soon as possible. In the interim, all necessary action shall be taken by the Contractor to restore and maintain safe working conditions in order to safeguard onsite personnel, visitors, the public, and the environment.

Copies of the accepted plan will be maintained by the Contracting Officer and at the job site. The APP shall be continuously reviewed and amended, as necessary, throughout the life of the contract. Unusual or high-hazard activities not identified in the original APP shall be incorporated in the plan as they are discovered.

1.8.1 EM 385-1-1 Contents

In addition to the requirements outlines in Appendix A of USACE EM 385-1-1, the following is required:

a. Names and qualifications (resumes including education, training, experience and certifications) of all site safety and health personnel designated to perform work on this project to include the designated site safety and health officer and other competent and qualified personnel to be used such as CSPs. The duties of each position shall be specified.

b. Qualifications of competent and of qualified persons. As a minimum, competent persons shall be designated and qualifications submitted for each of the following major areas: confined space; health hazard recognition, personal protective equipment and clothing to include selection, use and maintenance.

c. Health Hazard Control Program. The Contractor shall designate a competent and qualified person to establish and oversee a Health Hazard Control Program in accordance with USACE EM 385-1-1, Section 6. The program shall ensure that employees, on-site Government representatives, and others, are not adversely exposed to chemical, physical and biological agents and that necessary controls and protective actions are instituted to ensure health.

d. Alcohol and Drug Abuse Plan

(1) Describe plan for random checks and testing with pre-employment screening in accordance with the DFAR Clause subpart 252.223-7004, "Drug Free Work Force."

(2) Description of the on-site prevention program

e. Training Records and Requirements. List of mandatory training and certifications which are applicable to this project (e.g. explosive actuated tools, confined space entry, fall protection, dredge and boat operation, vehicle operator, forklift operators, personal protective equipment); list of requirements for periodic retraining/certification; outline requirements for supervisory and employee safety meetings.

1.9 ACTIVITY HAZARD ANALYSIS (AHA)

The Activity Hazard Analysis (AHA) format shall be in accordance with USACE EM 385-1-1. Submit the AHA for review at least 15 calendar days prior to the start of each phase. Format subsequent AHA as amendments to the APP. An AHA will be developed by the Contractor for every operation involving a type of work presenting hazards not experienced in previous project operations or where a new work crew or subcontractor is to perform work. The analysis must identify and evaluate hazards and outline the proposed methods and techniques for the safe completion of each phase of work. At a minimum, define activity being performed, sequence of work, specific safety and health hazards anticipated, control measures (to include personal protective equipment) to eliminate or reduce each hazard to acceptable levels, equipment to be used, inspection requirements, training requirements for all involved, and the competent person in charge of that phase of work. For work with fall hazards, including fall hazards associated with safety railings and lifelines, identify the appropriate fall protection methods used. For work with pipelines and other floating plant/equipment, address safeguarding measures related to each item of plant/equipment. An activity requiring an AHA shall not proceed until the AHA has been accepted by the Contracting Officer's representative and a meeting has been conducted by the Contractor to discuss its contents with

everyone engaged in the activity, including on-site Government representatives. The Contractor shall document meeting attendance at the preparatory, initial, and follow-up phases of quality control inspection. The AHA shall be continuously reviewed and, when appropriate, modified to address changing site conditions or operations. The analysis should be used during daily inspections to ensure the implementation and effectiveness of the activity's safety and health controls.

The AHA list will be reviewed periodically (at least bi-weekly) at the Contractor supervisory safety meeting and updated as necessary when procedures, scheduling, or hazards change.

Activity hazard analyses shall be updated as necessary to provide an effective response to changing work conditions and activities. The on-site superintendent, site safety and health officer and competent persons used to develop the AHAs, including updates, shall sign and date the AHAs before they are implemented.

1.10 DISPLAY OF SAFETY INFORMATION

Prior to commencement of any work, the Contractor shall designate for approval a location frequented by all emplyees in clear view to display safety information. The following information shall be displayed at this location, maintained current, and protected against the elements and unauthorized removal for the duration of the contract:

a. Map denoting the route to the nearest emergency care facility.

b. Emergency phone numbers.

c. Copy of the most up-to-date APP.

d. Current AHA(s).

e. OSHA 300A Form.

f. OSHA Safety and Health Protection-On-The-Job Poster.

1.11 SITE SAFETY REFERENCE MATERIALS

Maintain safety-related references applicable to the project, including those listed in the article "References." Maintain applicable equipment manufacturer's manuals.

1.12 EMERGENCY MEDICAL TREATMENT

Contractors will arrange for their own emergency medical treatment. Government has no responsibility to provide emergency medical treatment.

1.13 REPORTS

1.13.1 Accident Reports

a. For recordable injuries and illnesses as defined in 29 CFR 1904 and as provided at the end of this SECTION, including property damage accidents resulting in at least $2,000 in damages, the Prime Contractor shall conduct an accident investigation to establish the root cause(s) of the accident, complete the USACE Accident Report Form 3394 in accordance with the OSHA requirements at 29 CFR Part 1904 and provide

the report to the Contracting Officer within 1 calendar day of the accident. A copy of Form 3394 and instructions for the Contractor's use is included at the end of this SECTION.

B. Complete the "USACE Contractor Monthly Summary Record of Injuries/Illness and Work Hour Exposure" as specified herein. A copy of the required form to be utilized by the Contractor and instructions for the Contractor's use to complete the form is included at the end of this SECTION; however, the actual submission of the form must be in EXCEL format. A copy for the Contractor's use in this format will be provided at the initial Safety briefing. The "USACE Contractor Monthly Summary Record of Injuries/Illness and Work Hour Exposure" must be completed for each respective 30 calendar day work period of the contract and submitted along with the Contractor's Daily Report not later than 10 calendar days after the respective reporting period. If the Contractor's final reporting period on the contract is less than 30 calendar days, the final "USACE Contractor Monthly Summary Record of Injuries/Illness and Work Hour Exposure" shall be for the remainder of calendar days on the contract and submitted not later than 10 calendar days after the reporting period.

1.13.2 Accident Notification

Notify the Contracting Officer as soon as practical, but not later than four hours, after any accident meeting the definition of Recordable Injuries or Illnesses or High Visibility Accidents, property damage equal to or greater than $2,000. Information shall include contractor name; contract title; type of contract; name of activity, installation or location where accident occurred; date and time of accident; names of personnel injured; extent of property damage, if any; extent of injury, if known, and brief description of accident (to include type of construction equipment used, PPE used, etc.). Preserve the conditions and evidence on the accident site until the Government investigation team arrives on-site and Government investigation is conducted.

1.13.3 Bi-Weekly Exposure Reports

Bi-weekly exposure reporting to the Contracting Officer is required to be attached to the daily report of operations. This report is a compilation of employee-hours worked each month for all site workers, both prime and subcontractor. The Contracting Officer will provide copies of any special forms.

1.13.4 Regulatory Citations and Violations

Contact the Contracting Officer immediately of any OSHA or other regulatory agency inspection or visit, and provide the Contracting Officer with a copy of each citation, report, and contractor response. Correct violations and citations promptly and provide written corrective actions to the Contracting Officer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (This Division Not Used.)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION WORK

The Contractor shall comply with USACE EM 385-1-1, NFPA 241, the APP, the AHA, Federal and State OSHA regulations, and other related submittals and

activity fire and safety regulations. The most stringent standard shall prevail.

3.1.1 Hazardous Material Use

Any work or storage involving hazardous chemicals or materials must be done in a manner that will not expose Government or Contractor employees to any unsafe or unhealthful conditions. Adequate protective measures must be taken to prevent Government or Contractor employees from being exposed to any hazardous condition that could result from the work or storage. The Prime Contractor shall keep a complete inventory of hazardous materials brought onto the work-site. Approval by the Contracting Officer of protective measures and storage area is required prior to the start of the work.

3.1.2 Hazardous Material Exclusions

Notwithstanding any other hazardous material used in this contract, radioactive materials or instruments capable of producing ionizing/non-ionizing radiation (with the exception of radioactive material and devices used in accordance with USACE EM 385-1-1 such as nuclear density meters for compaction testing and laboratory equipment with radioactive sources) as well as materials which contain asbestos, mercury or polychlorinated biphenyls, di-isocynates, lead-based paint are prohibited. The Contracting Officer, upon written request by the Contractor, may consider exceptions to the use of any of the above excluded materials.

3.2 EQUIPMENT

3.2.1 Material Handling Equipment

a. Material handling equipment such as forklifts shall not be modified with work platform attachments for supporting employees unless specifically delineated in the manufacturer's printed operating instructions.

b. The use of hooks on equipment for lifting of material must be in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

c. Operators of forklifts or power industrial trucks shall be licensed in accordance with OSHA.

3.2.2 Weight Handling Equipment

b. The Contractor shall notify the Contracting Officer 15 days in advance of any cranes entering the activity so that necessary quality assurance spot checks can be coordinated. Contractor's operator shall remain with the crane during the spot check.

c. The Contractor shall comply with the crane manufacturer's specifications and limitations for erection and operation of cranes and hoists used in support of the work. Erection shall be performed under the supervision of a designated person (as defined in ASME B30.5). All testing shall be performed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommended procedures.

d. The Contractor shall comply with ASME B30.5 for mobile and locomotive cranes, ASME B30.22 for articulating boom cranes, ASME B30.3

for construction tower cranes, and ASME B30.8 for floating cranes and floating derricks.

e. The presence of Government personnel does not relieve the Contractor of an obligation to comply with all applicable safety regulations. The Government will investigate all complaints of unsafe or unhealthful working conditions received in writing from contractor employees, federal civilian employees, or military personnel.

f. Each load shall be rigged/attached independently to the hook/master-link in such a fashion that the load cannot slide or otherwise become detached. Christmas-tree lifting (multiple rigged materials) is not allowed.

h. When operating in the vicinity of overhead transmission lines, operators and riggers shall be alert to this special hazard and shall follow the requirements of USACE EM 385-1-1 section 11 and ASME B30.5 or ASME B30.22 as applicable.

i. Crane suspended personnel work platforms (baskets) shall not be used unless the Contractor proves that using any other access to the work location would provide a greater hazard to the workers or is impossible. Personnel shall not be lifted with a line hoist or friction crane.

j. A fire extinguisher having a minimum rating of 10BC and a minimum nominal capacity of 5lb of extinguishing agent shall be available at all operator stations or crane cabs. Portable fire extinguishers shall be inspected, maintained, and recharged as specified in NFPA 10, Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers.

k. All employees shall be kept clear of loads about to be lifted and of suspended loads.

l. A weight handling equipment operator shall not leave his position at the controls while a load is suspended.

m. The Contractor shall use cribbing when performing lifts on outriggers.

n. The crane hook/block must be positioned directly over the load. Side loading of the crane is prohibited.

o. A physical barricade must be positioned to prevent personnel from entering the counterweight swing (tail swing) area of the crane.

p. A substantial and durable rating chart containing legible letters and figures shall be provided with each crane and securely mounted onto the crane cab in a location allowing easy reading by the operator while seated in the control station.

q. Certification records which include the date of inspection, signature of the person performing the inspection, and the serial number or other identifier of the crane that was inspected shall always be available for review by Contracting Officer personnel.

r. Written reports listing the load test procedures used along with any repairs or alterations performed on the crane shall be available for review by Contracting Officer personnel.

s. The Contractor shall certify that all crane operators have been trained in proper use of all safety devices (e.g. anti-two block devices).

3.2.3 Equipment and Mechanized Equipment

a. Equipment shall be operated by designated qualified operators. Proof of qualifications shall be kept on the project site for review.

b. Manufacturer's specifications or owner's manual for the equipment shall be on-site and reviewed for additional safety precautions or requirements that are sometimes not identified by OSHA or USACE EM 385-1-1. Such additional safety precautions or requirements shall be incorporated into the AHAs.

c. Equipment and mechanized equipment shall be inspected in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for safe operation by a competent person prior to being placed into use.

d. Daily checks or tests shall be conducted and documented on equipment and mechanized equipment by designated competent persons.

3.3 WORK IN CONFINED SPACES

The Contractor shall comply with the requirements in Section 06.I of USACE EM 385-1-1 and OSHA 29 CFR 1910.146. Any potential for a hazard in the confined space requires a permit system to be used.

a. Entry Procedures. Prohibit entry into a confined space by personnel for any purpose, until the qualified person has conducted appropriate tests to ensure the confined or enclosed space is safe for the work intended and that all potential hazards are controlled or eliminated and documented. (See Section 06.I.05 of USACE EM 385-1-1 for entry procedures.) All hazards pertaining to the space shall be reviewed with each employee during review of the AHA.

b. Forced air ventilation is required for all confined space entry operations and the minimum air exchange requirements must be maintained to ensure exposure to any hazardous atmosphere is kept below its' action level.

c. Ensure the use of rescue and retrieval devices in confined spaces greater than 1.5 m (5 feet) in depth. Conform to Sections 06.I.09, 06.I.10 and 06.I.11 of USACE EM 385-1-1.

d. Sewer wet wells require continuous atmosphere monitoring with audible alarm for toxic gas detection.

e. Include training information for employees who will be involved as entrants and attendants for the work. Conform to Section 06.I.06 of USACE EM 385-1-1.

f. Daily Entry Permit. Post the permit in a conspicuous place close to the confined space entrance.

3.4 CRYSTALLINE SILICA

Grinding, abrasive blasting, and foundry operations of construction

materials containing crystalline silica, shall comply with OSHA regulations, such as 29 CFR 1910.94, and USACE EM 385-1-1, Appendix C. The Contractor shall develop and implement effective exposure control and elimination procedures to include dust control systems, engineering controls, and establishment of work area boundaries, as well as medical surveillance, training, air monitoring, and personal protective equipment.

3.5 HOUSEKEEPING

3.5.1 Clean-Up

All debris in work areas shall be cleaned up daily or more frequently if necessary. Construction debris may be temporarily located in an approved location, however garbage accumulation must be removed each day.

-- End of Section --

(For Safety Staff only)	REPORT NO.	EROC CODE	**UNITED STATES ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS ACCIDENT INVESTIGATION REPORT** *(For Use of this Form See Help Menu and USACE Suppl to AR 385-40)*	**REQUIREMENT CONTROL SYMBOL: CEEC-S-8(R2)**

1. ACCIDENT CLASSIFICATION

PERSONNEL CLASSIFICATION	INJURY/ILLNESS/FATAL	PROPERTY DAMAGE	MOTOR VEHICLE INVOLVED	DIVING
GOVERNMENT ☐ CIVILIAN ☐ MILITARY	☐	☐ FIRE INVOLVED ☐ OTHER	☐	☐
☐ CONTRACTOR	☐	☐ FIRE INVOLVED ☐ OTHER	☐	☐
☐ PUBLIC	☐ FATAL ☐ OTHER		☐	

2. PERSONAL DATA

a. Name *(Last, First, MI)*	b. AGE	c. SEX ☐ MALE ☐ FEMALE	d. SOCIAL SECURITY NUMBER	e. GRADE

f. JOB SERIES/TITLE	g. DUTY STATUS AT TIME OF ACCIDENT	h. EMPLOYMENT STATUS AT TIME OF ACCIDENT
	☐ ON DUTY ☐ TDY ☐ OFF DUTY	☐ ARMY ACTIVE ☐ ARMY RESERVE ☐ VOLUNTEER ☐ PERMANENT ☐ FOREIGN NATIONAL ☐ SEASONAL ☐ TEMPORARY ☐ STUDENT ☐ OTHER *(Specify)*

3. GENERAL INFORMATION

a. DATE OF ACCIDENT *(month/day/year)*	b. TIME OF ACCIDENT *(Military time)* hrs	c. EXACT LOCATION OF ACCIDENT	d. CONTRACTOR'S NAME (1) PRIME: (2) SUBCONTRACTOR:

e. CONTRACT NUMBER	f. TYPE OF CONTRACT	g. HAZARDOUS/TOXIC WASTE ACTIVITY
☐ CIVIL WORKS ☐ MILITARY ☐ OTHER *(Specify)*	☐ CONSTRUCTION ☐ SERVICE ☐ A/E ☐ DREDGE ☐ OTHER *(Specify)*	☐ SUPERFUND ☐ DERP ☐ IRP ☐ OTHER *(Specify)*

4. CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITIES ONLY *(Fill in line and corresponding code number in box from list - see help menu)*

a. CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITY	(CODE) #	b. TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT	(CODE) #

5. INJURY/ILLNESS INFORMATION *(Include name on line and corresponding code number in box for items e, f & g - see help menu)*

a. SEVERITY OF ILLNESS/INJURY	(CODE) #	B. ESTIMATED DAYS LOST	C. ESTIMATED DAYS HOSPITALIZED	D. ESTIMATED DAYS RESTRICTED DUTY

e. BODY PART AFFECTED	(CODE)	g. TYPE AND SOURCE OF INJURY/ILLNESS	(CODE)
PRIMARY	#	TYPE	#
SECONDARY	#	SOURCE	#
f. NATURE OF ILLNESS / INJURY	#		

6. PUBLIC FATALITY *(Fill in line and correspondence code number in box - see help menu)*

a. ACTIVITY AT TIME OF ACCIDENT	(CODE) #	b. PERSONAL FLOATATION DEVICE USED? ☐ YES ☐ NO ☐ N/A

7. MOTOR VEHICLE ACCIDENT

a. TYPE OF VEHICLE	b. TYPE OF COLLISION	c. SEAT BELTS	USED	NOT USED	NOT AVAILABLE
☐ PICKUP/VAN ☐ AUTOMOBILE ☐ TRUCK ☐ OTHER *(Specify)*	☐ SIDE SWIPE ☐ HEAD ON ☐ REAR END ☐ BROADSIDE ☐ ROLL OVER ☐ BACKING ☐ OTHER *(Specify)*	(1) FRONT SEAT			
		(2) REAR SEAT			

8. PROPERTY/MATERIAL INVOLVED

a. NAME OF ITEM	B. OWNERSHIP	C. $ AMOUNT OF DAMAGE
(1)		
(2)		
(3)		

9. VESSEL/FLOATING PLANT ACCIDENT *(Fill in line and correspondence code number in box from list - see help menu)*

a. TYPE OF VESSEI/FLOATING PLANT	(CODE) #	b. TYPE OF COLLISION/MISHAP	(CODE) #

10. ACCIDENT DESCRIPTION *(Use additional paper, if necessary)*

See attached page.

11. CAUSAL FACTOR(S) *(Read Instruction Before Completing)*

a. (Explain YES answers in item 13)	YES	NO
DESIGN: Was design of facility, workplace or equipment a factor?	☐	☐
INSPECTION/MAINTENANCE: Were inspection & maintenance procedures a factor?	☐	☐
PERSON'S PHYSICAL CONDITION: In your opinion, was the physical condition of the person a factor?	☐	☐
OPERATING PROCEDURES: Were operating procedures a factor?	☐	☐
JOB PRACTICES: Were any job safety/health practices not followed when the accident occurred?	☐	☐
HUMAN FACTORS: Did any human factors such as, size or strength of person, etc., contribute to accident?	☐	☐
ENVIRONMENTAL FACTORS: Did heat, cold, dust, sun, glare, etc., contribute to the accident?	☐	☐

a. *(CONTINUED)*	YES	NO
CHEMICAL AND PHYSICAL AGENT FACTORS: Did exposure to chemical agents, such as dust, fumes, mists, vapors or physical agents, such as, noise, radiation, etc., contribute to accident?	☐	☐
OFFICE FACTORS: Did office setting such as, lifting office furniture, carrying, stooping, etc., contribute to the accident?	☐	☐
SUPPORT FACTORS: Were inappropriate tools/resources provided to properly perform the activity/task?	☐	☐
PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT: Did the improper selection, use or maintenance of personal protective equipment contribute to the accident?	☐	☐
DRUGS/ALCOHOL: In your opinion, was drugs or alcohol a factor to the accident	☐	☐

b. WAS A WRITTEN JOB/ACTIVITY HAZARD ANALYSIS COMPLETED FOR TASK BEING PERFORMED AT TIME OF ACCIDENT?

☐ YES *(If yes, attach a copy.)* ☐ NO

12. TRAINING

a. WAS PERSON TRAINED TO PERFORM ACTIVITY/TASK?	b. TYPE OF TRAINING.	c. DATE OF MOST RECENT FORMAL TRAINING.
☐ YES ☐ NO	☐ CLASSROOM ☐ ON JOB	(Month) (Day) (Year)

13. FULLY EXPLAIN WHAT ALLOWED OR CAUSED THE ACCIDENT; INCLUDE DIRECT AND INDIRECT CAUSES *(See instruction for definition of direct and indirect causes.) (Use additional paper, if necessary)*

a. DIRECT CAUSE

See attached page.

b. INDIRECT CAUSE(S)

See attached page.

14. ACTION(S) TAKEN, ANTICIPATED OR RECOMMENDED TO ELIMINATE CAUSE(S).

DESCRIBE FULLY:

See attached page.

15. DATES FOR ACTIONS IDENTIFIED IN BLOCK 14.

a. BEGINNING (Month/Day/Year)	b. ANTICIPATED COMPLETION (Month/Day/Year)

c. SIGNATURE AND TITLE OF SUPERVISOR COMPLETING REPORT	d. DATE *(Mo/Da/Yr)*	e. ORGANIZATION IDENTIFIER *(Div, Br, Sect)*	f. OFFICE SYMBOL
CORPS _____ CONTRACTOR _____			

16. MANAGEMENT REVIEW *(1st)*

a. ☐ CONCUR b. ☐ NON CONCUR c. COMMENTS

SIGNATURE	TITLE	DATE

17. MANAGEMENT REVIEW *(2nd - Chief Operations, Construction, Engineering, etc.)*

a. ☐ CONCUR b. ☐ NON CONCUR c. COMMENTS

SIGNATURE	TITLE	DATE

18. SAFETY AND OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH OFFICE REVIEW

a. ☐ CONCUR b. ☐ NON CONCUR c. ADDITIONAL ACTIONS/COMMENTS

SIGNATURE	TITLE	DATE

19. COMMAND APPROVAL

COMMENTS

COMMANDER SIGNATURE	DATE

*U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1993-0-791-757

10. ACCIDENT DESCRIPTION *(Continuation)*

13a. DIRECT CAUSE *(Continuation)*

13b.	INDIRECT CAUSES *(Continuation)*

14.	ACTION(S) TAKEN, ANTICIPATED, OR RECOMMENDED TO ELIMINATE CAUSE(S) *(Continuation)*

GENERAL. Complete a separate report for each person who was *injured, caused,* or *contributed* to the accident (excluding uninjured personnel and witnesses). Use of this form for reporting USACE employee first-aid type injuries not submitted to the Office of Workers' Compensation Programs (OWCP) shall be at the descretion of the FOA commander. Please type or print legibly. Appropriate items shall be marked with an "X" in box(es). If additional space is needed, provide the information on a separate sheet and attach to the completed form. Ensure that these instructions are forwarded with the completed report to the designated management reviewers indicated in sections 16. and 17.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 1— ACCIDENT CLASSIFICATION. *(Mark All Boxes That Are Applicable.)*

a. GOVERNMENT. Mark "CIVILIAN" box if accident involved government civilian employee; mark "MILITARY" box if accident involved U.S. military personnel.

(1) INJURY/ILLNESS/FATALITY—Mark if accident resulted in any government civilian employee injury, illness, or fatality that requires the submission of OWCP Forms CA-1 (injury), CA-2 (illness), or CA-6 (fatality) to OWCP; mark if accident resulted in military personnel lost-time or fatal injury or illness.

(2) PROPERTY DAMAGE—Mark the appropriate box if accident resulted in any damage of $1000 or more to government property (including motor vehicles).

(3) VEHICLE INVOLVED—Mark if accident involved a motor vehicle, *regardless* of whether "INJURY/ILLNESS/FATALITY" or "PROPERTY DAMAGE" are marked.

(4) DIVING ACTIVITY—Mark if the accident involved an in-house USACE diving activity.

b. CONTRACTOR.

(1) INJURY/ILLNESS/FATALITY—Mark if accident resulted in any contractor lost-time injury/illness or fatality.

(2) PROPERTY DAMAGE—Mark the appropriate box if accident resulted in any damage of $1000 or more to contractor property (including motor vehicles).

(3) VEHICLE INVOLVED—Mark if accident involved a motor vehicle, *regardless* of whether "INJURY/ILLNESS/FATALITY" or "PROPERTY DAMAGE" are marked.

(4) DIVING ACTIVITY—Mark if the accident involved a USACE Contractor diving activity.

c. PUBLIC.

(1) INJURY/ILLNESS/FATALITY—Mark if accident resulted in public fatality or permanent total disability. (The "OTHER" box will be marked when requested by the FOA to report an unusual non-fatal public accident that could result in claims against the government or as otherwise directed by the FOA Commander).

(2) VOID SPACE—Make no entry.

(3) VEHICLE INVOLVED—Mark if accident resulted in a fatality to a member of the public and involved a motor vehicle, *regardless* of whether "INJURY/ILLNESS/FATALITY" is marked.

(4) VOID SPACE—Make no entry.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 2—PERSONAL DATA

a. NAME—(MANDATORY FOR GOVERNMENT ACCIDENTS. OPTIONAL AT THE DISCRETION OF THE FOA COMMANDER FOR CONTRACTOR AND PUBLIC ACCIDENTS). Enter last name, first name, middle initial of person involved.

b. AGE—Enter age.

c. SEX—Mark appropriate box.

d. SOCIAL SECURITY NUMBER—(FOR GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL ONLY) Enter the social security number (or other personal identification number if no social security number issued).

e. GRADE—(FOR GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL ONLY) Enter pay grade. Example: O-6; E-7; WG-8; WS-12; GS-11; etc.

f. JOB SERIES/TITLE—For *government civilian employees* enter the pay plan, full series number, and job title, e.g. GS-0810/Civil Engineer. For *military personnel* enter the primary military occupational specialty (PMOS), e.g., 15A30 or 11G50. For *contractor employees* enter the job title assigned to the injured person, e.g. carpenter, laborer, surveyor, etc.,

g. DUTY STATUS—Mark the appropriate box.

(1) ON DUTY—Person was at duty station during duty hours or person was away from duty station during duty hours but on official business at time of the accident.

(2) TDY - Person was on official business, away from the duty station and with travel orders at time of accident. Line-of-duty investigation required.

(3) OFF DUTY - Person was not on official business at time of accident

h. EMPLOYMENT STATUS—(FOR GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL ONLY) Mark the most appropriate box. If "OTHER" is marked, specify the employment status of the person.

INSTRUCTION FOR SECTION 3—GENERAL INFORMATION

a. DATE OF ACCIDENT—Enter the month, day, and year of accident.

b. TIME OF ACCIDENT—Enter the local time of accident in military time. Example: 1430 hrs (not 2:30 p.m.).

c. EXACT LOCATION OF ACCIDENT—Enter facts needed to locate the accident scene. (installation/project name, building number, street, direction and distance from closest landmark, etc.,).

d. CONTRACTOR NAME

(1) PRIME—Enter the exact name (title of firm) of the prime contractor.

(2) SUBCONTRACTOR—Enter the name of any subcontractor involved in the accident.

e. CONTRACT NUMBER—Mark the appropriate box to identify if contract is civil works, military, or other: if "OTHER" is marked, specify contract appropriation on line provided. Enter complete contract number of prime contract, e.g., DACW 09-85-C-0100.

f. TYPE OF CONTRACT—Mark appropriate box. A/E means architect/engineer. If "OTHER" is marked, specify type of contract on line provided.

g. HAZARDOUS/TOXIC WASTE ACTIVITY (HTW)—Mark the box to identify the HTW activity being performed at the time of the accident. For Superfund, DERP, and Installation Restoration Program (IRP) HTW activities include accidents that occurred during inventory, predesign, design, and construction. For the purpose of accident reporting, DERP Formerly Used DoD Site (FUDS) activities and IRP activities will be treated separately. For Civil Works O&M HTW activities mark the "OTHER" box.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 4—CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITIES

a. CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITY—Select the *most appropriate* construction activity being performed at time of accident from the list below. Enter the activity name and place the corresponding code number identified in the box.

CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITY LIST

1. MOBILIZATION
2. SITE PREPARATION
3. EXCAVATION/TRENCHING
4. GRADING (EARTHWORK)
5. PIPING/UTILITIES
6. FOUNDATION
7. FORMING
8. CONCRETE PLACEMENT
9. STEEL ERECTION
10. ROOFING
11. FRAMING
12. MASONRY
13. CARPENTRY
14. ELECTRICAL
15. SCAFFOLDING/ACCESS
16. MECHANICAL
17. PAINTING
18. EQUIPMENT/MAINTENANCE
19. TUNNELING
20. WAREHOUSING/STORAGE
21. PAVING
22. FENCING
23. SIGNING
24. LANDSCAPING/IRRIGATION
25. INSULATION
26. DEMOLITION

b. TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT—Select the equipment involved in the accident from the list below. Enter the name and place the corresponding code number identified in the box. If equipment is not included below, use code 24, "OTHER", and write in specific type of equipment.

CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT

1. GRADER
2. DRAGLINE
3. CRANE (ON VESSEL/BARGE)
4. CRANE (TRACKED)
5. CRANE (RUBBER TIRE)
6. CRANE (VEHICLE MOUNTED)
7. CRANE (TOWER)
8. SHOVEL
9. SCRAPER
10. PUMP TRUCK (CONCRETE)
11. TRUCK (CONCRETE/TRANSIT MIXER)
12. DUMP TRUCK (HIGHWAY)
13. DUMP TRUCK (OFF HIGHWAY)
14. TRUCK (OTHER)
15. FORKLIFT
16. BACKHOE
17. FRONT-END LOADER
18. PILE DRIVER
19. TRACTOR (UTILITY)
20. MANLIFT
21. DOZER
22. DRILL RIG
23. COMPACTOR/VIBRATORY ROLLER
24. OTHER

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 5—INJURY/ILLNESS INFORMATION

a. SEVERITY OF INJURY / ILLNESS - Reference para 2-10 of USACE Suppl 1 to AR 385-40 and enter code and description from list below.

NOI	NO INJURY
FAT	FATALITY
PTL	PERMANENT TOTAL DISABILITY
PPR	PERMANENT PARTIAL DISABILITY
LWD	LOST WORKDAY CASE INVOLVING DAYS AWAY FROM WORK
NLW	RECORDABLE CASE WITHOUT LOST WORKDAYS
RFA	RECORDABLE FIRST AID CASE
NRI	NON-RECORDABLE INJURY

b. ESTIMATED DAYS LOST—Enter the estimated number of workdays the person will lose from work.

c. ESTIMATED DAYS HOSPITALIZED—Enter the estimated number of workdays the person will be hospitalized.

d. ESTIMATED DAYS RESTRICTED DUTY—Enter the estimated number of workdays the person, as a result of the accident, will not be able to perform all of their regular duties.

e. BODY PART AFFECTED—Select the most appropriate primary and when applicable, secondary body part affected from the list below. Enter body part name on line and place the corresponding code letters identifying that body part in the box.

GENERAL BODY AREA	CODE	BODY PART NAME
ARM/WRIST	AB	ARM AND WRIST
	AS	ARM OR WRIST
TRUNK, EXTERNAL MUSCULATURE	B1	SINGLE BREAST
	B2	BOTH BREASTS
	B3	SINGLE TESTICLE
	B4	BOTH TESTICLES
	BA	ABDOMEN
	BC	CHEST
	BL	LOWER BACK
	BP	PENIS
	BS	SIDE
	BU	UPPER BACK
	BW	WAIST
	BZ	TRUNK OTHER
HEAD, INTERNAL	C1	SINGLE EAR INTERNAL
	C2	BOTH EARS INTERNAL
	C3	SINGLE EYE INTERNAL
	C4	BOTH EYES INTERNAL
	CB	BRAIN
	CC	CRANIAL BONES
	CD	TEETH
	CJ	JAW
	CL	THROAT, LARYNX
	CM	MOUTH
	CN	NOSE
	CR	THROAT, OTHER
	CT	TONGUE
	CZ	HEAD OTHER INTERNAL
ELBOW	EB	BOTH ELBOWS
	ES	SINGLE ELBOW
FINGER	F1	FIRST FINGER
	F2	BOTH FIRST FINGERS
	F3	SECOND FINGER
	F4	BOTH SECOND FINGERS
	F5	THIRD FINGER
	F6	BOTH THIRD FINGERS
	F7	FOURTH FINGER
	F8	BOTH FOURTH FINGERS
TOE	G1	GREAT TOE
	G2	BOTH GREAT TOES
	G3	TOE OTHER
	G4	TOES OTHER
HEAD, EXTERNAL	H1	EYE EXTERNAL
	H2	BOTH EYES EXTERNAL
	H3	EAR EXTERNAL
	H4	BOTH EARS EXTERNAL
	HC	CHIN
	HF	FACE
	HK	NECK/THROAT
	HM	MOUTH/LIPS
	HN	NOSE
	HS	SCALP
KNEE	KB	BOTH KNEES
	KS	KNEE
LEG, HIP, ANKLE, BUTTOCK	LB	BOTH LEGS/HIPS/ ANKLES/BUTTOCKS
	LS	SINGLE LEG/HIP ANKLE/BUTTOCK
HAND	MB	BOTH HANDS
	MS	SINGLE HAND
FOOT	PB	BOTH FEET
	PS	SINGLE FOOT
TRUNK, BONES	R1	SINGLE COLLAR BONE
	R2	BOTH COLLAR BONES
	R3	SHOULDER BLADE
	R4	BOTH SHOULDER BLADES
	RB	RIB
	RS	STERNUM (BREAST BONE)
	RV	VERTEBRAE (SPINE; DISC)
	RZ	TRUNK BONES OTHER
SHOULDER	SB	BOTH SHOULDERS
	SS	SINGLE SHOULDER
THUMB	TB	BOTH THUMBS
	TS	SINGLE THUMB
TRUNK, INTERNAL ORGANS	V1	LUNG, SINGLE
	V2	LUNGS, BOTH
	V3	KIDNEY, SINGLE
	V4	KIDNEYS, BOTH
	VH	HEART
	VL	LIVER
	VR	REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS
	VS	STOMACH
	VV	INTESTINES
	VZ	TRUNK, INTERNAL; OTHER

f. NATURE OF INJURY/ILLNESS - Select the most appropriate nature of injury / illness from the list below. This nature of injury / illness shall correspond to the primary body part selected in 5e, above. Enter the nature of injury / illness name on the line and place the corresponding CODE letters in the box provided.

* The injury or condition selected below must be caused by a specific incident or event which occurred during a single work day or shift.

GENERAL NATURE CATEGORY	CODE	NATURE OF INJURY NAME
*TRAUMATIC INJURY OR DISABILITY	TA	AMPUTATION
	TB	BACK STRAIN.
	TC	CONTUSION; BRUISE; ABRASION
	TD	DISLOCATION
	TF	FRACTURE
	TH	HERNIA
	TK	CONCUSSION
	TL	LACERATION, CUT
	TP	PUNCTURE
	TS	STRAIN, MULTIPLE
	TU	BURN, SCALD, SUNBURN
	TI	TRAUMATIC SKIN DISEASES/ CONDITIONS INCLUDING DERMATITIS
	TR	TRAUMATIC RESPIRATORY DISEASE
	TQ	TRAUMATIC FOOD POISONING
	TW	TRAUMATIC TUBERCULOSIS
	TX	TRAUMATIC VIROLOGICAL/ INFECTIVE/PARASITIC DISEASE
	T1	TRAUMATIC CEREBRAL VASCULAR CONDITION/STROKE
	T2	TRAUMATIC HEARING LOSS
	T3	TRAUMATIC HEART CONDITION
	T4	TRAUMATIC MENTAL DISORDER; STRESS; NERVOUS CONDITION
	T8	TRAUMATIC INJURY — OTHER (EXCEPT DISEASE, ILLNESS)

**A nontraumatic physiological harm or loss of capacity produced by systemic infection; continued or repeated stress or strain; exposure to toxins, poisons, fumes, etc.; or other continued and repeated exposures to conditions of the work environment over a long period of time. For practical purposes, an occupational illness/disease or disability is any reported condition which doses not meet the definition of traumatic injury or disability as described above.

GENERAL NATURE CATEGORY	CODE	NATURE OF INJURY NAME
**NON-TRAUMATIC ILLNESS/DISEASE OR DISABILITY		
RESPIRATORY DISEASE	RA	ASBESTOSIS
	RB	BRONCHITIS
	RE	EMPHYSEMA
	RP	PNEUMOCONIOSIS
	RS	SILICOSIS
	R9	RESPIRATORY DISEASE, OTHER
VIROLOGICAL, INFECTIVE & PARASITIC DISEASES	VB	BRUCELLOSIS
	VC	COCCIDIOMYCOSIS
	VF	FOOD POISONING
	VH	HEPATITIS
	VM	MALARIA
	VS	STAPHYLOCOCCUS
	VT	TUBERCULOSIS
	V9	VIROLOGICAL/INFECTIVE/ PARASITIC—OTHER
DISABILITY, OCCUPATIONAL	DA	ARTHRITIS, BURSITIS
	DB	BACK STRAIN, BACK SPRAIN
	DC	CEREBRAL VASCULAR CONDITION; STROKE
	DD	ENDEMIC DISEASE (OTHER THAN CODE TYPES R&S)
	DE	EFFECT OF ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITION
	DH	HEARING LOSS
	DK	HEART CONDITION
	DM	MENTAL DISORDER, EMOTIONAL STRESS NERVOUS CONDITION
	DR	RADIATION
	DS	STRAIN, MULTIPLE
	DU	ULCER
	DV	OTHER VASCULAR CONDITIONS
	D9	DISABILITY, OTHER
SKIN DISEASE OR CONDITION	SB	BIOLOGICAL
	SC	CHEMICAL
	S9	DERMATITIS, UNCLASSIFIED

g. TYPE AND SOURCE OF INJURY/ILLNESS (CAUSE) - Type and Source Codes are used to describe what caused the incident. The Type Code stands for an ACTION and the Source Code for an OBJECT or SUBSTANCE. Together, they form a brief description of how the incident occurred. Where there are two different sources, code the initiating source of the incident (see example 1, below). Examples:

(1) An employee tripped on carpet and struck his head on a desk.
TYPE: 210 (fell on same level) SOURCE: 0110 (walking/working surface)

NOTE: This example would NOT be coded 120 (struck against) and 0140 (furniture).

(2) A Park Ranger contracted dermatitis from contact with poison ivy/ oak.
TYPE: 510 (contact) SOURCE: 0920 (plant)

(3) A lock and dam mechanic punctured his finger with a metal sliver while grinding a turbine blade.
TYPE: 410 (punctured by) SOURCE: 0830 (metal)

(4) An employee was driving a government vehicle when it was struck by another vehicle..
TYPE: 800 (traveling in) SOURCE: 0421 (government-owned vehicle, as driver)

NOTE: The Type Code 800, "Traveling In" is different from the other type codes in that its function is not to identify factors contributing to the injury or fatality, but rather to collect data on the type of vehicle the employee was operating or traveling in at the time of the incident.

Select the most appropriate TYPE and SOURCE identifier from the list below and enter the name on the line and the corresponding code in the appropriate box.

CODE	TYPE OF INJURY NAME
	STRUCK
0110	STRUCK BY
0111	STRUCK BY FALLING OBJECT
0120	STRUCK AGAINST
	FELL, SLIPPED, TRIPPED
0210	FELL ON SAME LEVEL
0220	FELL ON DIFFERENT LEVEL
0230	SLIPPED, TRIPPED (NO FALL)
	CAUGHT
0310	CAUGHT ON
0320	CAUGHT IN
0330	CAUGHT BETWEEN
	PUNCTURED, LACERATED
0410	PUNCTURED BY
0420	CUT BY
0430	STUNG BY
0440	BITTEN BY
	CONTACTED
0510	CONTACTED WITH (INJURED PERSON MOVING)
0520	CONTACTED BY (OBJECT WAS MOVING)
	EXERTED
0610	LIFTED, STRAINED BY (SINGLE ACTION)
0620	STRESSED BY (REPEATED ACTION)
	EXPOSED
0710	INHALED
0720	INGESTED
0730	ABSORBED
0740	EXPOSED TO
0800	TRAVELING IN

CODE	SOURCE OF INJURY NAME
0100	BUILDING OR WORKING AREA
0110	WALKING/WORKING SURFACE (FLOOR, STREET, SIDEWALKS, ETC)
0120	STAIRS, STEPS
0130	LADDER
0140	FURNITURE, FURNISHINGS, OFFICE EQUIPMENT
0150	BOILER, PRESSURE VESSEL
0160	EQUIPMENT LAYOUT (ERGONOMIC)
0170	WINDOWS, DOORS
0180	ELECTRICITY

CODE	SOURCE OF INJURY NAME
0200	ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITION
0210	TEMPERATURE EXTREME (INDOOR)
0220	WEATHER (ICE, RAIN, HEAT, ETC.)
0230	FIRE, FLAME, SMOKE (NOT TOBACCO)
0240	NOISE
0250	RADIATION
0260	LIGHT
0270	VENTILATION
0271	TOBACCO SMOKE
0280	STRESS (EMOTIONAL)
0290	CONFINED SPACE
0300	MACHINE OR TOOL
0310	HAND TOOL (POWERED: SAW, GRINDER, ETC.)
0320	HAND TOOL (NONPOWERED)
0330	MECHANICAL POWER TRANSMISSION APPARATUS
0340	GUARD, SHIELD (FIXED, MOVEABLE, INTERLOCK)
0350	VIDEO DISPLAY TERMINAL
0360	PUMP, COMPRESSOR, AIR PRESSURE TOOL
0370	HEATING EQUIPMENT
0380	WELDING EQUIPMENT
0400	VEHICLE
0411	AS DRIVER OF PRIVATELY OWNED/RENTAL VEHICLE
0412	AS PASSENGER OF PRIVATELY OWNED/RENTAL VEHICLE
0421	DRIVER OF GOVERNMENT VEHICLE
0422	PASSENGER OF GOVERNMENT VEHICLE
0430	COMMON CARRIER (AIRLINE, BUS, ETC.)
0440	AIRCRAFT (NOT COMMERCIAL)
0450	BOAT, SHIP, BARGE
0500	MATERIAL HANDLING EQUIPMENT
0510	EARTHMOVER (TRACTOR, BACKHOE, ETC.)
0520	CONVEYOR (FOR MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT)
0530	ELEVATOR, ESCALATOR, PERSONNEL HOIST
0540	HOIST, SLING CHAIN, JACK
0550	CRANE
0551	FORKLIFT
0560	HANDTRUCK, DOLLY
0600	DUST, VAPOR, ETC.
0610	DUST (SILICA, COAL, ETC.)
0620	FIBERS
0621	ASBESTOS
0630	GASES
0631	CARBON MONOXIDE
0640	MIST, STEAM, VAPOR, FUME
0641	WELDING FUMES
0650	PARTICLES (UNIDENTIFIED)
0700	CHEMICAL, PLASTIC, ETC.
0711	DRY CHEMICAL—CORROSIVE
0712	DRY CHEMICAL—TOXIC
0713	DRY CHEMICAL—EXPLOSIVE
0714	DRY CHEMICAL—FLAMMABLE
0721	LIQUID CHEMICAL—CORROSIVE
0722	LIQUID CHEMICAL—TOXIC
0723	LIQUID CHEMICAL—EXPLOSIVE
0724	LIQUID CHEMICAL—FLAMMABLE
0730	PLASTIC
0740	WATER
0750	MEDICINE
0800	INANIMATE OBJECT
0810	BOX, BARREL, ETC.
0820	PAPER
0830	METAL ITEM, MINERAL
0831	NEEDLE
0840	GLASS
0850	SCRAP, TRASH
0860	WOOD
0870	FOOD
0880	CLOTHING, APPAREL, SHOES
0900	ANIMATE OBJECT
0911	DOG
0912	OTHER ANIMAL
0920	PLANT
0930	INSECT
0940	HUMAN (VIOLENCE)
0950	HUMAN (COMMUNICABLE DISEASE)
0960	BACTERIA, VIRUS (NOT HUMAN CONTACT)

CODE	SOURCE OF INJURY NAME
1000	PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT
1010	PROTECTIVE CLOTHING, SHOES, GLASSES, GOGGLES
1020	RESPIRATOR, MASK
1021	DIVING EQUIPMENT
1030	SAFETY BELT, HARNESS
1040	PARACHUTE

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 6 — PUBLIC FATALITY

a. ACTIVITY AT TIME OF ACCIDENT—Select the activity being performed at the time of the accident from the list below. Enter the activity name on the line and the corresponding number in the box. If the activity performed is not identified on the list, select from the *most* appropriate primary activity area (water related, non-water related or other activity), the code number for "Other", and write in the activity being performed at the time of the accident.

WATER RELATED RECREATION

1. Sailing
2. Boating—powered
3. Boating—unpowered
4. Water skiing
5. Fishing from boat
6. Fishing from bank dock or pier
7. Fishing while wading
8. Swimming/supervised area
9. Swimming/designated area
10. Swimming/other area
11. Underwater activities (skin diving, scuba, etc.)
12. Wading
13. Attempted rescue
14. Hunting from boat
15. Other

NON-WATER RELATED RECREATION

16. Hiking and walking
17. Climbing (general)
18. Camping/picnicking authorized area
19. Camping/picnicking unauthorized area
20. Guided tours
21. Hunting
22. Playground equipment
23. Sports/summer (baseball, football, etc.)
24. Sports/winter (skiing, sledding, snowmobiling etc.)
25. Cycling (bicycle, motorcycle, scooter)
26. Gliding
27. Parachuting
28. Other non-water related

OTHER ACTIVITIES

29. Unlawful acts (fights, riots, vandalism, etc.)
30. Food preparation/serving
31. Food consumption
32. Housekeeping
33. Sleeping
34. Pedestrian struck by vehicle
35. Pedestrian other acts
36. Suicide
37. "Other" activities

b. PERSONAL FLOTATION DEVICE USED—If fatality was water-related was the victim wearing a person flotation device? Mark the appropriate box.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 7—MOTOR VEHICLE ACCIDENT

a. TYPE OF VEHICLE—Mark appropriate box for each vehicle involved. If more than one vehicle of the same type is involved, mark both halves of the appropriate box. USACE vehicle(s) involved shall be marked in left half of appropriate box.

b. TYPE OF COLLISION—Mark appropriate box.

c. SEAT BELT—Mark appropriate box.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 8—PROPERTY/ MATERIAL INVOLVED

a. NAME OF ITEM—Describe all property involved in accident. Property/material involved means material which is damaged or whose use or misuse contributed to the accident. Include the name, type, model; also include the National Stock Number (NSN) whenever applicable.

b. OWNERSHIP—Enter ownership for each item listed. (Enter one of the following: *USACE; OTHER GOVERNMENT; CONTRACTOR: PRIVATE)*

c. $ AMOUNT OF DAMAGE—Enter the total estimated dollar amount of damage (parts and labor), if any.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 9—VESSEL/ FLOATING PLANT ACCIDENT

a. TYPE OF VESSEL/FLOATING PLANT—Select the most appropriate vessel/floating plant from list below. Enter name and place corresponding number in box. If item is not listed below, enter item number for "OTHER" and write in specific type of vessel/ floating plant.

VESSEL/FLOATING PLANTS

1. ROW BOAT
2. SAIL BOAT
3. MOTOR BOAT
4. BARGE
5. DREDGE/HOPPER
6. DREDGE/SIDE CASTING
7. DREDGE/DIPPER
8. DREDGE/CLAMSHELL, BUCKET
9. DREDGE/PIPE LINE
10. DREDGE/DUST PAN
11. TUG BOAT
12. OTHER

b. COLLISION/MISHAP—Select from the list below the object(s) that contributed to the accident or were damaged in the accident.

COLLISION/MISHAP

1. COLLISION W/OTHER VESSEL
2. UPPER GUIDE WALL
3. UPPER LOCK GATES
4. LOCK WALL
5. LOWER LOCK GATES
6. LOWER GUIDE WALL
7. HAULAGE UNIT
8. BREAKING TOW
9. TOW BREAKING UP
10. SWEPT DOWN ON DAM
11. BUOY/DOLPHIN/CELL
12. WHARF OR DOCK
13. OTHER

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 10—ACCIDENT DESCRIPTION

DESCRIBE ACCIDENT—Fully describe the accident. Give the sequence of events that describe what happened leading up to and including the accident. Fully identify personnel and equipment involved and their role(s) in the accident. Ensure that relationships between personnel and equipment are clearly specified. Continue on blank sheets if necessary and attach to this report.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 11—CAUSAL FACTORS

a. Review thoroughly. Answer each question by marking the appropriate block. If any answer is yes, explain in item 13 below. Consider, as a minimum, the following:

(1) DESIGN—Did inadequacies associated with the building or work site play a role? Would an improved design or layout of the equipment or facilities reduce the likelihood of similar accidents? Were the tools or other equipment designed and intended for the task at hand?

(2) INSPECTION/MAINTENANCE—Did inadequately or improperly maintained equipment, tools, workplace, etc. create or worsen any hazards that contributed to the accident? Would better equipment, facility, work site or work activity inspections have helped avoid the accident?

(3) PERSON'S PHYSICAL CONDITION—Do you feel that the accident would probably not have occurred if the employee was in "good" physical condition? If the person involved in the accident had been in better physical condition, would the accident have been less severe or avoided altogether? Was over exertion a factor?

(4) OPERATING PROCEDURES—Did a lack of or inadequacy within established operating procedures contribute to the accident? Did any aspect of the procedures introduce any hazard to, or increase the risk associated with the work process? Would establishment or improvement of operating procedures reduce the likelihood of similar accidents?

(5) JOB PRACTICES—Were any of the provisions of the Safety and Health Requirements Manual (EM 385-1-1) violated? Was the task being accomplished in a manner which was not in compliance with an established job hazard analysis or activity hazard analysis? Did any established job practice (including EM 385-1-1) fail to adequately address the task or work process? Would better job practices improve the safety of the task?

(6) HUMAN FACTORS—Was the person under undue stress (either internal or external to the job)? Did the task tend toward overloading the capabilities of the person; i.e., did the job require tracking and reacting to many external inputs such as displays, alarms, or signals? Did the arrangement of the workplace tend to interfere with efficient task performance? Did the task require reach, strength, endurance, agility, etc., at or beyond the capabilities of the employee? Was the work environment ill-adapted to the person? Did the person need more training, experience, or practice in doing the task? Was the person inadequately rested to perform safely?

(7) ENVIRONMENTAL FACTORS—Did any factors such as moisture, humidity, rain, snow, sleet, hail, ice, fog, cold, heat, sun, temperature changes, wind, tides, floods, currents, dust, mud, glare, pressure changes, lightning, etc., play a part in the accident?

(8) CHEMICAL AND PHYSICAL AGENT FACTORS—Did exposure to chemical agents (either single shift exposure or long-term exposure) such as dusts, fibers (asbestos, etc.), silica, gases (carbon monoxide, chlorine, etc.,), mists, steam, vapors, fumes, smoke, other particulates, liquid or dry chemicals that are corrosive, toxic, explosive or flammable, by-products of combustion or physical agents such as noise, ionizing radiation, non-ionizing radiation (UV radiation created during welding, etc.) contribute to the accident/incident?

(9) OFFICE FACTORS—Did the fact that the accident occurred in an office setting or to an office worker have a bearing on its cause? For example, office workers tend to have less experience and training in performing tasks such as lifting office furniture. Did physical hazards within the office environment contribute to the hazard?

(10) SUPPORT FACTORS—Was the person using an improper tool for the job? Was inadequate time available or utilized to safely accomplish the task? Were less than adequate personnel resources (in terms of employee skills, number of workers, and adequate supervision) available to get the job done properly? Was funding available, utilized, and adequate to provide proper tools, equipment, personnel, site preparation, etc?

(11) PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT—Did the person fail to use appropriate personal protective equipment (gloves, eye protection, hard-toed shoes, respirator, etc.) for the task or environment? Did protective equipment provided or worn fail to provide adequate protection from the hazard(s)? Did lack of or inadequate maintenance of protective gear contribute to the accident?

(12) DRUGS/ALCOHOL—Is there any reason to believe the person's mental or physical capabilities, judgement, etc., were impaired or altered by the use of drugs or alcohol? Consider the effects of prescription medicine and over the counter medications as well as illicit drug use. Consider the effect of drug or alcohol induced "hangovers".

b. WRITTEN JOB/ACTIVITY HAZARD ANALYSIS—Was a written Job/Activity Hazard Analysis completed for the task being performed at the time of the accident? Mark the appropriate box. *If one was performed, attach a copy of the analysis to the report.*

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 12—TRAINING

a. WAS PERSON TRAINED TO PERFORM ACTIVITY/TASK?—For the purpose of this section "trained" means the person has been provided the necessary information (either formal and/or on-the-job (OJT) training) to competently perform the activity/task in a safe and healthful manner.

b. TYPE OF TRAINING—Mark the appropriate box that best indicates the type of training; (classroom or on-the-job) that the injured person received before the accident happened.

c. DATE OF MOST RECENT TRAINING—Enter the month, day, and year of the last *formal* training completed that covered the activity-task being performed at the time of the accident.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 13—CAUSES

a. DIRECT CAUSES—The direct cause is that single factor which most directly lead to the accident. See examples below.

b. INDIRECT CAUSES—Indirect causes are those factors which contributed to but did not directly initiate the occurrence of the accident.

Examples for section 13:

a. Employee was dismantling scaffold and fell 12 feet from unguarded opening.
Direct cause: failure to provide fall protection at elevation.
Indirect causes: failure to enforce USACE safety requirements; improper training/motivation of employee (possibility that employee was not knowledgeable of USACE fall protection requirements or was lax in his attitude towards safety); failure to ensure provision of positive fall protection whenever elevated; failure to address fall protection during scaffold dismantling in phase hazard analysis.

b. Private citizen had stopped his vehicle at intersection for red light when vehicle was struck in rear by USACE vehicle. (note USACE vehicle was in proper/safe working condition).
Direct cause: failure of USACE driver to maintain control of and stop USACE vehicle within safe distance.
Indirect cause: Failure of employee to pay attention to driving (defensive driving).

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 14—ACTION TO ELIMINATE CAUSE(S)

DESCRIPTION—Fully describe all the actions taken, anticipated, and recommended to eliminate the cause(s) and prevent reoccurrence of similar accidents/illnesses. Continue on blank sheets of paper if necessary to fully explain and attach to the completed report form.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 15—DATES FOR ACTION

a. BEGIN DATE—Enter the date when the corrective action(s) identified in Section 14 will begin.

b. COMPLETE DATE—Enter the date when the corrective action(s) identified in Section 14 will be completed.

c. TITLE AND SIGNATURE—Enter the title and signature of supervisor completing the accident report. For a GOVERNMENT employee accident/illness the immediate supervisor will complete and sign the report. For PUBLIC accidents the USACE Project Manager/Area Engineer responsible for the USACE property where the accident happened shall complete and sign the report. For CONTRACTOR accidents the Contractor's project manager shall complete and sign the report and provide to the USACE supervisor responsible for oversight of that contractor activity. This USACE Supervisor shall also sign the report. Upon entering the information required in 15.d, 15.e and 15.f below, the responsible USACE supervisor shall forward the report for management review as indicated in Section 16.

d. DATE SIGNED—Enter the month, day, and year that the report was signed by the responsible supervisor.

e. ORGANIZATION NAME—For GOVERNMENT employee accidents enter the USACE organization name (Division, Branch, Section, etc.) of the injured employee. For PUBLIC accidents enter the USACE organization name for the person identified in block 15.c. For CONTRACTOR accidents enter the USACE organization name for the USACE office responsible for providing contract administration oversight.

f. OFFICE SYMBOL—Enter the latest complete USACE Office Symbol for the USACE organization identified in block 15.e.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 16—MANAGEMENT REVIEW (1st)

1ST REVIEW—Each USACE FOA shall determine who will provide 1st management review. The responsible USACE supervisor in section 15.c shall forward the completed report to the USACE office designated as the 1st Reviewer by the FOA. Upon receipt, the Chief of the Office shall review the completed report, mark the appropriate box, provide substantive comments, sign, date, and forward to the FOA Staff Chief (2nd review) for review and comment.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 17—MANAGEMENT REVIEW (2nd)

2ND REVIEW—The FOA Staff Chief (i.e., FOA Chief of Construction, Operations, Engineering, Planning, etc.) shall mark the appropriate box, review the completed report, provide substantive comments, sign, date, and return to the FOA Safety and Occupational Health Office.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 18—SAFETY AND OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH REVIEW

3RD REVIEW—The FOA Safety and Occupational Health Office shall review the completed report, mark the appropriate box, ensure that any inadequacies, discrepancies, etc, are rectified by the responsible supervisor and management reviewers, provide substantive comments, sign, date and forward to the FOA Commander for review, comment, and signature.

INSTRUCTION FOR SECTION 19—COMMAND APPROVAL

4TH REVIEW—The FOA Commander shall (to include the person designated Acting Commander in his absence) review the completed report, comment if required, sign, date, and forward the report to the FOA Safety and Occupational Health Office. Signature authority shall not be delegated.

US Army Corps of Engineers

USACE PRIME CONTRACTOR
Monthly Record of Work-Related Injuries/Illnesses & Exposure

Month _____
Year _____

This "USACE Contractor Monthly Summary Record of Injuries/Illness and Work Hour Exposure" Form must be completed by the Prime Contractor for each respective 30 calendar day work period of the contract and submitted along with the Contractor's Daily Report not later than 10 calendar days after the respective reporting period. If the Contractor's final reporting period on the contract is less than 30 calendar days, the final "USACE Contractor Monthly Summary Record of Injuries/Illness and Work Hour Exposure" shall be for the remainder of calendar days on the contract and submitted not later than 10 calendar days after the reporting period. The contract specificatiuon SECTION 01525 indicates further requirements for use of this Form by the Contractor. The Contractor is informed use of this Form is mandatory and instructions for the Contractor's use in completing the Form as specified are included.

USACE Command
Contractor Name
Contract Number
Project Title
City **State**
USACE Office Overseeing Work:

Identify the person							Describe The Case		Classify the case												
(A)		(B1)	(B2)	(B3)	(C)	(D)	(E)	(F)	Using these categories, check ONLY the most serious result for each case:				Enter the number of days the injured or ill worker was:		Check the "injury" column or choose one type of illness: (M)					
Company Name	Prime or Sub (P or S)	Age	Gender	Date Employee Began Work on Job Covered by Contract	Job Title (e.g., Welder)	Date of injury or onset of illness (mo./day)	Where the event occurred (e.g. Loading dock north end)	Describe injury or illness, parts of body affected, and object/substance that directly injured or made person ill (e.g. Second degree burns on right forearm from acetylene torch)	Death	Days away from work	Remained at work: Job transfer or restriction	Remained at work: Other record-able cases	On job transfer or restriction (days)	Away from work (days)	Injury	Skin Disorder	Respiratory Condition	Poisoning	Hearing Loss	All other Illnesses
									(G)	(H)	(I)	(J)	(K)	(L)	(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
									0	*0*	*0*	*0*	*0*	*0*	*0*	*0*	*0*	*0*	*0*	*0*

For Government Use Only

TYPE OF WORK ACTIVITY (Choose One):

Construction		Environmental Remed.	
Opn & Main.		Superfund	
Eng. Services		FUDS	
Dredging		IRP	
Rsch. & Dev.		FUSRAP	
Emerg. Opns.		Ordinance/Expl. Cleanup	
Other		Environmental Other	

Type of Contract (Choose One):

Civil Works	
Military Programs	
Other	

Exposure Hours	
Month	
Year to Date	

Certification of Record	
Name of Person Submit. Record	
Signature	
Date	

11. CAUSAL FACTOR(S) *(Read Instruction Before Completing)*

a. (Explain YES answers in item 13)	YES	NO
DESIGN: Was design of facility, workplace or equipment a factor?	☐	☐
INSPECTION/MAINTENANCE: Were inspection & maintenance procedures a factor?	☐	☐
PERSON'S PHYSICAL CONDITION: In your opinion, was the physical condition of the person a factor?	☐	☐
OPERATING PROCEDURES: Were operating procedures a factor?	☐	☐
JOB PRACTICES: Were any job safety/health practices not followed when the accident occurred?	☐	☐
HUMAN FACTORS: Did any human factors such as, size or strength of person, etc., contribute to accident?	☐	☐
ENVIRONMENTAL FACTORS: Did heat, cold, dust, sun, glare, etc., contribute to the accident?	☐	☐

a. *(CONTINUED)*	YES	NO
CHEMICAL AND PHYSICAL AGENT FACTORS: Did exposure to chemical agents, such as dust, fumes, mists, vapors or physical agents, such as, noise, radiation, etc., contribute to accident?	☐	☐
OFFICE FACTORS: Did office setting such as, lifting office furniture, carrying, stooping, etc., contribute to the accident?	☐	☐
SUPPORT FACTORS: Were inappropriate tools/resources provided to properly perform the activity/task?	☐	☐
PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT: Did the improper selection, use or maintenance of personal protective equipment contribute to the accident?	☐	☐
DRUGS/ALCOHOL: In your opinion, was drugs or alcohol a factor to the accident	☐	☐

b. WAS A WRITTEN JOB/ACTIVITY HAZARD ANALYSIS COMPLETED FOR TASK BEING PERFORMED AT TIME OF ACCIDENT?

☐ YES *(If yes, attach a copy.)* ☐ NO

12. TRAINING

a. WAS PERSON TRAINED TO PERFORM ACTIVITY/TASK?	b. TYPE OF TRAINING.	c. DATE OF MOST RECENT FORMAL TRAINING.
☐ YES ☐ NO	☐ CLASSROOM ☐ ON JOB	(Month) (Day) (Year)

13. FULLY EXPLAIN WHAT ALLOWED OR CAUSED THE ACCIDENT; INCLUDE DIRECT AND INDIRECT CAUSES *(See instruction for definition of direct and indirect causes.) (Use additional paper, if necessary)*

a. DIRECT CAUSE

See attached page.

b. INDIRECT CAUSE(S)

See attached page.

14. ACTION(S) TAKEN, ANTICIPATED OR RECOMMENDED TO ELIMINATE CAUSE(S).

DESCRIBE FULLY:

See attached page.

15. DATES FOR ACTIONS IDENTIFIED IN BLOCK 14.

a. BEGINNING (Month/Day/Year)	b. ANTICIPATED COMPLETION (Month/Day/Year)

c. SIGNATURE AND TITLE OF SUPERVISOR COMPLETING REPORT	d. DATE *(Mo/Da/Yr)*	e. ORGANIZATION IDENTIFIER *(Div, Br, Sect)*	f. OFFICE SYMBOL
CORPS _____ CONTRACTOR _____			

16. MANAGEMENT REVIEW *(1st)*

a. ☐ CONCUR b. ☐ NON CONCUR c. COMMENTS

SIGNATURE	TITLE	DATE

17. MANAGEMENT REVIEW *(2nd - Chief Operations, Construction, Engineering, etc.)*

a. ☐ CONCUR b. ☐ NON CONCUR c. COMMENTS

SIGNATURE	TITLE	DATE

18. SAFETY AND OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH OFFICE REVIEW

a. ☐ CONCUR b. ☐ NON CONCUR c. ADDITIONAL ACTIONS/COMMENTS

SIGNATURE	TITLE	DATE

19. COMMAND APPROVAL

COMMENTS

COMMANDER SIGNATURE	DATE

*U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1993-0-791-757

10. ACCIDENT DESCRIPTION *(Continuation)*

13a. DIRECT CAUSE *(Continuation)*

13b.	INDIRECT CAUSES *(Continuation)*

14.	ACTION(S) TAKEN, ANTICIPATED, OR RECOMMENDED TO ELIMINATE CAUSE(S) *(Continuation)*

GENERAL. Complete a separate report for each person who was *injured, caused,* or *contributed* to the accident (excluding uninjured personnel and witnesses). Use of this form for reporting USACE employee first-aid type injuries not submitted to the Office of Workers' Compensation Programs (OWCP) shall be at the descretion of the FOA commander. Please type or print legibly. Appropriate items shall be marked with an "X" in box(es). If additional space is needed, provide the information on a separate sheet and attach to the completed form. Ensure that these instructions are forwarded with the completed report to the designated management reviewers indicated in sections 16. and 17.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 1— ACCIDENT CLASSIFICATION. *(Mark All Boxes That Are Applicable.)*

a. GOVERNMENT. Mark "CIVILIAN" box if accident involved government civilian employee; mark "MILITARY" box if accident involved U.S. military personnel.

(1) INJURY/ILLNESS/FATALITY—Mark if accident resulted in any government civilian employee injury, illness, or fatality that requires the submission of OWCP Forms CA-1 (injury), CA-2 (illness), or CA-6 (fatality) to OWCP; mark if accident resulted in military personnel lost-time or fatal injury or illness.

(2) PROPERTY DAMAGE—Mark the appropriate box if accident resulted in any damage of $1000 or more to government property (including motor vehicles).

(3) VEHICLE INVOLVED—Mark if accident involved a motor vehicle, *regardless* of whether "INJURY/ILLNESS/FATALITY" or "PROPERTY DAMAGE" are marked.

(4) DIVING ACTIVITY—Mark if the accident involved an in-house USACE diving activity.

b. CONTRACTOR.

(1) INJURY/ILLNESS/FATALITY—Mark if accident resulted in any contractor lost-time injury/illness or fatality.

(2) PROPERTY DAMAGE—Mark the appropriate box if accident resulted in any damage of $1000 or more to contractor property (including motor vehicles).

(3) VEHICLE INVOLVED—Mark if accident involved a motor vehicle, *regardless* of whether "INJURY/ILLNESS/FATALITY" or "PROPERTY DAMAGE" are marked.

(4) DIVING ACTIVITY—Mark if the accident involved a USACE Contractor diving activity.

c. PUBLIC.

(1) INJURY/ILLNESS/FATALITY—Mark if accident resulted in public fatality or permanent total disability. (The "OTHER" box will be marked when requested by the FOA to report an unusual non-fatal public accident that could result in claims against the government or as otherwise directed by the FOA Commander).

(2) VOID SPACE—Make no entry.

(3) VEHICLE INVOLVED—Mark if accident resulted in a fatality to a member of the public and involved a motor vehicle, *regardless* of whether "INJURY/ILLNESS/FATALITY" is marked.

(4) VOID SPACE—Make no entry.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 2—PERSONAL DATA

a. NAME—(MANDATORY FOR GOVERNMENT ACCIDENTS. OPTIONAL AT THE DISCRETION OF THE FOA COMMANDER FOR CONTRACTOR AND PUBLIC ACCIDENTS). Enter last name, first name, middle initial of person involved.

b. AGE—Enter age.

c. SEX—Mark appropriate box.

d. SOCIAL SECURITY NUMBER—(FOR GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL ONLY) Enter the social security number (or other personal identification number if no social security number issued).

e. GRADE—(FOR GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL ONLY) Enter pay grade. Example: O-6; E-7; WG-8; WS-12; GS-11; etc.

f. JOB SERIES/TITLE—For *government civilian employees* enter the pay plan, full series number, and job title, e.g. GS-0810/Civil Engineer. For *military personnel* enter the primary military occupational specialty (PMOS), e.g., 15A30 or 11G50. For *contractor employees* enter the job title assigned to the injured person, e.g. carpenter, laborer, surveyor, etc.,

g. DUTY STATUS—Mark the appropriate box.

(1) ON DUTY—Person was at duty station during duty hours or person was away from duty station during duty hours but on official business at time of the accident.

(2) TDY - Person was on official business, away from the duty station and with travel orders at time of accident. Line-of-duty investigation required.

(3) OFF DUTY - Person was not on official business at time of accident

h. EMPLOYMENT STATUS—(FOR GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL ONLY) Mark the most appropriate box. If "OTHER" is marked, specify the employment status of the person.

INSTRUCTION FOR SECTION 3—GENERAL INFORMATION

a. DATE OF ACCIDENT—Enter the month, day, and year of accident.

b. TIME OF ACCIDENT—Enter the local time of accident in military time. Example: 1430 hrs (not 2:30 p.m.).

c. EXACT LOCATION OF ACCIDENT—Enter facts needed to locate the accident scene. (installation/project name, building number, street, direction and distance from closest landmark, etc.,).

d. CONTRACTOR NAME

(1) PRIME—Enter the exact name (title of firm) of the prime contractor.

(2) SUBCONTRACTOR—Enter the name of any subcontractor involved in the accident.

e. CONTRACT NUMBER—Mark the appropriate box to identify if contract is civil works, military, or other: if "OTHER" is marked, specify contract appropriation on line provided. Enter complete contract number of prime contract, e.g., DACW 09-85-C-0100.

f. TYPE OF CONTRACT—Mark appropriate box. A/E means architect/engineer. If "OTHER" is marked, specify type of contract on line provided.

g. HAZARDOUS/TOXIC WASTE ACTIVITY (HTW)—Mark the box to identify the HTW activity being performed at the time of the accident. For Superfund, DERP, and Installation Restoration Program (IRP) HTW activities include accidents that occurred during inventory, predesign, design, and construction. For the purpose of accident reporting, DERP Formerly Used DoD Site (FUDS) activities and IRP activities will be treated separately. For Civil Works O&M HTW activities mark the "OTHER" box.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 4—CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITIES

a. CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITY—Select the *most appropriate* construction activity being performed at time of accident from the list below. Enter the activity name and place the corresponding code number identified in the box.

CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITY LIST

1. MOBILIZATION
2. SITE PREPARATION
3. EXCAVATION/TRENCHING
4. GRADING (EARTHWORK)
5. PIPING/UTILITIES
6. FOUNDATION
7. FORMING
8. CONCRETE PLACEMENT
9. STEEL ERECTION
10. ROOFING
11. FRAMING
12. MASONRY
13. CARPENTRY
14. ELECTRICAL
15. SCAFFOLDING/ACCESS
16. MECHANICAL
17. PAINTING
18. EQUIPMENT/MAINTENANCE
19. TUNNELING
20. WAREHOUSING/STORAGE
21. PAVING
22. FENCING
23. SIGNING
24. LANDSCAPING/IRRIGATION
25. INSULATION
26. DEMOLITION

b. TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT—Select the equipment involved in the accident from the list below. Enter the name and place the corresponding code number identified in the box. If equipment is not included below, use code 24, "OTHER", and write in specific type of equipment.

CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT

1. GRADER
2. DRAGLINE
3. CRANE (ON VESSEL/BARGE)
4. CRANE (TRACKED)
5. CRANE (RUBBER TIRE)
6. CRANE (VEHICLE MOUNTED)
7. CRANE (TOWER)
8. SHOVEL
9. SCRAPER
10. PUMP TRUCK (CONCRETE)
11. TRUCK (CONCRETE/TRANSIT MIXER)
12. DUMP TRUCK (HIGHWAY)
13. DUMP TRUCK (OFF HIGHWAY)
14. TRUCK (OTHER)
15. FORKLIFT
16. BACKHOE
17. FRONT-END LOADER
18. PILE DRIVER
19. TRACTOR (UTILITY)
20. MANLIFT
21. DOZER
22. DRILL RIG
23. COMPACTOR/VIBRATORY ROLLER
24. OTHER

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 5—INJURY/ILLNESS INFORMATION

a. SEVERITY OF INJURY / ILLNESS - Reference para 2-10 of USACE Suppl 1 to AR 385-40 and enter code and description from list below.

NOI	NO INJURY
FAT	FATALITY
PTL	PERMANENT TOTAL DISABILITY
PPR	PERMANENT PARTIAL DISABILITY
LWD	LOST WORKDAY CASE INVOLVING DAYS AWAY FROM WORK
NLW	RECORDABLE CASE WITHOUT LOST WORKDAYS
RFA	RECORDABLE FIRST AID CASE
NRI	NON-RECORDABLE INJURY

b. ESTIMATED DAYS LOST—Enter the estimated number of workdays the person will lose from work.

c. ESTIMATED DAYS HOSPITALIZED—Enter the estimated number of workdays the person will be hospitalized.

d. ESTIMATED DAYS RESTRICTED DUTY—Enter the estimated number of workdays the person, as a result of the accident, will not be able to perform all of their regular duties.

e. BODY PART AFFECTED—Select the most appropriate primary and when applicable, secondary body part affected from the list below. Enter body part name on line and place the corresponding code letters identifying that body part in the box.

GENERAL BODY AREA	CODE	BODY PART NAME
ARM/WRIST	AB	ARM AND WRIST
	AS	ARM OR WRIST
TRUNK, EXTERNAL MUSCULATURE	B1	SINGLE BREAST
	B2	BOTH BREASTS
	B3	SINGLE TESTICLE
	B4	BOTH TESTICLES
	BA	ABDOMEN
	BC	CHEST
	BL	LOWER BACK
	BP	PENIS
	BS	SIDE
	BU	UPPER BACK
	BW	WAIST
	BZ	TRUNK OTHER
HEAD, INTERNAL	C1	SINGLE EAR INTERNAL
	C2	BOTH EARS INTERNAL
	C3	SINGLE EYE INTERNAL
	C4	BOTH EYES INTERNAL
	CB	BRAIN
	CC	CRANIAL BONES
	CD	TEETH
	CJ	JAW
	CL	THROAT, LARYNX
	CM	MOUTH
	CN	NOSE
	CR	THROAT, OTHER
	CT	TONGUE
	CZ	HEAD OTHER INTERNAL
ELBOW	EB	BOTH ELBOWS
	ES	SINGLE ELBOW
FINGER	F1	FIRST FINGER
	F2	BOTH FIRST FINGERS
	F3	SECOND FINGER
	F4	BOTH SECOND FINGERS
	F5	THIRD FINGER
	F6	BOTH THIRD FINGERS
	F7	FOURTH FINGER
	F8	BOTH FOURTH FINGERS
TOE	G1	GREAT TOE
	G2	BOTH GREAT TOES
	G3	TOE OTHER
	G4	TOES OTHER
HEAD, EXTERNAL	H1	EYE EXTERNAL
	H2	BOTH EYES EXTERNAL
	H3	EAR EXTERNAL
	H4	BOTH EARS EXTERNAL
	HC	CHIN
	HF	FACE
	HK	NECK/THROAT
	HM	MOUTH/LIPS
	HN	NOSE
	HS	SCALP
KNEE	KB	BOTH KNEES
	KS	KNEE
LEG, HIP, ANKLE, BUTTOCK	LB	BOTH LEGS/HIPS/ ANKLES/BUTTOCKS
	LS	SINGLE LEG/HIP ANKLE/BUTTOCK
HAND	MB	BOTH HANDS
	MS	SINGLE HAND
FOOT	PB	BOTH FEET
	PS	SINGLE FOOT
TRUNK, BONES	R1	SINGLE COLLAR BONE
	R2	BOTH COLLAR BONES
	R3	SHOULDER BLADE
	R4	BOTH SHOULDER BLADES
	RB	RIB
	RS	STERNUM (BREAST BONE)
	RV	VERTEBRAE (SPINE; DISC)
	RZ	TRUNK BONES OTHER
SHOULDER	SB	BOTH SHOULDERS
	SS	SINGLE SHOULDER
THUMB	TB	BOTH THUMBS
	TS	SINGLE THUMB
TRUNK, INTERNAL ORGANS	V1	LUNG, SINGLE
	V2	LUNGS, BOTH
	V3	KIDNEY, SINGLE
	V4	KIDNEYS, BOTH
	VH	HEART
	VL	LIVER
	VR	REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS
	VS	STOMACH
	VV	INTESTINES
	VZ	TRUNK, INTERNAL; OTHER

f. NATURE OF INJURY/ILLNESS - Select the most appropriate nature of injury / illness from the list below. This nature of injury / illness shall correspond to the primary body part selected in 5e, above. Enter the nature of injury / illness name on the line and place the corresponding CODE letters in the box provided.

* The injury or condition selected below must be caused by a specific incident or event which occurred during a single work day or shift.

GENERAL NATURE CATEGORY	CODE	NATURE OF INJURY NAME
*TRAUMATIC INJURY OR DISABILITY	TA	AMPUTATION
	TB	BACK STRAIN.
	TC	CONTUSION; BRUISE; ABRASION
	TD	DISLOCATION
	TF	FRACTURE
	TH	HERNIA
	TK	CONCUSSION
	TL	LACERATION, CUT
	TP	PUNCTURE
	TS	STRAIN, MULTIPLE
	TU	BURN, SCALD, SUNBURN
	TI	TRAUMATIC SKIN DISEASES/ CONDITIONS INCLUDING DERMATITIS
	TR	TRAUMATIC RESPIRATORY DISEASE
	TQ	TRAUMATIC FOOD POISONING
	TW	TRAUMATIC TUBERCULOSIS
	TX	TRAUMATIC VIROLOGICAL/ INFECTIVE/PARASITIC DISEASE
	T1	TRAUMATIC CEREBRAL VASCULAR CONDITION/STROKE
	T2	TRAUMATIC HEARING LOSS
	T3	TRAUMATIC HEART CONDITION
	T4	TRAUMATIC MENTAL DISORDER; STRESS; NERVOUS CONDITION
	T8	TRAUMATIC INJURY — OTHER (EXCEPT DISEASE, ILLNESS)

**A nontraumatic physiological harm or loss of capacity produced by systemic infection; continued or repeated stress or strain; exposure to toxins, poisons, fumes, etc.; or other continued and repeated exposures to conditions of the work environment over a long period of time. For practical purposes, an occupational illness/disease or disability is any reported condition which doses not meet the definition of traumatic injury or disability as described above.

GENERAL NATURE CATEGORY	CODE	NATURE OF INJURY NAME
**NON-TRAUMATIC ILLNESS/DISEASE OR DISABILITY		
RESPIRATORY DISEASE	RA	ASBESTOSIS
	RB	BRONCHITIS
	RE	EMPHYSEMA
	RP	PNEUMOCONIOSIS
	RS	SILICOSIS
	R9	RESPIRATORY DISEASE, OTHER
VIROLOGICAL, INFECTIVE & PARASITIC DISEASES	VB	BRUCELLOSIS
	VC	COCCIDIOMYCOSIS
	VF	FOOD POISONING
	VH	HEPATITIS
	VM	MALARIA
	VS	STAPHYLOCOCCUS
	VT	TUBERCULOSIS
	V9	VIROLOGICAL/INFECTIVE/ PARASITIC—OTHER
DISABILITY, OCCUPATIONAL	DA	ARTHRITIS, BURSITIS
	DB	BACK STRAIN, BACK SPRAIN
	DC	CEREBRAL VASCULAR CONDITION; STROKE
	DD	ENDEMIC DISEASE (OTHER THAN CODE TYPES R&S)
	DE	EFFECT OF ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITION
	DH	HEARING LOSS
	DK	HEART CONDITION
	DM	MENTAL DISORDER, EMOTIONAL STRESS NERVOUS CONDITION
	DR	RADIATION
	DS	STRAIN, MULTIPLE
	DU	ULCER
	DV	OTHER VASCULAR CONDITIONS
	D9	DISABILITY, OTHER
SKIN DISEASE OR CONDITION	SB	BIOLOGICAL
	SC	CHEMICAL
	S9	DERMATITIS, UNCLASSIFIED

g. TYPE AND SOURCE OF INJURY/ILLNESS (CAUSE) - Type and Source Codes are used to describe what caused the incident. The Type Code stands for an ACTION and the Source Code for an OBJECT or SUBSTANCE. Together, they form a brief description of how the incident occurred. Where there are two different sources, code the initiating source of the incident (see example 1, below). Examples:

(1) An employee tripped on carpet and struck his head on a desk.
TYPE: 210 (fell on same level) SOURCE: 0110 (walking/working surface)

NOTE: This example would NOT be coded 120 (struck against) and 0140 (furniture).

(2) A Park Ranger contracted dermatitis from contact with poison ivy/ oak.
TYPE: 510 (contact) SOURCE: 0920 (plant)

(3) A lock and dam mechanic punctured his finger with a metal sliver while grinding a turbine blade.
TYPE: 410 (punctured by) SOURCE: 0830 (metal)

(4) An employee was driving a government vehicle when it was struck by another vehicle..
TYPE: 800 (traveling in) SOURCE: 0421 (government-owned vehicle, as driver)

NOTE: The Type Code 800, "Traveling In" is different from the other type codes in that its function is not to identify factors contributing to the injury or fatality, but rather to collect data on the type of vehicle the employee was operating or traveling in at the time of the incident.

Select the most appropriate TYPE and SOURCE identifier from the list below and enter the name on the line and the corresponding code in the appropriate box.

CODE	TYPE OF INJURY NAME
	STRUCK
0110	STRUCK BY
0111	STRUCK BY FALLING OBJECT
0120	STRUCK AGAINST
	FELL, SLIPPED, TRIPPED
0210	FELL ON SAME LEVEL
0220	FELL ON DIFFERENT LEVEL
0230	SLIPPED, TRIPPED (NO FALL)
	CAUGHT
0310	CAUGHT ON
0320	CAUGHT IN
0330	CAUGHT BETWEEN
	PUNCTURED, LACERATED
0410	PUNCTURED BY
0420	CUT BY
0430	STUNG BY
0440	BITTEN BY
	CONTACTED
0510	CONTACTED WITH (INJURED PERSON MOVING)
0520	CONTACTED BY (OBJECT WAS MOVING)
	EXERTED
0610	LIFTED, STRAINED BY (SINGLE ACTION)
0620	STRESSED BY (REPEATED ACTION)
	EXPOSED
0710	INHALED
0720	INGESTED
0730	ABSORBED
0740	EXPOSED TO
0800	TRAVELING IN

CODE	SOURCE OF INJURY NAME
0100	BUILDING OR WORKING AREA
0110	WALKING/WORKING SURFACE (FLOOR, STREET, SIDEWALKS, ETC)
0120	STAIRS, STEPS
0130	LADDER
0140	FURNITURE, FURNISHINGS, OFFICE EQUIPMENT
0150	BOILER, PRESSURE VESSEL
0160	EQUIPMENT LAYOUT (ERGONOMIC)
0170	WINDOWS, DOORS
0180	ELECTRICITY

CODE	SOURCE OF INJURY NAME
0200	ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITION
0210	TEMPERATURE EXTREME (INDOOR)
0220	WEATHER (ICE, RAIN, HEAT, ETC.)
0230	FIRE, FLAME, SMOKE (NOT TOBACCO)
0240	NOISE
0250	RADIATION
0260	LIGHT
0270	VENTILATION
0271	TOBACCO SMOKE
0280	STRESS (EMOTIONAL)
0290	CONFINED SPACE
0300	MACHINE OR TOOL
0310	HAND TOOL (POWERED: SAW, GRINDER, ETC.)
0320	HAND TOOL (NONPOWERED)
0330	MECHANICAL POWER TRANSMISSION APPARATUS
0340	GUARD, SHIELD (FIXED, MOVEABLE, INTERLOCK)
0350	VIDEO DISPLAY TERMINAL
0360	PUMP, COMPRESSOR, AIR PRESSURE TOOL
0370	HEATING EQUIPMENT
0380	WELDING EQUIPMENT
0400	VEHICLE
0411	AS DRIVER OF PRIVATELY OWNED/RENTAL VEHICLE
0412	AS PASSENGER OF PRIVATELY OWNED/RENTAL VEHICLE
0421	DRIVER OF GOVERNMENT VEHICLE
0422	PASSENGER OF GOVERNMENT VEHICLE
0430	COMMON CARRIER (AIRLINE, BUS, ETC.)
0440	AIRCRAFT (NOT COMMERCIAL)
0450	BOAT, SHIP, BARGE
0500	MATERIAL HANDLING EQUIPMENT
0510	EARTHMOVER (TRACTOR, BACKHOE, ETC.)
0520	CONVEYOR (FOR MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT)
0530	ELEVATOR, ESCALATOR, PERSONNEL HOIST
0540	HOIST, SLING CHAIN, JACK
0550	CRANE
0551	FORKLIFT
0560	HANDTRUCK, DOLLY
0600	DUST, VAPOR, ETC.
0610	DUST (SILICA, COAL, ETC.)
0620	FIBERS
0621	ASBESTOS
0630	GASES
0631	CARBON MONOXIDE
0640	MIST, STEAM, VAPOR, FUME
0641	WELDING FUMES
0650	PARTICLES (UNIDENTIFIED)
0700	CHEMICAL, PLASTIC, ETC.
0711	DRY CHEMICAL—CORROSIVE
0712	DRY CHEMICAL—TOXIC
0713	DRY CHEMICAL—EXPLOSIVE
0714	DRY CHEMICAL—FLAMMABLE
0721	LIQUID CHEMICAL—CORROSIVE
0722	LIQUID CHEMICAL—TOXIC
0723	LIQUID CHEMICAL—EXPLOSIVE
0724	LIQUID CHEMICAL—FLAMMABLE
0730	PLASTIC
0740	WATER
0750	MEDICINE
0800	INANIMATE OBJECT
0810	BOX, BARREL, ETC.
0820	PAPER
0830	METAL ITEM, MINERAL
0831	NEEDLE
0840	GLASS
0850	SCRAP, TRASH
0860	WOOD
0870	FOOD
0880	CLOTHING, APPAREL, SHOES
0900	ANIMATE OBJECT
0911	DOG
0912	OTHER ANIMAL
0920	PLANT
0930	INSECT
0940	HUMAN (VIOLENCE)
0950	HUMAN (COMMUNICABLE DISEASE)
0960	BACTERIA, VIRUS (NOT HUMAN CONTACT)

CODE	SOURCE OF INJURY NAME
1000	PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT
1010	PROTECTIVE CLOTHING, SHOES, GLASSES, GOGGLES
1020	RESPIRATOR, MASK
1021	DIVING EQUIPMENT
1030	SAFETY BELT, HARNESS
1040	PARACHUTE

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 6 — PUBLIC FATALITY

a. ACTIVITY AT TIME OF ACCIDENT—Select the activity being performed at the time of the accident from the list below. Enter the activity name on the line and the corresponding number in the box. If the activity performed is not identified on the list, select from the *most* appropriate primary activity area (water related, non-water related or other activity), the code number for "Other", and write in the activity being performed at the time of the accident.

WATER RELATED RECREATION

1. Sailing
2. Boating—powered
3. Boating—unpowered
4. Water skiing
5. Fishing from boat
6. Fishing from bank dock or pier
7. Fishing while wading
8. Swimming/supervised area
9. Swimming/designated area
10. Swimming/other area
11. Underwater activities (skin diving, scuba, etc.)
12. Wading
13. Attempted rescue
14. Hunting from boat
15. Other

NON-WATER RELATED RECREATION

16. Hiking and walking
17. Climbing (general)
18. Camping/picnicking authorized area
19. Camping/picnicking unauthorized area
20. Guided tours
21. Hunting
22. Playground equipment
23. Sports/summer (baseball, football, etc.)
24. Sports/winter (skiing, sledding, snowmobiling etc.)
25. Cycling (bicycle, motorcycle, scooter)
26. Gliding
27. Parachuting
28. Other non-water related

OTHER ACTIVITIES

29. Unlawful acts (fights, riots, vandalism, etc.)
30. Food preparation/serving
31. Food consumption
32. Housekeeping
33. Sleeping
34. Pedestrian struck by vehicle
35. Pedestrian other acts
36. Suicide
37. "Other" activities

b. PERSONAL FLOTATION DEVICE USED—If fatality was water-related was the victim wearing a person flotation device? Mark the appropriate box.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 7—MOTOR VEHICLE ACCIDENT

a. TYPE OF VEHICLE—Mark appropriate box for each vehicle involved. If more than one vehicle of the same type is involved, mark both halves of the appropriate box. USACE vehicle(s) involved shall be marked in left half of appropriate box.

b. TYPE OF COLLISION—Mark appropriate box.

c. SEAT BELT—Mark appropriate box.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 8—PROPERTY/ MATERIAL INVOLVED

a. NAME OF ITEM—Describe all property involved in accident. Property/material involved means material which is damaged or whose use or misuse contributed to the accident. Include the name, type, model; also include the National Stock Number (NSN) whenever applicable.

b. OWNERSHIP—Enter ownership for each item listed. (Enter one of the following: *USACE; OTHER GOVERNMENT; CONTRACTOR: PRIVATE)*

c. $ AMOUNT OF DAMAGE—Enter the total estimated dollar amount of damage (parts and labor), if any.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 9—VESSEL/ FLOATING PLANT ACCIDENT

a. TYPE OF VESSEL/FLOATING PLANT—Select the most appropriate vessel/floating plant from list below. Enter name and place corresponding number in box. If item is not listed below, enter item number for "OTHER" and write in specific type of vessel/ floating plant.

VESSEL/FLOATING PLANTS

1. ROW BOAT
2. SAIL BOAT
3. MOTOR BOAT
4. BARGE
5. DREDGE/HOPPER
6. DREDGE/SIDE CASTING
7. DREDGE/DIPPER
8. DREDGE/CLAMSHELL, BUCKET
9. DREDGE/PIPE LINE
10. DREDGE/DUST PAN
11. TUG BOAT
12. OTHER

b. COLLISION/MISHAP—Select from the list below the object(s) that contributed to the accident or were damaged in the accident.

COLLISION/MISHAP

1. COLLISION W/OTHER VESSEL
2. UPPER GUIDE WALL
3. UPPER LOCK GATES
4. LOCK WALL
5. LOWER LOCK GATES
6. LOWER GUIDE WALL
7. HAULAGE UNIT
8. BREAKING TOW
9. TOW BREAKING UP
10. SWEPT DOWN ON DAM
11. BUOY/DOLPHIN/CELL
12. WHARF OR DOCK
13. OTHER

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 10—ACCIDENT DESCRIPTION

DESCRIBE ACCIDENT—Fully describe the accident. Give the sequence of events that describe what happened leading up to and including the accident. Fully identify personnel and equipment involved and their role(s) in the accident. Ensure that relationships between personnel and equipment are clearly specified. Continue on blank sheets if necessary and attach to this report.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 11—CAUSAL FACTORS

a. Review thoroughly. Answer each question by marking the appropriate block. If any answer is yes, explain in item 13 below. Consider, as a minimum, the following:

(1) DESIGN—Did inadequacies associated with the building or work site play a role? Would an improved design or layout of the equipment or facilities reduce the likelihood of similar accidents? Were the tools or other equipment designed and intended for the task at hand?

(2) INSPECTION/MAINTENANCE—Did inadequately or improperly maintained equipment, tools, workplace, etc. create or worsen any hazards that contributed to the accident? Would better equipment, facility, work site or work activity inspections have helped avoid the accident?

(3) PERSON'S PHYSICAL CONDITION—Do you feel that the accident would probably not have occurred if the employee was in "good" physical condition? If the person involved in the accident had been in better physical condition, would the accident have been less severe or avoided altogether? Was over exertion a factor?

(4) OPERATING PROCEDURES—Did a lack of or inadequacy within established operating procedures contribute to the accident? Did any aspect of the procedures introduce any hazard to, or increase the risk associated with the work process? Would establishment or improvement of operating procedures reduce the likelihood of similar accidents?

(5) JOB PRACTICES—Were any of the provisions of the Safety and Health Requirements Manual (EM 385-1-1) violated? Was the task being accomplished in a manner which was not in compliance with an established job hazard analysis or activity hazard analysis? Did any established job practice (including EM 385-1-1) fail to adequately address the task or work process? Would better job practices improve the safety of the task?

(6) HUMAN FACTORS—Was the person under undue stress (either internal or external to the job)? Did the task tend toward overloading the capabilities of the person; i.e., did the job require tracking and reacting to many external inputs such as displays, alarms, or signals? Did the arrangement of the workplace tend to interfere with efficient task performance? Did the task require reach, strength, endurance, agility, etc., at or beyond the capabilities of the employee? Was the work environment ill-adapted to the person? Did the person need more training, experience, or practice in doing the task? Was the person inadequately rested to perform safely?

(7) ENVIRONMENTAL FACTORS—Did any factors such as moisture, humidity, rain, snow, sleet, hail, ice, fog, cold, heat, sun, temperature changes, wind, tides, floods, currents, dust, mud, glare, pressure changes, lightning, etc., play a part in the accident?

(8) CHEMICAL AND PHYSICAL AGENT FACTORS—Did exposure to chemical agents (either single shift exposure or long-term exposure) such as dusts, fibers (asbestos, etc.), silica, gases (carbon monoxide, chlorine, etc.,), mists, steam, vapors, fumes, smoke, other particulates, liquid or dry chemicals that are corrosive, toxic, explosive or flammable, by-products of combustion or physical agents such as noise, ionizing radiation, non-ionizing radiation (UV radiation created during welding, etc.) contribute to the accident/incident?

(9) OFFICE FACTORS—Did the fact that the accident occurred in an office setting or to an office worker have a bearing on its cause? For example, office workers tend to have less experience and training in performing tasks such as lifting office furniture. Did physical hazards within the office environment contribute to the hazard?

(10) SUPPORT FACTORS—Was the person using an improper tool for the job? Was inadequate time available or utilized to safely accomplish the task? Were less than adequate personnel resources (in terms of employee skills, number of workers, and adequate supervision) available to get the job done properly? Was funding available, utilized, and adequate to provide proper tools, equipment, personnel, site preparation, etc?

(11) PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT—Did the person fail to use appropriate personal protective equipment (gloves, eye protection, hard-toed shoes, respirator, etc.) for the task or environment? Did protective equipment provided or worn fail to provide adequate protection from the hazard(s)? Did lack of or inadequate maintenance of protective gear contribute to the accident?

(12) DRUGS/ALCOHOL—Is there any reason to believe the person's mental or physical capabilities, judgement, etc., were impaired or altered by the use of drugs or alcohol? Consider the effects of prescription medicine and over the counter medications as well as illicit drug use. Consider the effect of drug or alcohol induced "hangovers".

b. WRITTEN JOB/ACTIVITY HAZARD ANALYSIS—Was a written Job/Activity Hazard Analysis completed for the task being performed at the time of the accident? Mark the appropriate box. *If one was performed, attach a copy of the analysis to the report.*

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 12—TRAINING

a. WAS PERSON TRAINED TO PERFORM ACTIVITY/TASK?—For the purpose of this section "trained" means the person has been provided the necessary information (either formal and/or on-the-job (OJT) training) to competently perform the activity/task in a safe and healthful manner.

b. TYPE OF TRAINING—Mark the appropriate box that best indicates the type of training; (classroom or on-the-job) that the injured person received before the accident happened.

c. DATE OF MOST RECENT TRAINING—Enter the month, day, and year of the last *formal* training completed that covered the activity-task being performed at the time of the accident.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 13—CAUSES

a. DIRECT CAUSES—The direct cause is that single factor which most directly lead to the accident. See examples below.

b. INDIRECT CAUSES—Indirect causes are those factors which contributed to but did not directly initiate the occurrence of the accident.

Examples for section 13:

a. Employee was dismantling scaffold and fell 12 feet from unguarded opening.
Direct cause: failure to provide fall protection at elevation.
Indirect causes: failure to enforce USACE safety requirements; improper training/motivation of employee (possibility that employee was not knowledgeable of USACE fall protection requirements or was lax in his attitude towards safety); failure to ensure provision of positive fall protection whenever elevated; failure to address fall protection during scaffold dismantling in phase hazard analysis.

b. Private citizen had stopped his vehicle at intersection for red light when vehicle was struck in rear by USACE vehicle. (note USACE vehicle was in proper/safe working condition).
Direct cause: failure of USACE driver to maintain control of and stop USACE vehicle within safe distance.
Indirect cause: Failure of employee to pay attention to driving (defensive driving).

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 14—ACTION TO ELIMINATE CAUSE(S)

DESCRIPTION—Fully describe all the actions taken, anticipated, and recommended to eliminate the cause(s) and prevent reoccurrence of similar accidents/illnesses. Continue on blank sheets of paper if necessary to fully explain and attach to the completed report form.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 15—DATES FOR ACTION

a. BEGIN DATE—Enter the date when the corrective action(s) identified in Section 14 will begin.

b. COMPLETE DATE—Enter the date when the corrective action(s) identified in Section 14 will be completed.

c. TITLE AND SIGNATURE—Enter the title and signature of supervisor completing the accident report. For a GOVERNMENT employee accident/illness the immediate supervisor will complete and sign the report. For PUBLIC accidents the USACE Project Manager/Area Engineer responsible for the USACE property where the accident happened shall complete and sign the report. For CONTRACTOR accidents the Contractor's project manager shall complete and sign the report and provide to the USACE supervisor responsible for oversight of that contractor activity. This USACE Supervisor shall also sign the report. Upon entering the information required in 15.d, 15.e and 15.f below, the responsible USACE supervisor shall forward the report for management review as indicated in Section 16.

d. DATE SIGNED—Enter the month, day, and year that the report was signed by the responsible supervisor.

e. ORGANIZATION NAME—For GOVERNMENT employee accidents enter the USACE organization name (Division, Branch, Section, etc.) of the injured employee. For PUBLIC accidents enter the USACE organization name for the person identified in block 15.c. For CONTRACTOR accidents enter the USACE organization name for the USACE office responsible for providing contract administration oversight.

f. OFFICE SYMBOL—Enter the latest complete USACE Office Symbol for the USACE organization identified in block 15.e.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 16—MANAGEMENT REVIEW (1st)

1ST REVIEW—Each USACE FOA shall determine who will provide 1st management review. The responsible USACE supervisor in section 15.c shall forward the completed report to the USACE office designated as the 1st Reviewer by the FOA. Upon receipt, the Chief of the Office shall review the completed report, mark the appropriate box, provide substantive comments, sign, date, and forward to the FOA Staff Chief (2nd review) for review and comment.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 17—MANAGEMENT REVIEW (2nd)

2ND REVIEW—The FOA Staff Chief (i.e., FOA Chief of Construction, Operations, Engineering, Planning, etc.) shall mark the appropriate box, review the completed report, provide substantive comments, sign, date, and return to the FOA Safety and Occupational Health Office.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SECTION 18—SAFETY AND OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH REVIEW

3RD REVIEW—The FOA Safety and Occupational Health Office shall review the completed report, mark the appropriate box, ensure that any inadequacies, discrepancies, etc, are rectified by the responsible supervisor and management reviewers, provide substantive comments, sign, date and forward to the FOA Commander for review, comment, and signature.

INSTRUCTION FOR SECTION 19—COMMAND APPROVAL

4TH REVIEW—The FOA Commander shall (to include the person designated Acting Commander in his absence) review the completed report, comment if required, sign, date, and forward the report to the FOA Safety and Occupational Health Office. Signature authority shall not be delegated.

Summary Instructions Guide for Completing USACE Contractor Monthly Summary Record of Injuries/Illnesses and Work Hour Exposure

1. How do I determine the Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) or North American Industry Classification System (NAICS) code for the prime, sub, and supply contractors?

You determine the SIC code by using the Standard Industrial Classification Manual and the NAIC code by using the North American Industry Classification System Manual. Both codes are products of the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget. You may contact your nearest OSHA office or State agency for help in determining your SIC or NAIC code.

2. Recordable Injuries/Illness which must be included in the Record

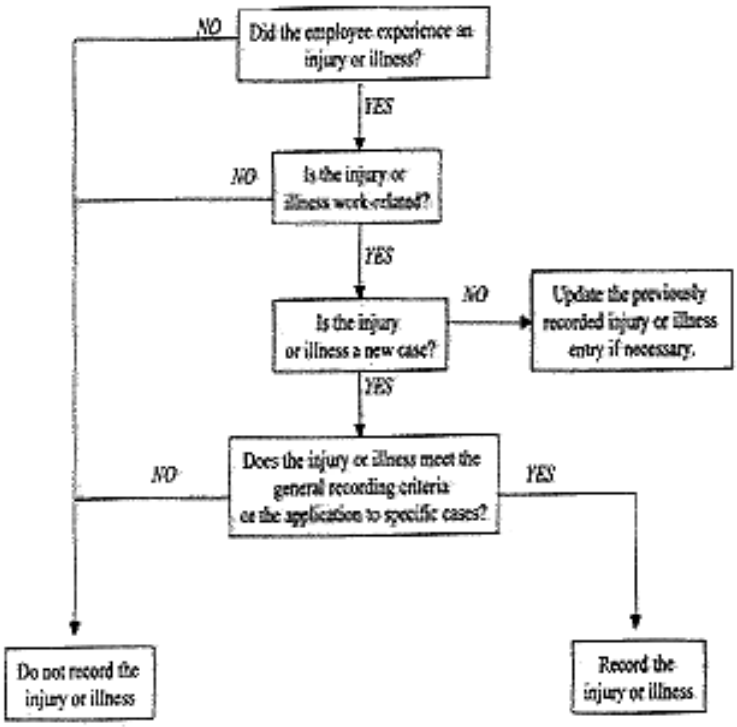
a. Contractor must keep records of fatalities, injuries, and illnesses that are:

Work related
New case
Meet 1 or more of the recording requirements listed below:

*Death
*Days away from Work after the date of injury
*Restricted work or transfer to another job
*Medical Treatment beyond first aid
*Loss of consciousness
*Needlestick injuries and cuts from sharps that are contaminated with another person's blood or other potentially infectious material.
*Medical removal under medical surveillance requirements of an OSHA Standard
*Occupational hearing loss if the employee has experienced a work-related STS in hearing in one or both ears and the employee's total hearing level is 25 dB or more above audiometric zero in same ear(s) as the STS
*Work-related tuberculosis Cases

b. How do I decide whether a particular injury or illness is recordable?

The decision tree for recording work-related injuries and illnesses below shows the steps involved in making this determination.



c. When is an injury/illness considered work-related?

An injury/illness is considered work-related if an event or exposure in the work environment caused or contributed to the condition or significantly aggravated a preexisting condition. Work relatedness is presumed for injuries and illnesses resulting from events or exposures occurring in the workplace, unless an exception specifically applies. See 29 CFR Part 1904.5(b)(2) for exceptions.

3. Land Based Activities

The work environment for USACE contractors is defined as the physical location of the project site(s).

4. Marine Activities

For marine activity accident reporting only, the contractor's responsibility for reporting work-related accidents extends to the following personnel and equipment:

a. Prime Contractor and subcontractor personnel and equipment (P&E) performing work in direct support of the contracted activity. This includes:

(1) Contractor P&E that have reported on-station in a contract-defined work area to begin work under project-funded pay or subcontract status.

(2) Contractor P&E at all sites leased or used during contract work for storage, staging, anchorage, transiting, or deposit of materials.
(3) Contractor P&E during mobilization or demobilization under terms of the contract.

b. Service and supply vendors when they come under the direct operational control of a prime or subcontractor vessel master or project superintendent, such as:

(1) When making final approach to make up to Contractor vessels/plant
(2) While their vessels are made up to Contractor vessels, structures, or equipment.
(3) During delivery of materials or on-board a vessel.
(4) When casting off and navigating away from Contractor vessels/plant.

5. What is medical treatment?

Medical treatment includes managing and caring for a patient for the purpose of combating disease or disorder. The following are not considered medical treatments and are not recordable:

*Visits to a doctor or health care professional solely for observation or counseling;
*Diagnosis procedures, including administering prescription medications that are used solely for diagnostic purposes; and
*Any procedure that can be labeled first aid.

6. What is First Aid?

First aid means only those treatments specifically listed in 1904.7. They are:

a. Using non-prescription medication at non-prescription strength (for medications available in both prescription and non-prescription form, a recommendation by a physician or other licensed health care professional to use a non-prescription medication at prescription strength is considered medical treatment for recordkeeping purposes);

b. Administering tetanus immunizations (other immunizations, such as Hepatitis B vaccine or rabies vaccine, are considered medical treatment);

c. Cleaning, flushing or soaking wounds on the surface of the skin;

d. Using wound coverings such as bandages, Band-Aids™, gauze pads, etc., or using butterfly bandages or Steri-Strips™ (other wound closing devices such as sutures, staples, etc., are considered medical treatment);

e. Using hot or cold therapy;

f. Using any non-rigid means of support, such as elastic bandages, wraps, non-rigid back belts, etc. (devices with rigid stays or other systems designed to immobilize parts of the body are considered medical treatment for recordkeeping purposes);

g. Using temporary immobilization devices while transporting an accident victim (e.g., splints, slings, neck collars, back boards, etc.).

h. Drilling of a fingernail or toenail to relieve pressure, or draining fluid from a blister;

I. Using eye patches;

j. Removing foreign bodies from the eye using only irrigation or a cotton swab;

k. Removing splinters or foreign material from areas other than the eye by irrigation, tweezers, cotton swabs or other simple means;

l. Using finger guards;

m. Using massages (physical therapy or chiropractic treatment are considered medical treatment for recordkeeping purposes); or

n. Drinking fluids for relief of heat stress.

7. How do you decide if the case involved restricted work?

Restricted work activity occurs when, as the result of a work-related injury/illness, an employer or health care professional keeps, or recommends keeping, an employee from doing the routine functions of his or her job or from working the full workday that the employee would have been scheduled to work before the injury or illness occurred.

8. How do you count the number of days of restricted work activity on the number of days away from work?

Count the number of calendar days the employee was on restricted work activity or was away from work as a result of the recordable injury/illness. Do not count the day on which the injury/illness occurred in this number. Begin counting days from the day after the incident occurs. If a single injury/illness involving both days away from work and days of restricted work activity, enter the total number of days for each. You may stop counting days of restricted work activity or days away from work once the total of either or the combination of both reaches 180 days.

8. What if the outcome changes after the record is submitted to the Contracting Officer?

If the outcome or extent of injury/illness changes after the record has been submitted to the Contracting Officer, the record shall be revised and resubmitted to the Contracting Officer on or before the date the subsequent monthly record is to be submitted.

9. What is an Injury?

An injury is any wound or damage to the body resulting from an event in the work environment.

Examples: Cuts, puncture, laceration, abrasion, fracture, bruise, contusion, chipped tooth, amputation, insect bite, electrocution, or a thermal, chemical, electrical, or radiation burn. Sprain and strain injuries to muscles, joints, and connective tissues are classified as injuries when they result from a slip, trip, fall or other similar accidents.

10. What is an Illness?

a. Skin diseases or disorders

Skin diseases or disorders are illnesses involving the worker's skin that are caused by work exposure to chemicals, plants, or other substances.

Examples: Contact dermatitis, eczema, or rash caused by primary irritants and sensitizers or poisonous plants; oil acne; fraction blisters, chrome ulcers; inflammation of the skin.

b. Respiratory conditions

Respiratory conditions are illnesses associated with breathing hazardous biological agents, chemicals, dust, gases, vapors, or fumes at work.

Examples: Silicosis, asbestosis, pneumonitis, pharyngitis, rhinitis, or acute congestion; farmer's lung, beryllium disease, tuberculosis, occupational asthma, reactive airways dysfunction syndrome (RADS), chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), hypersensitivity pneumonitis, toxic inhalation injury, such as metal fume fever, chronic obstructive bronchitis, and other pneumoconiosis.

c. Poisoning

Poisoning includes disorders evidenced by abnormal concentrations of toxic substances in blood, other tissues, other bodily fluids, or the breath that are caused by the ingestion or absorption of toxic substances into the body.

Examples: Poisoning by lead, mercury, cadmium, arsenic, or other metals; poisoning by carbon monoxide, hydrogen sulfide, or other gases; poisoning by benzene, benzol, carbon tetrachloride, or other organic solvents; poisoning by insecticide sprays, such as parathion or lead arsenate; poisoning by other chemicals, such as formaldehyde.

d. Hearing loss

Noise-induced hearing loss is defined for recordkeeping purposes as a change in hearing threshold relative to the baseline audiogram of an average of 10 dB or more in either ear at 2,000, 3,000, and 4,000 hertz, and the employee's totally hearing level is 25 decibels (dB) or more above audiometric zero (also averaged at 2,000, 3,000, and 4,000 hertz) in the same ear(s).

e. All other illnesses

All other occupational illnesses.

Examples: Heatstroke, sunstroke, heat exhaustion, heat stress and other effects of environmental heat; freezing, frostbite, and other effects of exposure to low temperatures; decompression sickness; effects of ionizing radiation (isotopes, x-rays, radium); effects of nonionizing radiation (welding flash, ultra-violet rays, lasers); anthrax; bloodborne pathogenic diseases, such as AIDS, HIV, hepatitis B or hepatitis C; brucellosis; malignant or benign tumors; histoplasmosis; coccidioidomycosis.

11. How do you determine the total hours worked by all employees?

a. Land Based Activities

Include hours prime and sub-contractor employees worked on the project work site by salaried, hourly, part-time, and seasonal workers, as well as hours worked by other workers subject to the day-to-day supervision by prime and sub-contractor employees (example: temporary help services workers). Also include the hours worked by supply contractor employees associated with materials, services, or equipment provided by suppliers (example: concrete supply drivers and helpers delivering concrete for placement on the work site, dump truck drivers while on site delivering or removing materials, other supply contractor employees who are performing an on-site service) while on the project work site.

b. Marine Activities

For marine activity reporting only, the contractor's responsibility for reporting work-related hours of exposure extends to the following personnel and equipment:

(1) Prime Contractor and subcontractor personnel and equipment (P&E) performing work in direct support of the contracted activity. This includes:

(a) Contractor P&E that have reported on-station in a contract-defined work area to begin work under project-funded pay or subcontract status.
(b) Contractor P&E at all sites leased or used during contract work for storage, staging, anchorage, transiting, or deposit of materials.
(c) Contractor P&E during mobilization or demobilization under terms of the contract.

(2) Service and supply vendors when they come under the direct operational control of a prime or subcontractor vessel master or project superintendent, such as:

(a) When making final approach to make up to Contractor vessels/plant.
(b) While their vessels are made up to Contractor vessels, structures, or equipment.
(c) During delivery of materials or on-board a vessel.
(d) When casting off and navigating away from Contractor vessels/plant.

Do not include vacation, sick leave, holidays, or any other non-work time, even if employees were paid for it. If the contractor keeps records of only hours paid or if the contractor has employees who are not paid by the hour (salaried employees), estimate the hours that the employees actually worked on the project. If this number isn't available, you can use the optional worksheet below to estimate it.

Optional Worksheet

_____ Find the number of all prime and sub-contractor full-time employees on the project site as defined above for both land based and marine activities for the month.

X_____ Multiply by the number of work hours for a full-time employee in a month.

_____ This is the number of full-time hours worked.

+_____ Add the number of any overtime hours as well as the hours worked by other employees (part-time, temporary, seasonal, supply contractors, etc.)

_____ Round the answer to the next highest whole number. Write the rounded number in the Monthly Exposure Hours blank.

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 01850

DRAWING INDEX

07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 INDEX OF CONTRACT DRAWINGS

PART 2 PRODUCTS (This Division not used)

PART 3 EXECUTION (This Division not used)

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 01850

DRAWING INDEX
07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 INDEX OF CONTRACT DRAWINGS

The list of drawings below are included as a part to this Solicitation.

Norfolk District File No.	Title
H-10-23-15(1)	TITLE SHEET
H-10-23-15(2)	PLANS FOR DREDGING
H-10-23-15(3)	PLANS FOR DREDGING
H-10-23-15(4)	PLANS FOR DREDGING
H-10-23-15(5)	PLANS FOR DREDGING
H-10-23-15(6)	PLANS FOR DREDGING
H-10-23-15(7)	PLANS FOR DREDGING
H-10-23-15(8)	PLANS FOR DREDGING
H-10-23-15(9)	PLANS FOR DREDGING
H-10-23-15(10)	PLANS FOR DREDGING
H-10-23-15(11)	PLANS FOR DREDGING
H-10-23-15(12)	PLANS FOR DREDGING
H-10-23-15(13)	PLANS FOR DREDGING

PART 2 PRODUCTS (This Division not used)

PART 3 EXECUTION (This Division not used)

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 02 - SITE CONSTRUCTION

SECTION 02325

DREDGING

07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTALS
1.2 References
1.3 PLANT
1.3.1 Minimum Plant Requirements and Required Certifications
1.4 CHARACTER OF MATERIALS

PART 2 PRODUCTS (This Division Not Used)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF DREDGED MATERIAL
3.1.1 HOPPER DREDGE REQUIREMENTS
3.1.2 Load Measuring and Recording
3.1.3 Temporary Malfunctions
3.1.4 Warning Signs
3.1.5 Examination of Dredge Hopper Bins
3.2 QUALITY CONTROL
3.2.1 Inspections and Testing Requirements
3.2.2 Equipment and Machinery Requirements
3.2.3 Miscellaneous Inspections and Test Records
3.2.4 Reporting and Certificates
3.3 DAILY REPORTING REQUIREMENT
3.4 REQUIRED DREDGING PRISM, OVERDEPTH, AND SIDE SLOPES
3.4.1 Required Dredging Prism
3.4.2 Overdepth
3.4.3 Side Slopes
3.4.4 Method of Obtaining Soundings
3.4.5 Basis of Surveys
3.4.6 Placement Area Surveys

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 02325

DREDGING
07/05

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTALS

The Contractor shall make submittals for the following listed reports and certificates as required by the specifications. The Contracting Officer may request submittals in addition to those specified when deemed necessary to adequately describe the work. Units of weights and measures used on all submittals shall be the same as those used in the contract drawings. Each submittal shall be complete and in sufficient detail to allow ready determination of compliance with contract requirements. Prior to submittal, all items shall be checked and approved by the Contractor's Quality Control (CQC) representative and each item shall be stamped, signed, and dated by the CQC representative indicating action taken in accordance with SECTION 01451. Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-07 Certificates

Equipment and Machinery Operator Authorization

The Contractor shall submit a list of designated personnel qualified and authorized to operate machinery and equipment. The list shall be maintained at the job site in a current status at all times.

1.2 References

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

ENGINEERING MANUALS

EM 385-1-1	(2003) Safety and Health Requirements Manual
EM 1110-2-1003	(2002) Hydrographic Surveying Manual; Change 1 2004

1.3 PLANT

A listing of all dredging plant, equipment and machinery, hopper and navigation monitoring systems, and all supporting plant utilized to accomplish the work, shall be submitted and subject to inspection and approval by the Government and kept in good condition at all times. The listing shall include year and manufacturer, operational capacities, safety features, operating and licensing requirements for operators, and a description where and how the item of equipment or plant will be employed

in the work. All floating plant and working platforms shall be equipped with walkways and guardrails conforming to Corps of Engineers Manual EM 385-1-1 and meet OSHA requirements for worker safety. Any leaks or deficiencies shall be promptly and properly repaired. No reduction in the capacity of the plant, once inspected and approved by the Government to be sufficient for employment on the work, shall be made except by written permission of the Contracting Officer. The measure of the "Capacity of Plant" shall be its actual performance on the work to which these specifications apply.

1.3.1 Minimum Plant Requirements and Required Certifications

Due to the safety and environmental concerns related to performing the scheduled work and the required necessary production rate to complete the project as scheduled, the Contractor shall submit with his bid signed and notarized certificates that verify his plant to be used on the scheduled work meets all of the safe operating and production capacity requirements as specified. The signed and notarized certifications shall be accompanied by Coast Guard certified documentation indicating the plant to be employed on the work is currently licensed and the notarized verification documentation to be submitted clearly indicates on which projects the plant has been used to dredge similar material at a production rate sufficient to accomplish the work as scheduled for this contract. The Government will conduct a Pre-Award Survey for which all certifications and verification documents of the Contractor will be reviewed for compliance. Inadequate documentation and insufficient plant certifications to meet requirements will be cause for rejection of the bid. Additionally, as a part of the Pre-Award Survey, the Contractor must make all intended plant available for inspection and acceptance to accomplish the work as scheduled for this contract. Once the dredge and plant certified as specified above has been inspected and accepted by the Government and mobilized to the project site, it shall not be removed from the project site until all scheduled work for the contract has been satisfactorily performed by the Contractor and accepted by the Government, except by written permission of the Contracting Officer.

1.4 CHARACTER OF MATERIALS

The Contractor will encounter shoaling in areas previously dredged and new work material in other portions of the dredging area; however, for the purpose of bidding and payment, all material to be removed will be considered new work dredging. Sub-surface soil investigations of the Channel to determine the character of material have been made and results are included in SECTION 01055. Locations of the respective sub-surface investigation borings are indicated on the drawings. Bidders are expected to examine the site of work and decide for themselves the character of the materials. The records of previous dredging are available in the Operations Branch at the Norfolk District. The Government does not warrant the accuracy of the records of previous dredging. Local minor variations in the subsurface materials are to be expected and, if encountered, will not be considered as being materially different within the purview of Contract Clause "DIFFERING SITE CONDITIONS".

PART 2 PRODUCTS (This Division Not Used)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF DREDGED MATERIAL

3.1.1 HOPPER DREDGE REQUIREMENTS

The Contractor shall perform the scheduled work with a hopper dredge and place the dredged material in the Government furnished Dam Neck Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site, Cell 1, as indicated and specified. The Contractor shall deposit the dredged material near the center of the Cell as practical and assure that the continuing placement procedures are performed in a manner such that placement of material is advanced to uniformly place and evenly spread the dredged material throughout the Cell. Once deposited the dredged material shall not form mounds above a depth of 35 feet below mean lower low water. The Contractor shall use the approved dredge positioning system to assure accurate placement of dredged material in the placement area as indicated. Each hopper dredge shall be equipped with necessary equipment, including shore stations if required, to produce a computer-generated graphic plot to an appropriate scale of the vessel's geographic position at all times the vessel is working under the contract. Limits of dredging and placement areas shall be shown on each plot. The date and time shall be printed automatically on the plot at close enough intervals to interpolate the dredge's position at any time. Travel between the dredging and placement areas may be shown to a different scale or in a different mode than in the dredging areas. The type of operation (dumping, travel, or other) shall be shown. Each load shall be numbered serially and the respective serial number recorded in the Daily Report with time, date, and x- and y- coordinate location where placed. The Contractor's equipment shall include a depth measuring capability for the drag arm or cutter head that interfaces with the positioning equipment as specified above. This depth measuring indicator shall measure the depth of the drag arm or cutter head at all times during dredging and transport. Flagging or marking of the winch cables is not an acceptable option to fulfill this requirement. The depth measuring indicator shall be in plain view of drag tenders, Contractor quality control representatives, and Government inspectors. The results from constant measurement of the drag arm or cutter head depth indicator shall be produced in the computer-generated graphic plot as specified above and certified by the Contractor's CQC prior to including in the Daily Report of Operations for submittal to the Contracting Officer. The Contracting Officer may verify or have the Contractor's personnel verify the automatically plotted data using normal piloting and navigation methods at any time. Any discrepancies shall be evaluated and corrected at once.

3.1.2 Load Measuring and Recording

Dredged material removed shall be measured and recorded automatically by the weight of dredged material in the bin, based on vessel displacement. If the measurement equipment includes a capability for automatic conversion from weight measurement to volume measure, the conversion factors, method, and meters or other devices shall be subject to approval of the Contracting Officer. The Contracting Officer may perform bin surveys for comparison with the load meter measurements furnished by the Contractor.

3.1.3 Temporary Malfunctions

Should the vessel displacement load measurement, or position plotting

equipment become inoperable, the Contractor shall stop all work until repairs are made.

3.1.4 Warning Signs

The Contractor shall erect and maintain at his own expense suitable navigation warning signs at any points necessary to prevent hazards to navigation.

3.1.5 Examination of Dredge Hopper Bins

The hopper bins shall be examined and determined to be in good condition to reasonably expect them to last throughout the job without wearing to the extent of allowing leaks. In the event that leaks occur anywhere in the hopper bins, the Contractor will be required to immediately discontinue using the respective equipment until the leaks are stopped. The Contractor shall also be required to recover at no cost to the Government any material improperly placed because of a leak or leaks in the equipment.

3.2 QUALITY CONTROL

The Contractor shall establish and maintain a quality control system for all dredging operations to assure compliance with contract requirements and record his inspections and tests under this system.

3.2.1 Inspections and Testing Requirements

Inspections and testing shall be the responsibility of the Contractor, subject to the approval of the Contracting Officer.

3.2.2 Equipment and Machinery Requirements

All measuring equipment, global positioning systems (GPS) and other electronic positioning systems, data plotting and recording equipment, and the procedures associated with each respective item of equipment, shall be subject to the approval of the Contracting Officer. Verification of current calibration for each respective item of equipment, as approved by the Contracting Officer, shall be provided by the Contractor prior to use of the equipment on the work. All records produced by the equipment shall be inspected and certified as complete by the Contractor's Quality Control Representative and included as a part of the Daily Quality Control Report.

3.2.3 Miscellaneous Inspections and Test Records

A copy of the records of all inspections and tests, as well as record of corrective action taken, shall be included in the Control Plan and furnished to the Contracting Officer as a part of the Daily Quality Control Report. The Contractor shall establish and maintain quality control for the shoreline work and all other operations in connection with the work in the field to assure compliance with contract requirements. The Contractor shall inspect for compliance with contract requirements and record the inspection of all operations including but not limited to the following:

a. The material is placed within the Dam Neck Ocean Dredged Material Site to the lines, grade, and tolerances specified.

b. All equipment used in the work is approved and in satisfactory working condition.

c. Checks to insure safe work practices around turtles and other endangered and protected species, structures and the public is performed as specified.

d. Insure all equipment and construction materials have been removed from completed work segments.

All results of inspections shall be documented with narrative explanations and photographs as necessary to document the conditions of field quality. The results and supporting data shall be recorded and provided by the Contractor in the Daily Report of Operations.

3.2.4 Reporting and Certificates

All measuring, plotting, and recording equipment and procedures shall be subject to the approval of the Contracting Officer. Verification of their calibration, certified by the Contractor's Quality Control Representative, shall be furnished prior to use on the work. All records produced by the equipment shall be authenticated by the authorized representative of the contractor and then provided to the Contracting Officer with the Daily Report of Operations.

3.3 DAILY REPORTING REQUIREMENT

The Contractor shall prepare and maintain a Daily Report of Operations and furnish copies daily to the Contracting Officer. A copy of the form prescribed for recording the required information and any further instructions on the preparation of the report will be furnished at the preconstruction conference noted in Section 01005. The Contractor shall also furnish the following item daily to the Contracting Officer during dredging operations:

(1) Copy of dredge leverman's log

(2) Records of dredge pump vacuum and pressure gauge readings

(3) Records of dredge load meter readings

3.4 REQUIRED DREDGING PRISM, OVERDEPTH, AND SIDE SLOPES

3.4.1 Required Dredging Prism

Within the specific areas indicated to be dredged or areas approved by the Contracting Officer, the required dredging prism is defined by the required depths and applicable side slopes as indicated and specified. The actual quantity within the required dredging prism will be computed from the last surveys made before dredging.

3.4.2 Overdepth

To cover inaccuracies of the dredging process, material actually removed from within the specific areas to be dredged to a depth of not more than one foot below the required depth will be estimated and paid for at the contract price.

3.4.3 Side Slopes

Material actually removed, within limits approved by the Contracting Officer, to provide for final side slopes not flatter than 1 vertical on 3

horizontal, but not in excess of the amount originally lying above this limiting side slope, will be estimated and paid for, whether dredged in original position or by dredging space below the pay slope plane at the bottom of the slope for upslope material capable of falling into the cut. In computing the limiting amount of side-slope dredging an overdepth of one foot measured vertically will be used.

3.4.4 Method of Obtaining Soundings

Soundings to determine the volume of material removed under this contract will be made with an Innerspace Technology, Inc. Model 448 Thermal Depth Sounder Recorder with an operating frequency of 208 kilohertz and a 3 degree beamwidth at -3db. The equipment will be calibrated by the bar/ball check or velocity probe method to compensate for variations of the velocity of sound in water.

3.4.5 Basis of Surveys

The Government hydrographic surveys shall be the sole basis for determining payment for dredging and final acceptance.

3.4.6 Placement Area Surveys

The Contractor shall conduct an after dredging placement area survey of the Dam Neck Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site to ensure compliance with the elevation limitations as specified. The after dredge placement area survey shall be conducted over areas affected by the Contractor's material placement operations and be similar in format and detail to the contract drawings of the placement area, to include the size, scale, vertical datum, horizontal coordinates, sounding intervals, distance between survey sounding lines, and other details. The Contractor's licensed Professional Engineer or Surveyor currently licensed in the Commonwealth of Virginia shall submit these placement area survey records to the Contracting Officer for review and approval as a part of his final quality control verifications.

-- End of Section --